

MX-ROS V3 User Manual

Version 1.7
October 2024



Table of Contents

Overview	10
Introduction	10
What's in This Document	10
Who This Document Is For	10
Supported Series and Firmware Versions	11
Supported Features List.....	11
Document Conventions.....	18
Quick Start	20
Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router	20
UI Reference	24
The MX-ROS User Interface.....	24
Options Menu	25
<i>Change Language</i>	26
<i>Reboot</i>	26
<i>Reset to Default Settings</i>	26
<i>Save Custom Default</i>	27
<i>Log Out</i>	28
Device Summary	28
<i>Model Information</i>	28
<i>Panel Status</i>	29
<i>System Event Summary (Last 3 days)</i>	32
<i>CPU Usage History (%)</i>	33
<i>Memory Usage History (%)</i>	33
Setup Wizard	34
<i>Port Type</i>	34
<i>Interface</i>	35
<i>Service</i>	38
<i>Confirm</i>	39
System.....	39
<i>System - User Privileges</i>	40
<i>System Management</i>	41
<i>Account Management</i>	58
<i>License Management</i>	66

<i>Management Interface</i>	73
<i>Time</i>	90
<i>Power Management</i>	100
<i>SMS</i>	112
<i>GNSS</i>	118
<i>Status</i>	122
<i>Setting Check</i>	122
Cellular	124
<i>Cellular - User Privileges</i>	124
<i>Cellular - General</i>	124
<i>SIM Settings</i>	125
<i>GuaranLink</i>	126
<i>Cellular - Status</i>	131
Serial	134
<i>Serial - User Privileges</i>	135
<i>Serial - Port Settings</i>	135
<i>Operation Mode</i>	137
<i>Data Packing</i>	146
<i>Serial - Status</i>	148
<i>Serial Data Logs</i>	151
Network Configuration.....	151
<i>Network Configuration - User Privileges</i>	151
<i>Ports</i>	152
<i>Layer 2 Switching</i>	172
<i>Network Interfaces</i>	200
Redundancy	234
<i>Redundancy - User Privileges</i>	234
<i>Layer 2 Redundancy</i>	235
<i>Layer 3 Redundancy</i>	247
<i>VRRP</i>	247
<i>WAN Redundancy</i>	257
Network Service	261
<i>Network Service - User Privileges</i>	261
<i>DHCP Server</i>	262
<i>Dynamic DNS</i>	278
<i>DNS Server</i>	279

Routing	285
<i>Routing - User Privileges</i>	285
<i>Unicast Route</i>	286
<i>Multicast Route</i>	308
<i>Broadcast Forwarding</i>	313
NAT	316
<i>NAT - User Privileges</i>	316
<i>NAT Rule List</i>	317
Object Management.....	334
<i>Object Management - User Privileges</i>	334
<i>Create Object</i>	335
<i>Edit Object</i>	344
<i>Delete Object</i>	352
Firewall	352
<i>Network Configuration - User Privileges</i>	353
<i>Layer 2 Policy</i>	353
<i>Layer 3-7 Policy</i>	361
<i>Malformed Packets</i>	371
<i>Session Control</i>	372
<i>DoS Policy</i>	378
<i>Advanced Protection</i>	381
VPN	436
<i>VPN - User Privileges</i>	436
<i>IPSec</i>	436
<i>L2TP Server</i>	460
<i>OpenVPN Client</i>	462
Certificate Management.....	466
<i>Certificate Management - User Privileges</i>	466
<i>Local Certificate</i>	467
<i>Trusted CA Certificate</i>	470
<i>Certificate Signing Request</i>	471
Security	476
<i>Security - User Privileges</i>	477
<i>Device Security</i>	477
<i>Network Security</i>	484
<i>Authentication</i>	490

<i>MXview Alert Notification</i>	495
Diagnostics	497
<i>Diagnostics - User Privileges</i>	498
<i>System Status</i>	499
<i>Network Status</i>	502
<i>Event Logs and Notifications</i>	508
<i>Tools</i>	548
Other Features	559
Firmware Image Recovery Overview	559
<i>Methodology</i>	559
<i>How Dual-imaging Works</i>	560
Soft Lockdown.....	561
<i>Soft Lockdown Criteria</i>	561
<i>Entering Soft Lockdown Mode</i>	562
<i>When in Soft Lockdown Mode</i>	562
<i>Leaving Soft Lockdown Mode</i>	563
Device Applications	565
Network Segmentation.....	565
<i>About Network Segmentation</i>	565
<i>VLANs in Depth</i>	566
<i>Scenario: Layer 2 Segmentation of 3 Factories</i>	567
<i>Scenario: Layer 3 Segmentation of Two Services</i>	573
About Redundancy.....	579
<i>What kinds of redundancy protocols are there?</i>	580
<i>About Layer 2 Redundancy Protocols</i>	580
<i>About Turbo Ring v2</i>	583
<i>About RSTP</i>	592
<i>About Turbo Chain</i>	597
<i>About VRRP</i>	601
Routing	607
<i>About Routing</i>	607
<i>About Static Routing</i>	609
<i>About Multicast Routing</i>	610
<i>About Selecting a Routing Protocol</i>	610
<i>Example: Adding a Static Unicast Route for Factory Automation</i>	611
<i>Example: Adding Static Multicast Route for Passenger Speed Display</i>	613

About OpenVPN Client.....	615
<i>Scenario: Using a Site-to-Site OpenVPN Tunnel.....</i>	<i>615</i>
About NetFlow.....	618
<i>NetFlow In Depth</i>	<i>619</i>
<i>Scenario: Using NetFlow to Collect LAN Interface Data</i>	<i>619</i>
About Loopback Interfaces.....	623
<i>Scenario: Connecting Two Subnets</i>	<i>623</i>
Security Hardening Guide	630
Security Best Practices	630
<i>Product Security.....</i>	<i>630</i>
<i>Physical Installation Guidelines.....</i>	<i>630</i>
<i>Account Management Guidelines</i>	<i>631</i>
<i>Protecting Vulnerable Network Ports</i>	<i>631</i>
<i>Maintaining Communication Integrity.....</i>	<i>632</i>
<i>Communication Integrity Features</i>	<i>632</i>
<i>Device Access Control Best Practices.....</i>	<i>633</i>
<i>About Device Integrity and Authenticity</i>	<i>634</i>
<i>Device Resource Management and Monitoring</i>	<i>635</i>
<i>Recommended Settings for Services and Features</i>	<i>637</i>
<i>Common Threats and Countermeasures</i>	<i>639</i>
<i>Recommended Operational Roles and Duties.....</i>	<i>640</i>
<i>Recommended Patching and Backup Practices.....</i>	<i>641</i>
<i>Recommendations for Vulnerability Management.....</i>	<i>642</i>
<i>Recommendations for Decommissioning.....</i>	<i>643</i>
Using Security Features.....	643
<i>Introduction to IPS</i>	<i>643</i>
<i>Introduction to Firewalls.....</i>	<i>647</i>
Security Standards and Concepts	659
<i>Introduction to Defense in Depth.....</i>	<i>659</i>
AAA	659
<i>ISA/IEC 62443 Standards and Architecture.....</i>	<i>665</i>
<i>Product Security Context</i>	<i>672</i>
Appendix	675
Destination Ports for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol	675
EtherTypes for Layer 2	676
Fiber Check Threshold Values	678

IEC 61375-2-3 Communication Identifiers	679
IEC-104 Cause of Transmission List.....	681
IEC-104 Type Identification List	683
<i>Process information in monitor direction</i>	684
<i>Process telegrams with long time tag (7 octets)</i>	685
<i>Process information in control direction</i>	685
<i>Command telegrams with long time tag (7 octets)</i>	686
<i>System information in monitor direction</i>	686
<i>System information in control direction</i>	686
<i>Parameter in control direction</i>	687
<i>File transfer</i>	687
LED Behavior	687
<i>EDF-G1002 Series LED Behavior</i>	688
<i>EDR-8010 Series LED Behavior</i>	689
<i>EDR-G9004 Series LED Behavior</i>	690
<i>EDR-G9010 Series LED Behavior</i>	691
MIB Groups.....	693
<i>MIB Tree Structure</i>	693
MMS Command Type List.....	721
MMS Service Operation List.....	722
Severity Level List	726
Status Codes.....	726
<i>PoE Status Codes</i>	726
Structure and Syntax of Local Consist Info Files	728
<i>consistinfo</i>	728
<i>vehicleinfo</i>	729
<i>functioninfo</i>	730
Supported Features List.....	730
System Event List.....	736
System Log Events	738
TRDP Message Type List	741
<i>Configuration attribute requirements - msgType</i>	741
<i>Configuration attribute requirements - msgType Profile</i>	742
TRDP Protocol Filter Profile List.....	742
User Role Privileges	743
<i>System</i>	743

<i>Cellular</i>	744
<i>Serial</i>	744
<i>Network Configuration</i>	745
<i>Redundancy</i>	745
<i>Network Service</i>	746
<i>Routing</i>	746
<i>NAT</i>	746
<i>Object Management</i>	747
<i>Firewall</i>	747
<i>VPN</i>	747
<i>Certificate Management</i>	748
<i>Security</i>	748
<i>Diagnostics</i>	748

Chapter 1

Overview

Overview

Introduction

Welcome to the Moxa RouterOS (MX-ROS) manual. This comprehensive guide is designed to help you understand and navigate the UI features, technical concepts, and tasks you may encounter while using your MX-ROS device. The goal is to simplify your experience and make the setup process easier.

What's in This Document

This document includes the following sections:

- **Overview:** This section introduces this document and how to use it.
- **Quick Start:** This section tells you how to connect to your device so you can start using and configuring it.
- **UI Reference:** This section goes through the web user interface (UI) of your device to help you quickly understand what settings are available. This section also shows you the valid ranges and defaults for settings, and any limitations there may be when configuring your device.
- **Other Features:** This section helps you understand features for your device that may not have a related user interface.
- **Device Applications:** This section goes through various applications and helps you understand the related technologies, product features, and best practices so you can better configure the device for your own needs.
- **Security Hardening Guide:** This section gives you an overview of industrial network security and the related product features and best practices needed to help you better secure your application.
- **Appendix:** This section provides additional reference information for your device.

Who This Document Is For

We want you to get the most out of your Moxa device, so we designed this document with these audiences in mind:

- **OT engineers learning how to configure OT network devices:** For frontline personnel operating in OT environments, keeping your MX-ROS configuration up-

to-date is crucial. We created the **Security** section to help you better understand how you can use this device effectively for your application.

- **Experienced OT network engineers integrating Moxa devices into OT network infrastructure:** For those who already have a solid understanding of networking concepts, the **UI Reference** section is designed to give you a quick reference for all the device settings, options, default settings, and limitations. You may also find the **Security** section useful for learning how to get more out of your Moxa device and to optimize your application.

Supported Series and Firmware Versions

Moxa Router Series	Firmware Version
EDR-8000 Series	v3.13
EDR-G9000 Series	v3.13
EDF-G1000 Series	v3.13
OnCell G4000 Series	v3.13
TN-4900 Series	v3.13

The information in this document is applicable to other products and firmwares that use MX-ROS V3, but the appearance and availability of features and settings may vary. For more information about which features are supported by each product series, refer to the Supported Features List.

MX-ROS support may expand to other products in the future; please check the [Moxa website](#) for the latest information.

Supported Features List

Support for various features varies depending on the product and model. Refer to the table below for an overview of which features are supported by different product series.

Note

Please note that there may still be functional differences between different models within the same product series.

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
Device Summary		YES	YES	YES	YES
Setup Wizard		YES	-	-	YES
System		YES	YES	YES	YES
	System Management	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Information Settings	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Firmware Upgrade	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Software Package Management	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Configuration Backup and Restore	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Account Management	YES	YES	YES	YES
	User Accounts	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Password Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	License Management	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Management Interface	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Out of Band Management	-	YES	-	-
	User Interface	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Hardware Interface	YES	YES	YES	YES
	SNMP	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Moxa Remote Connect	-	-	YES	YES
	MXsecurity	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Time	YES	YES	YES	YES
	System Time	YES	YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
	NTP/SNTP Server	YES	-	YES	-
	Power Management	-	-	YES	-
	SMS	-	-	YES	-
	GNSS	-	-	YES	-
	Setting Check	YES	YES	YES	YES
Cellular		-	-	YES	-
Serial		-	-	YES	-
Network Configuration		YES	YES	YES	YES
	Ports	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Port Settings	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Link Aggregation	YES	-	-	YES
	PoE	-	-	-	YES
	Link Fault Passthrough	YES	YES	-	YES
	LAN Bypass Gen3	YES	YES	-	YES
	Layer 2 Switching	YES	-	YES	YES
	VLAN	YES	-	YES	YES
	MAC Address Table	YES	-	YES	YES
	QoS	YES	-	-	YES
	Rate Limit	YES	-	-	YES
	Multicast	YES	-	YES	YES
	IGMP Snooping	YES	-	-	YES
	Static Multicast Table	YES	-	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
	Network Interfaces	YES	YES	YES	YES
Redundancy		YES	-	-	YES
	Layer 2 Redundancy	YES	-	-	-
	Spanning Tree	YES	-	-	YES
	Turbo Ring V2	YES	-	-	YES
	Turbo Chain	YES	-	-	-
	Layer 3 Redundancy	YES	-	YES	YES
	VRRP	YES	-	YES	YES
	WAN Redundancy	YES	-	YES	YES
Network Service		YES	-	YES	YES
	DHCP Server	YES	-	YES	YES
	Dynamic DNS	YES	-	YES	YES
	DNS Server	-	-	-	YES
Routing		YES	-	YES	YES
	Unicast Route	YES	-	YES	YES
	Static Routes	YES	-	YES	YES
	RIP	YES	-	-	YES
	OSPF	YES	-	-	YES
	Routing Table	YES	-	YES	YES
	Multicast Route	YES	-	YES	YES
	Multicast Route Settings	YES	-	YES	YES
	Static Multicast Route	YES	-	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
	Multicast Forwarding Table	YES	-	YES	YES
	Broadcast Forwarding	YES	-	YES	YES
NAT		YES	-	YES	YES
Object Management		YES	YES	YES	YES
Firewall		YES	YES	YES	YES
	Layer 2 Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Layer 3-7 Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Malformed Packets	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Session Control	YES	YES	YES	YES
	DoS Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Advanced Protection	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Dashboard	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Configuration	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Protocol Filter Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	ADP	YES	YES	YES	YES
	IPS	YES	YES	-	YES
VPN		YES	-	YES	YES
	IPSec	YES	-	YES	YES
	L2TP Server	YES	-	-	YES
	OpenVPN Client	YES	-	-	-
Certificate Management		YES	YES	YES	YES
	Local Certificate	YES	YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
Security	Trusted CA Certificate	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Certificate Signing Request	YES	YES	YES	YES
		YES	YES	YES	YES
	Device Security	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Login Policy	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Trusted Access	YES	YES	YES	YES
	SSH & SSL	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Network Security	YES	YES	-	YES
	IEEE 802.1X	YES	-	-	YES
	Authentication	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Login Authentication	YES	YES	YES	YES
	RADIUS	YES	YES	YES	YES
	TACACS+ Server	YES	YES	YES	YES
	MXview Alert Notification	YES	YES	YES	YES
Diagnostics		YES	YES	YES	YES
	System Status	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Utilization	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Fiber Check	YES	-	-	-
	Network Status	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Network Statistics	YES	YES	YES	YES
	LLDP	YES	YES	YES	YES
	ARP Table	YES	YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
	Event Log and Notifications	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Event Log	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Event Notifications	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Syslog	YES	YES	YES	YES
	SNMP Trap/Inform	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Email Settings	YES	YES	YES	-
	SMS Settings	-	YES	YES	-
	Tools	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Port Mirroring	YES	-	-	YES
	Ping	YES	YES	YES	YES
	Diagnostic Support	-	-	YES	YES
	Netflow	YES	YES	-	-
Industrial Application		-	-	-	YES
	IEC 61375	-	-	-	YES
	Ethernet Train Backbone	-	-	-	YES
	TTDP Settings	-	-	-	YES
	Local ETBN Status	-	-	-	YES
	ETB Status	-	-	-	YES
	TCN Multicast Table	-	-	-	YES
	Communication Profile	-	-	-	YES
	ECSP Settings	-	-	-	YES
	SDTv2 Settings	-	-	-	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series	TN Series
	ECSP Status	-	-	-	YES
	SDTv2 Status	-	-	-	YES
	Operational Status	-	-	-	YES
	Consist Info	-	-	-	YES
	Train Directory	-	-	-	YES
	Operational Train Directory	-	-	-	YES
	TCN-URI Table	-	-	-	YES

Document Conventions

This document uses the following formatting conventions:

Convention/Format	Description
Bold	Used for UI elements you see on-screen, including page name, tab name, field labels, dropdown options, menu path, etc.
Italics	Used to highlight important information in a paragraph or a table, such as indicating that a UI setting is only shown under certain conditions.
Code/commands/CLI	Used for code snippets, blocks, commands, and CLI output.

Chapter 2

Quick Start

Quick Start

This section provides you with information on how to connect to your device to access its configuration interface.

Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router

The device's web interface provides a convenient way to modify the router's configuration and access the built-in monitoring and network administration functions.

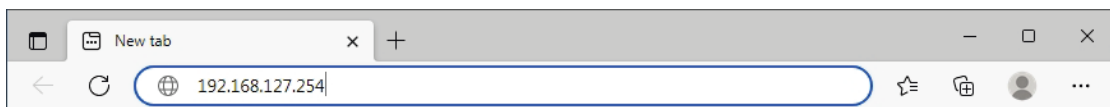
Note

When using the device's web interface, we recommend using the following browsers and versions. Please note that Internet Explorer (IE) is not supported.

- Chrome: 2 most recent versions
- Firefox: Latest version and the Extended Support Release (ESR)
- Edge: 2 most recent major versions
- Safari: 2 most recent major versions
- iOS: 2 most recent major versions
- Android: 2 most recent major versions

Perform the following steps to access the device's web interface:

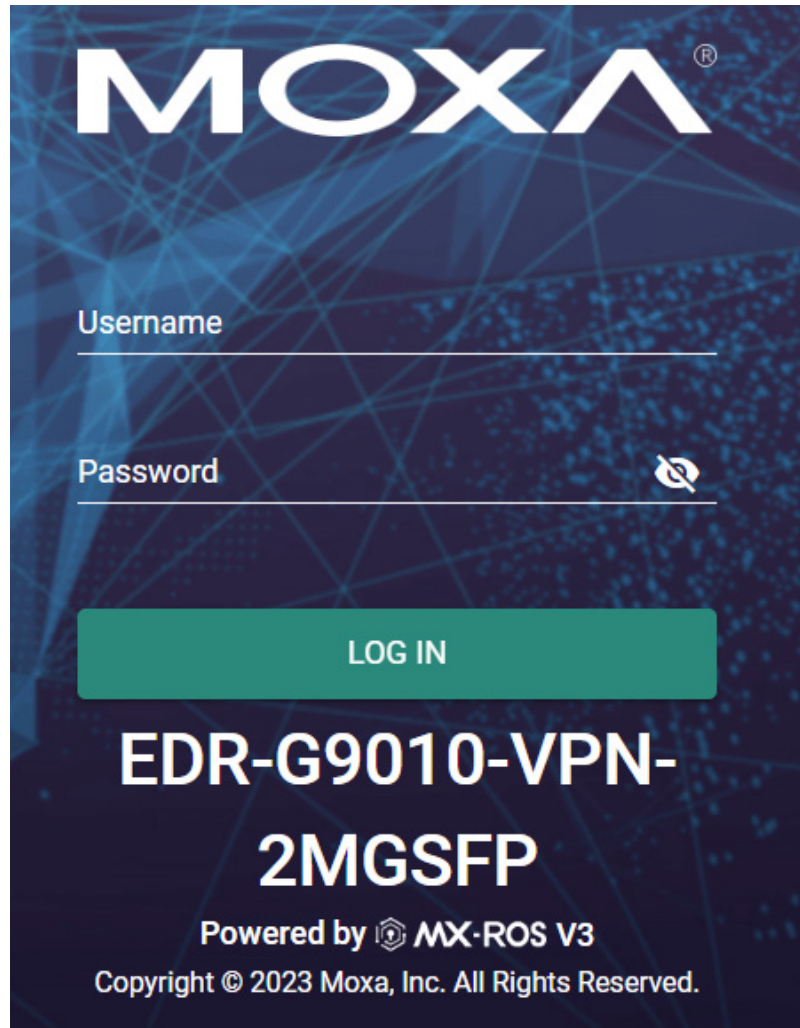
1. Make sure your PC host is connected to your device's LAN port, and is on the same subnet as your device.
2. Open a web browser and type the device's LAN IP address (**192.168.127.254** by default) into the address bar and press Enter.



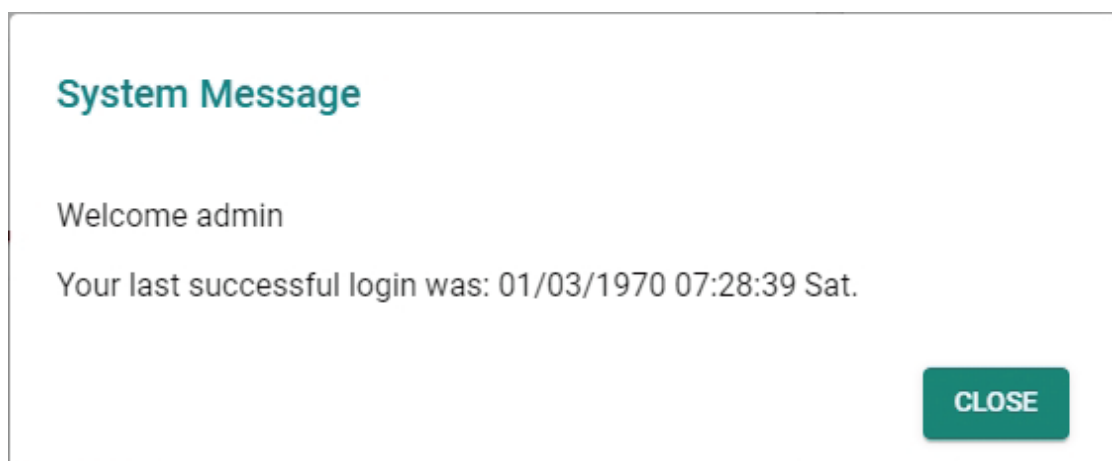
3. The web login page will open. Enter the username (**admin** or **user**) and password (the same as the Console password) and click **LOG IN** to continue.

Note

The default username is admin and the default password is moxa. We strongly recommend changing the password as soon as possible to ensure the security of your device.



You may need to wait a few moments for the web interface to appear. If you have logged in before, a system message will appear showing the details of the last successful login. Click **CLOSE** to close this message.



4. After successfully connecting to the router, the **Device Summary** screen will automatically appear. Use the menu tree on the left side of the window to open the function pages to access each of the router's functions.

MOXA EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP Hi, admin

Search for a function

Device Summary

Setup Wizard

System

Network Configuration

Redundancy

Network Service

Routing

NAT

Object Management

Firewall

VPN

Certificate Management

Security

Diagnostics

Device Summary

Model Information

Product Model EDR-G9010-VPN-2MGSFP	MAC Address 00:90:e6:91:86:72
Name Firewall/VPN Router 55149	Serial Number TBZKB1155149
Location	Firmware Version V2.0 build 22070117
Device Location	System Uptime 0d1h19m38s
LAN IP Address 192.168.127.254	
WAN IP Address 0.0.0.0	

Panel Status

PWR1 PWR2 STATE MSTR/ H.TC CPLR/ T.TC VPN VRRP/ HA USB

1 Link Up Ports

9 Link Down Ports

EXPAND

Event Summary (Last 3 days)

0 Critical	0 Error
0 Warning	0 Notice

View All Event Logs

CPU Usage History (%)

2022/07/06 09:17:06

100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0

09:15:36 09:16:06 09:16:36 09:17:06

Memory Usage History (%)

2022/07/06 09:17:06

100 90 80 70 60 50 40 30 20 10 0

09:15:36 09:16:06 09:16:36 09:17:06

Chapter 3

UI Reference

UI Reference

This section provides you with a quick reference to the different settings and options of your device.

To help you understand how to use the user interface, the following sections are included:

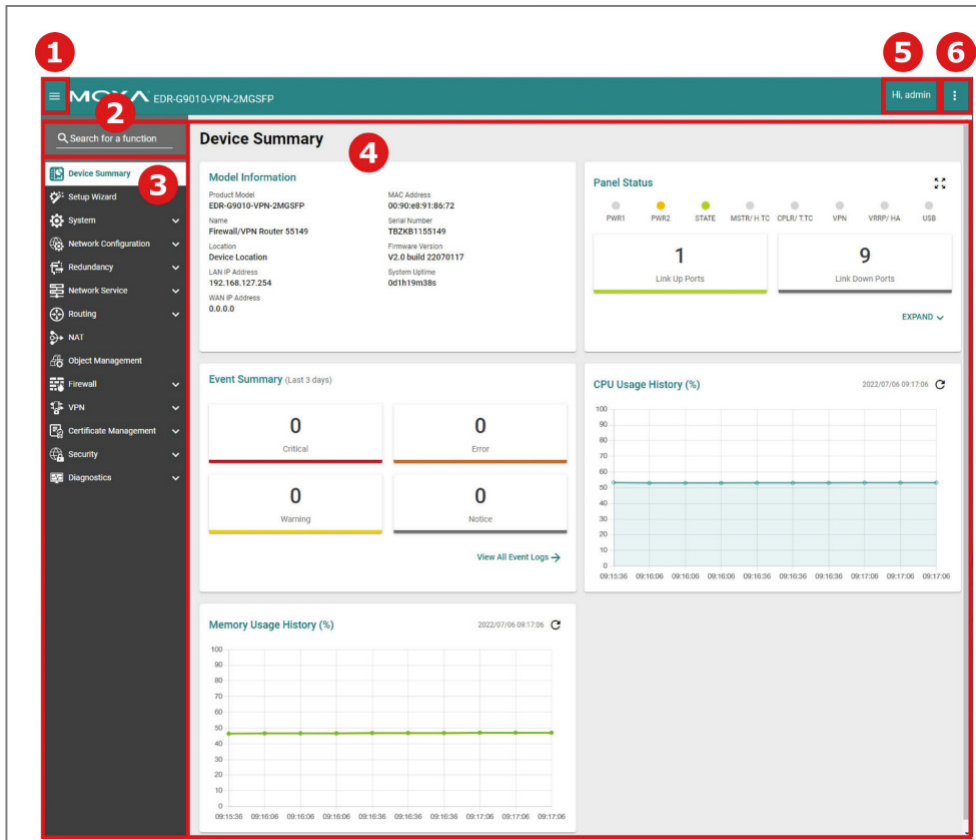
- The MX-ROS User Interface



The rest of this section follows the order of the menu areas in the user interface:

- Device Summary
- Setup Wizard
- System
- Cellular
- Serial
- Network Configuration
- Redundancy
- Network Service
- Routing
- NAT
- Object Management
- Firewall
- VPN
- Certificate Management
- Security
- Diagnostics


The MX-ROS User Interface

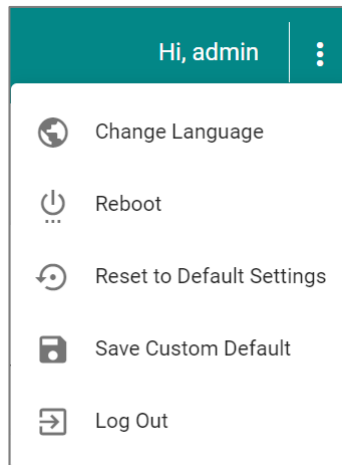
Here is an overview of the MX-ROS user interface.




1. Clicking  in the top-left will toggle display of the function menu.
2. Enter the name of a function in the **Search Bar** to quickly find a specific function page.
3. Click on a page name in the **Function Menu** on the left-hand side to go to its function page.
4. All the configuration options and information of the selected function page will be shown here.
5. The name of the currently logged-in user is shown here.
6. Clicking  in the top-right will expand the Options menu.

Options Menu

Clicking the **Options** () icon in the upper-right corner of the page will open the options menu.




Change Language

To change the language of the interface, click the **Options** () icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Change Language**.

Reboot

To manually reboot the device, click the **Options** () icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Reboot**.

Reset to Default Settings

To reset the device to its default settings, click the **Options** () icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Reset to Default Settings**.

Select whether to reset to **Factory Default** settings, or the saved **Custom Default** settings, then click **APPLY**.

Refer to Save Custom Default for more information about custom default settings.

Note

Custom Default can only be selected if custom default settings have been saved on the device.

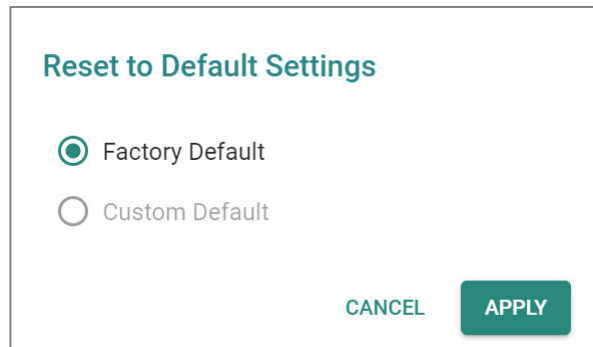
Note

Custom Default is only available for the TN-4900 Series.

⚠ Warning

When resetting your device to the factory default settings, all your current configuration settings will be permanently deleted.

Check the **Keep certificate database and configuration** option to keep the certificate database and configuration information. Leaving this option unchecked will **delete all information** on the device and reset everything to their factory default values.



The dialog box titled "Reset to Default Settings" contains two radio button options: "Factory Default" (selected) and "Custom Default". At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "CANCEL" and "APPLY".

Save Custom Default

You can save a custom default configuration for your device. This allows you to reset the device to a trusted configuration without uploading a configuration file to restore from. Refer to Reset to Default Settings for more information.

✎ Note


Save Custom Default is only available for the TN-4900 Series.

✎ Note

- Ensure that the current startup configuration works as expected and that the user account settings are correct before saving the configuration as a custom default.
- The configuration name can be modified on the Config Backup and Restore page. We recommend including the configuration name for better file differentiation. Please note that each configuration must be unique and not repetitive.
- Each device can only have one set of custom default settings.
- Custom default settings can only save and restore configuration settings. They do not include other uploaded files, such as SSL certificate files, SSH keys, etc.
- Refer to Configuration Types for more information about the different configurations your device uses.

To save the current startup configuration as a custom default, click the **Options (⋮)** icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Save Custom Default**.

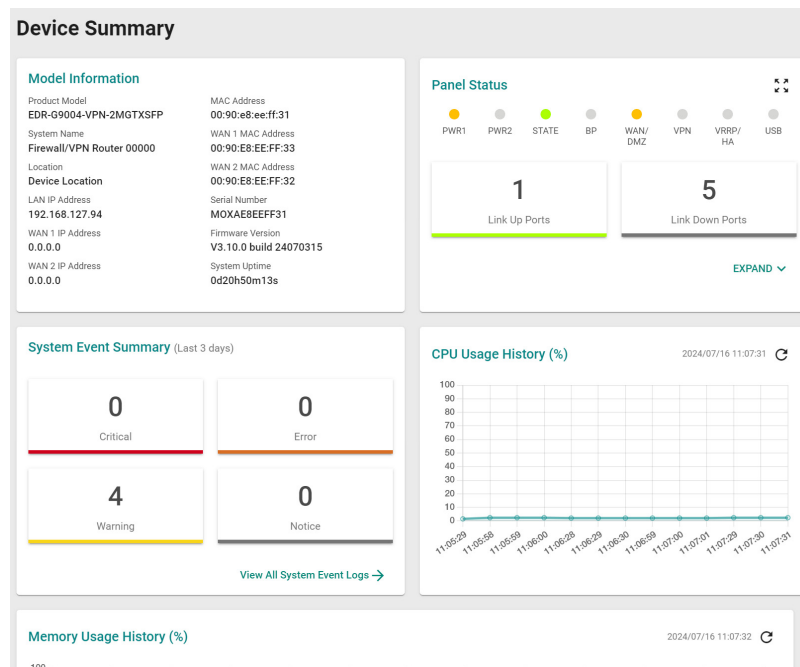
Log Out

To log out of the device, click the **Options** () icon in the upper-right corner of the page, and select **Log Out**.

Device Summary

Menu Path: Device Summary

This page lets you see displays with information about your device and current status.



Model Information

This display shows basic information about your device.

Model Information

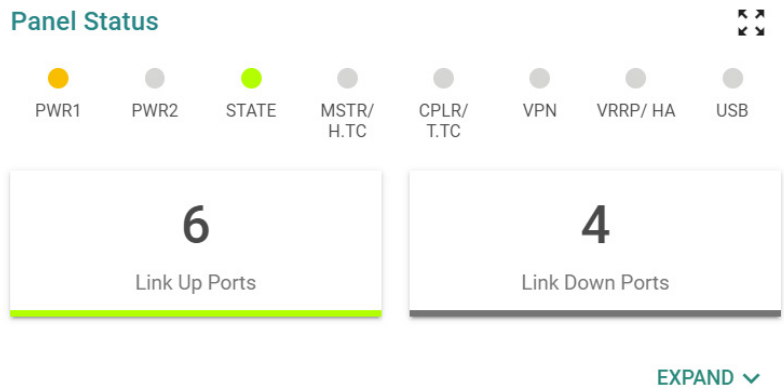
Product Model	MAC Address
EDR-G9004-VPN-2MGTXSFP	00:90:e8:ee:ff:31
System Name	WAN 1 MAC Address
Firewall/VPN Router 00000	00:90:E8:EE:FF:33
Location	WAN 2 MAC Address
Device Location	00:90:E8:EE:FF:32
LAN IP Address	Serial Number
192.168.127.94	MOXAE8EEFF31
WAN 1 IP Address	Firmware Version
0.0.0.0	V3.10.0 build 24070315
WAN 2 IP Address	System Uptime
0.0.0.0	0d20h50m13s

UI Setting	Description
Product Model	Shows the product model of the device.
System Name	Shows the name of the device. Refer to System > System Management > Information Settings for more information.
Location	Shows the location of the device. Refer to System > System Management > Information Settings for more information.
LAN IP Address	Shows the LAN IP address of the device. This can be configured in the Setup Wizard.
WAN IP Address	Shows the WAN IP address of your device. This can be configured in the Setup Wizard.
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address of your device.
Serial Number	Shows the serial number of your device.
Firmware Version	Shows the firmware version of your device.
System Uptime	Shows the amount of time your device has been continuously running for.

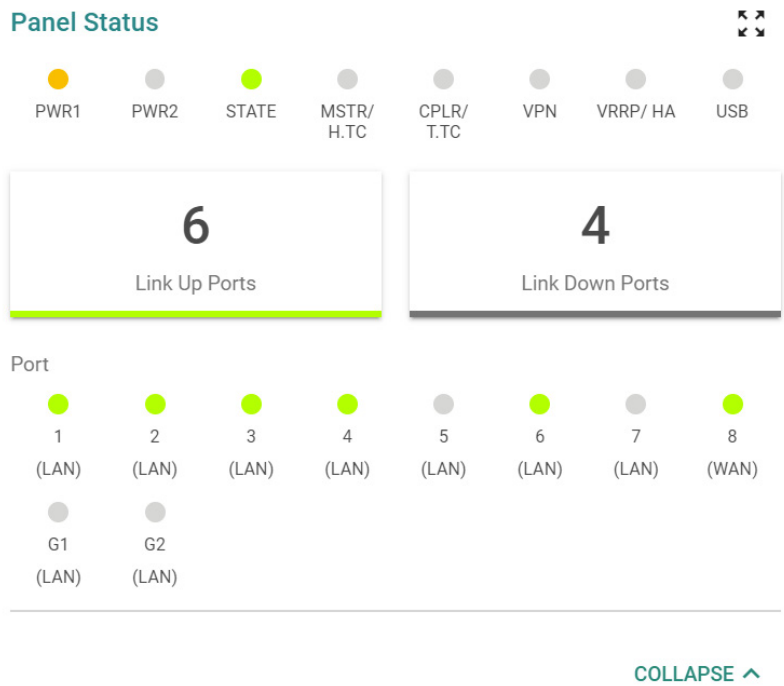
Panel Status

This display shows the status LEDs of your device. For example, connected ports will be shown in green, while disconnected ports will be shown in gray.

Click **EXPAND** to view more detailed information.



Click **COLLAPSE** to hide the details.



Panel View

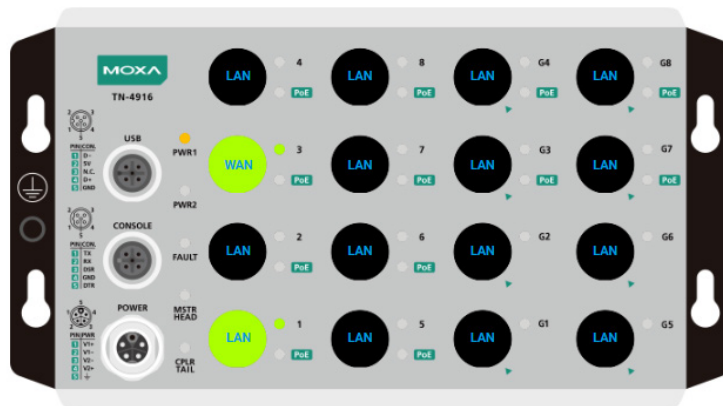
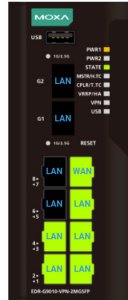
Clicking the **Expand** (🔍) icon in the **Panel Status** display will show your device's port status on a representative image of the device. This image will vary depending on your device. Click the **Close** (✕) icon in the upper-right corner to close the **Panel View**.

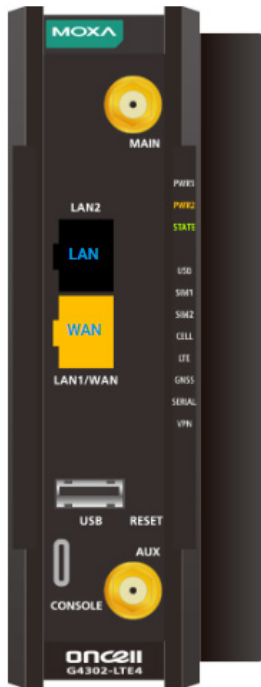
Note

Available LEDs may vary across different versions of devices. For more information about status LEDs and their behavior, refer to LED Behavior.

Panel View

×

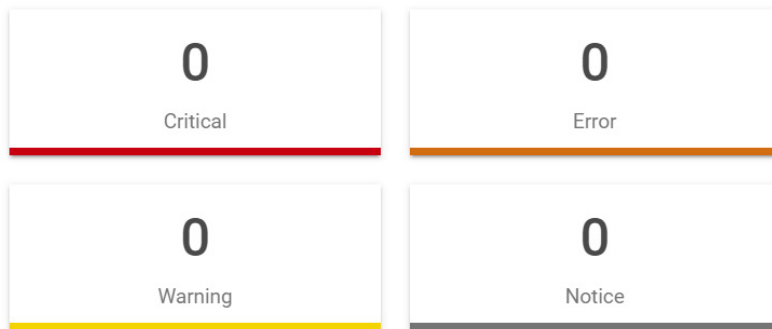




System Event Summary (Last 3 days)

This display shows the event summary for the past three days.

System Event Summary (Last 3 days)



[View All System Event Logs →](#)

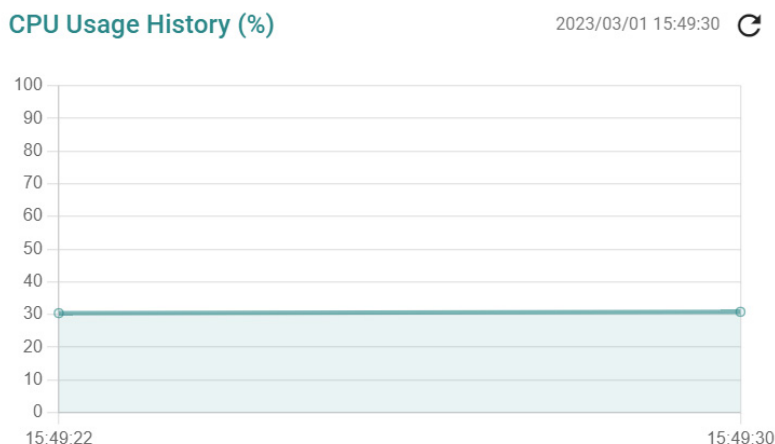
Click **View All System Event Logs** to go to the Event Log page to view event logs in more detail.

Event Log			
System Log	Firewall Log	VPN Log	Settings and Backup
🔄	📄	📄	🔍 Search
Index	Timestamp	Severity	Additional message
1	2023/8/11 18:40:48.00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via UI: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d3h41m38s
2	2023/8/11 18:26:7+8.00	Informational	Logout via UI: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d3h27m42s
3	2023/8/11 17:43:57+8.00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via UI: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d2h45m32s
4	2023/8/11 10:52:15+8.00	Informational	Logout via UI: Serial Console. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d19h53m50s
5	2023/8/11 10:45:13+8.00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via UI: Serial Console. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d19h46m48s
6	2023/8/10 17:14:25+8.00	Informational	Logout via UI: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d2h15m59s
7	2023/8/10 17:5:43+8.00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via UI: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d2h7m18s

Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.

CPU Usage History (%)

This display shows the device's CPU usage. The data will be shown as a percentage over time. Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to refresh the graph.

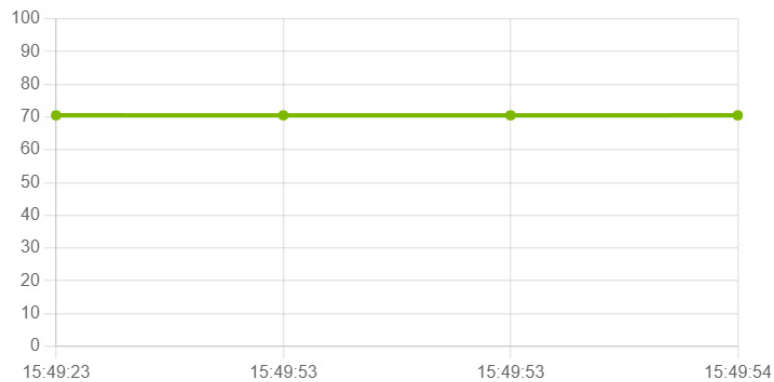


Memory Usage History (%)

This display shows the device's memory usage. The data will be shown as a percentage over time. Click the **Refresh** (🔄) icon to refresh the graph.

Memory Usage History (%)

2023/03/01 15:49:54 



Setup Wizard

Menu Path: Setup Wizard

The Setup Wizard helps guide you through basic setup of your device through four steps:

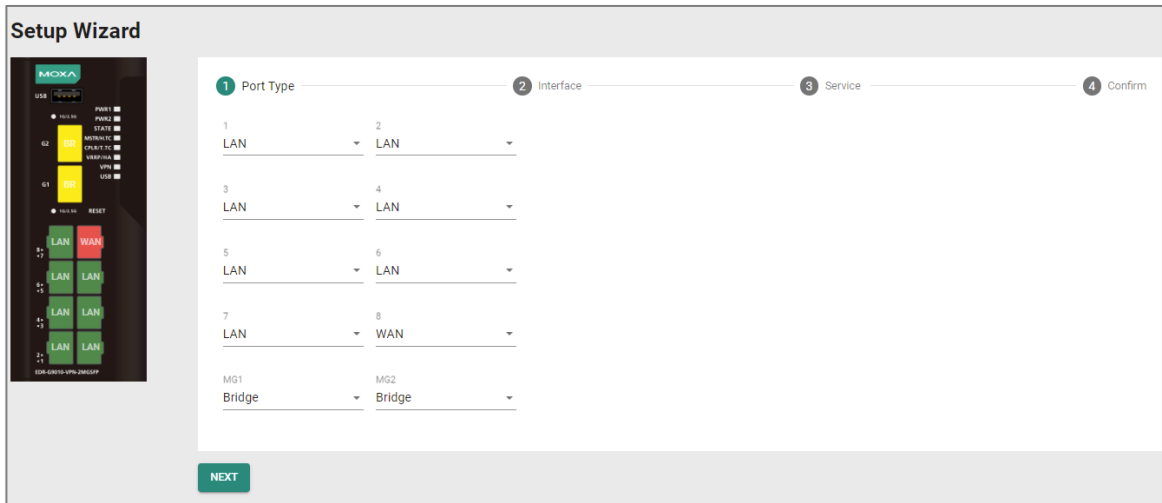
- Port Type
- Interface
- Service
- Confirm

Note

Available settings will vary depending on your product model.

Port Type

In this step, you can set each port of your device to act as a LAN, WAN, or Bridge port.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
MG1 / MG2	Select whether to use this fiber port as a LAN, WAN, or Bridge port.	LAN / WAN / Bridge	LAN
1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / 6 / 7 / 8	Select whether to use this Ethernet port as a LAN, WAN, or Bridge port.	LAN / WAN / Bridge	LAN

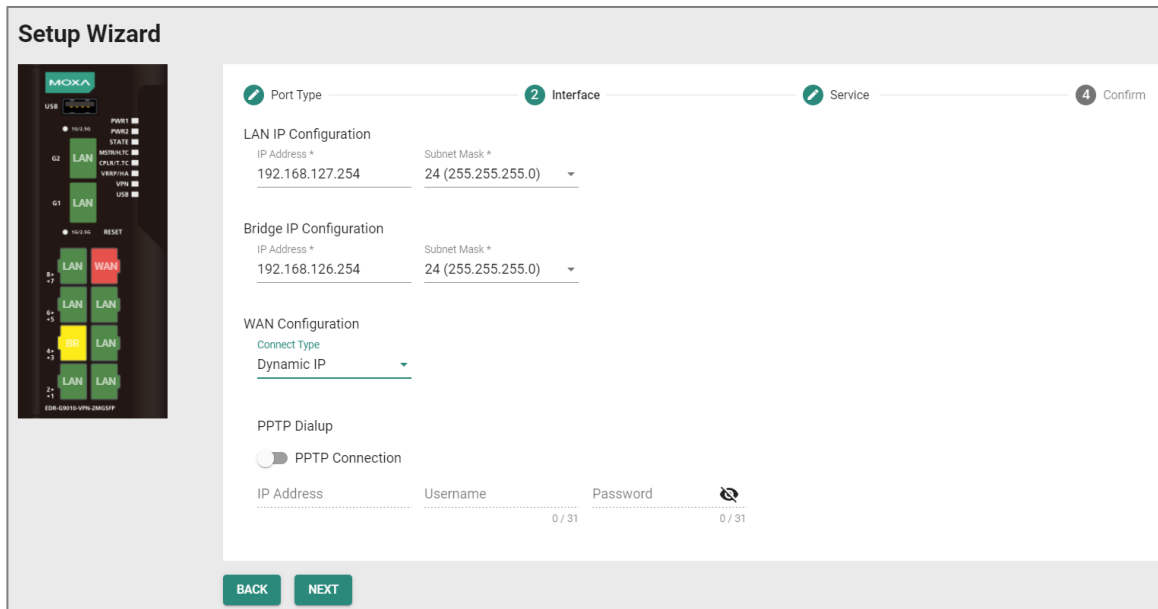
Interface

In this step, you can set up the connection interfaces for your device:

- LAN IP Configuration
- Bridge IP Configuration
- WAN Configuration

Note

Some of these settings may not appear if there are no ports set to LAN, WAN, or Bridge.



LAN IP Configuration

Set the LAN connection details for your device. If you're not familiar with your LAN interface, seek assistance from the network administrator. Network administrators usually determine the LAN interface configuration.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address for your LAN port.	Valid IP address	192.168.127.245
	<p>Note</p> <p>The IP Address should be inputted as unicast IP address.</p>		
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for your LAN port.	Valid subnet mask	255.255.255.0

WAN IP Configuration

Set the WAN connection details for your device. If you're not familiar with your WAN interface, seek assistance from the network administrator. Network administrators usually determine the WAN interface configuration.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Connect Type	Select the connection type to use for your WAN port.	Dynamic IP / Static IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP
---------------------	--	--------------------------------	------------

If you choose **Static IP** as your **Connection Type**, these settings will also appear:

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

IP Address	Specify the IP address for your WAN port.	Valid IP address	N/A
Gateway	Specify the gateway for your WAN port.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for your WAN port.	Valid subnet mask	N/A

PPTP Dialup

Set the PPTP Dialup connection details for your device. This section only appears if **Static IP** or **Dynamic IP** is set for **WAN Configuration > Connect Type**.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

PPTP Connection	Enable or disable using a PPTP connection.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify the IP address of your PPTP connection.	Valid IP address	N/A
Username	Specify the username for your PPTP connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password for your PPTP connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A

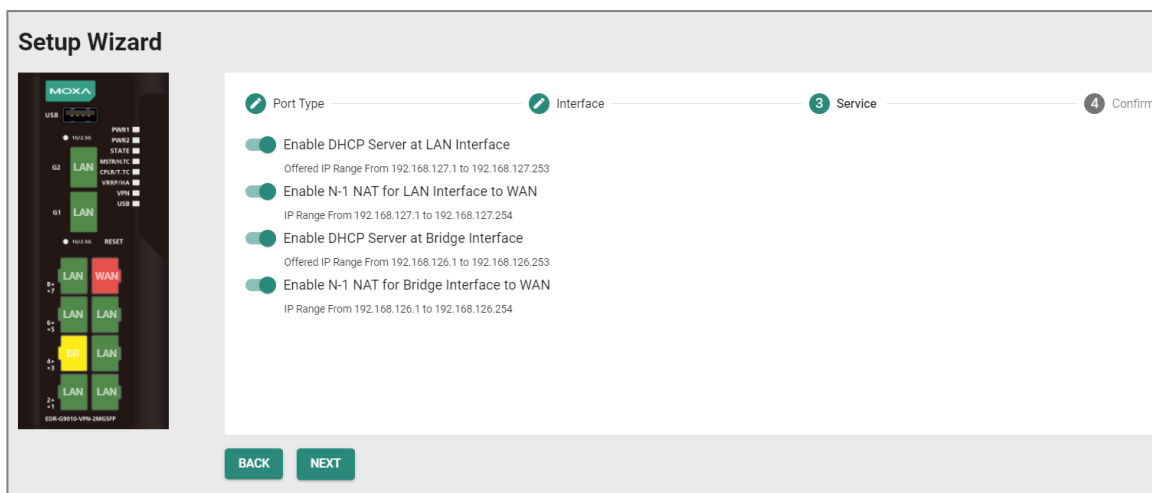
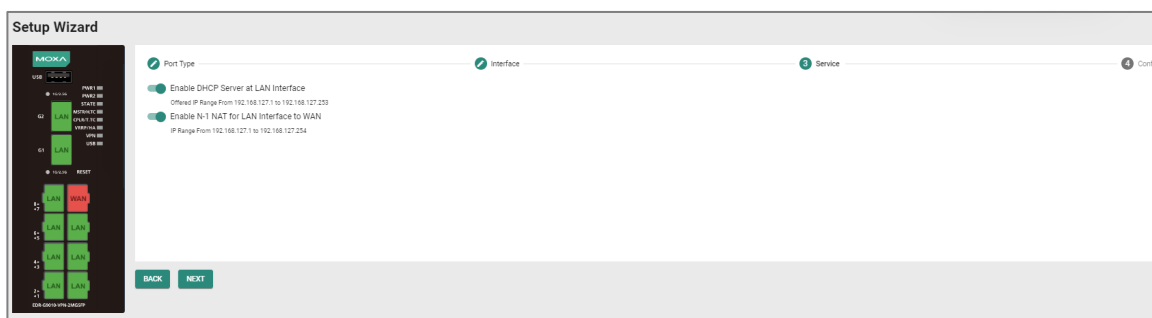
PPPoE Dialup

Set the PPPoE Dialup connection details for your device. This section only appears if **PPPoE** is set for **WAN Configuration > Connect Type**.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Username	Specify the username for your PPPoE connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password for your PPTP connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Host Name	Specify the host name for your PPPoE connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A

Service

In this step, you can enable or disable services for your device.

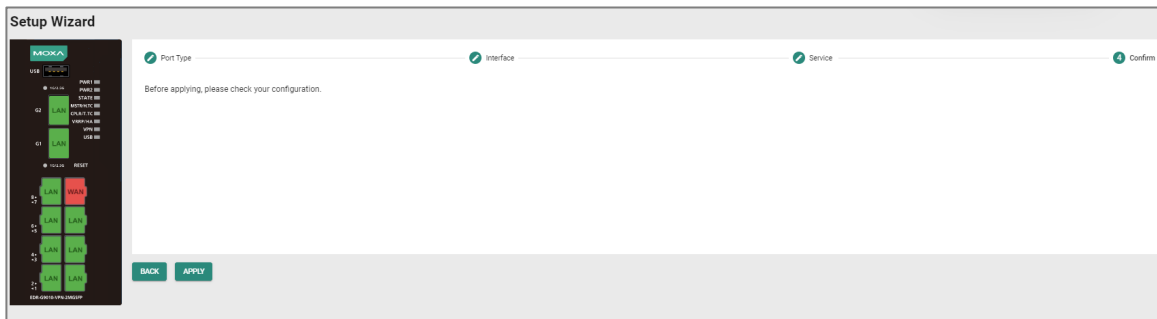


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enable DHCP Server at LAN Interface	Enable or disable using a DHCP server for the LAN interface.	Enable / Disable	Enable
Enable N-1 NAT for LAN Interface to WAN	Enable or disable using N-1 NAT for LAN interfaces to WAN.	Enable / Disable	Enable

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enable DHCP Server at Bridge Interface (if Bridge Mode is Port)	Enable or disable using a DHCP server for bridge interfaces.	Enable / Disable	Enable
Enable N-1 NAT for Bridge Interface to WAN (if Bridge Mode is Port)	Enable or disable using N-1 NAT for bridge interfaces to WAN.	Enable / Disable	Enable

Confirm

Confirm your settings, then click **APPLY** to save and apply your changes.



System

Menu Path: System

The System settings area lets you configure the main system settings for your device.

This settings area includes these sections:

- System Management
- Account Management
- License Management
- Management Interface
- Time
- Power Management
- SMS
- GNSS
- Setting Check

System - User Privileges

Privileges to System settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Management			
Information Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Firmware Upgrade	R/W	-	-
Software Package Management	R/W	-	-
Configuration Backup and Restore	R/W	-	-
Account Management			
User Account	R/W	-	-
Password Policy	R/W	-	-
License Management	R/W	R	R
Management Interface			
Out of Band Management	R/W	R/W	R
User Interface	R/W	R/W	R
Hardware Interface	R/W	R/W	R
SNMP	R/W	-	-
Moxa Remote Connect	R/W	-	-
MXsecurity	R/W	R/W	-
Time			
System Time	R/W	R/W	R
NTP/SNTP Server	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Power Management	R/W	R/W	R
SMS	R/W	R/W	R
GNSS	R/W	R/W	R
Setting Check	R/W	R/W	R

System Management

Menu Path: System > System Management

This section lets you manage your device's identification, firmware, and configuration backup settings.

This section includes these pages:

- Information Settings
- Firmware Upgrade
- Software Package Management
- Configuration Backup and Restore

Information Settings

Menu Path: System > System Management > Information Settings

This page lets you add additional information about the device to make it easier to identify on the network.

Information Settings

Device Name 0 / 30

Location 0 / 80

Description 0 / 40

Contact Information 0 / 40

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Device Name	Enter a name for the device.	1 to 30 characters	Firewall/VPN Router-xxxxx (where xxxxx is the last 5 characters of the device's serial number)
Location	Enter a location for the device.	1 to 80 characters	Device Location
Description	Enter a description for the device.	1 to 40 characters	N/A
Contact Information	Enter the contact information of the person in charge of the device.	1 to 40 characters	N/A

Firmware Upgrade

Menu Path: [System](#) > [System Management](#) > [Firmware Upgrade](#)

This page lets you upgrade the firmware of your device.

You can upgrade the firmware through the following methods:

- Local
- TFTP
- USB
- SCP
- SFTP

Note

As of v3.12, the device will retain all configuration settings when upgrading to newer firmware. However, as a precaution, we still recommend backing up your configuration before upgrading firmware. Refer to [System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore](#) for more information.

Note

If it is necessary to verify the integrity and signature of the application when the system is running, the administrator can use the show integrity check CLI command.

⚠ Warning

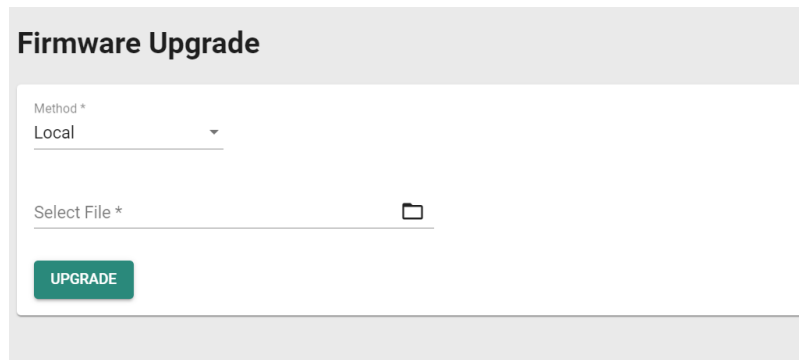
Upgrading the firmware should be only be done by qualified personnel, as it is possible to render the device inoperable if the upgrade is not done properly. If you are not familiar with the process, please request the assistance of qualified personnel. You can also consult with Moxa support and we will provide you with the necessary assistance.

Before performing a firmware upgrade, make sure you take the following precautions:

- Back up your configuration before upgrading the firmware
- Ensure that the device has power during the entire process
- Ensure that your computer stays connected to the device you are upgrading the firmware on
- Make sure the connection to the firmware source is not interrupted during the upgrade process

Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method lets you upload firmware directly from local storage on the host device.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Firmware Upgrade". It features a dropdown menu for "Method *" with "Local" selected. Below this is a "Select File *" field with a folder icon, and a green "UPGRADE" button.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Select File	Navigate to and upload the firmware file from the local host device.	N/A	N/A

TFTP

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you upload and install firmware stored on a remote TFTP server.

Firmware Upgrade

The screenshot shows the 'Firmware Upgrade' form with the 'Method' dropdown set to 'TFTP'. Below the dropdown are two input fields: 'Server IP Address *' and 'File Name *'. A green 'UPGRADE' button is located at the bottom left of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server.	IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the filename of the firmware file.	File name	N/A

USB

If you select **USB** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to install firmware directly from a USB drive attached to your device.

Note

This feature requires USB Function to be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

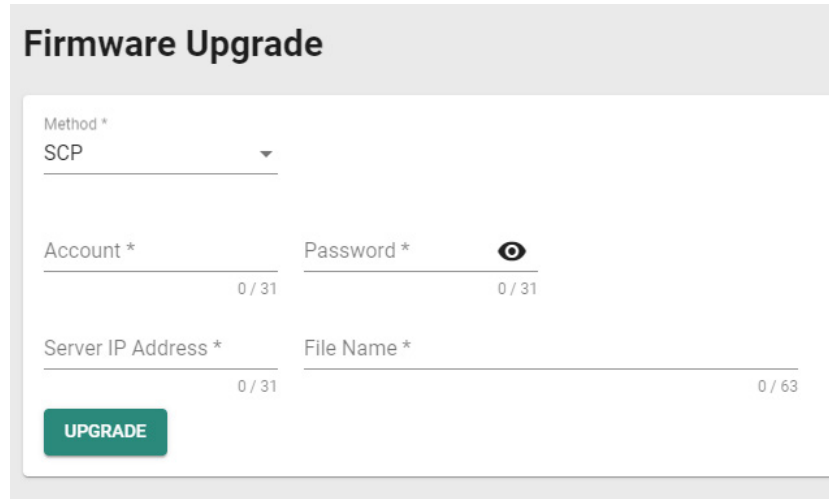
Firmware Upgrade

The screenshot shows the 'Firmware Upgrade' form with the 'Method *' dropdown set to 'USB'. Below the dropdown is a 'Select File *' field with a folder icon. A green 'UPGRADE' button is located at the bottom left of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Select File	Select the firmware file on the USB device.	N/A	N/A

SCP

If you select **SCP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SCP (secure copy protocol) method lets you upload and install firmware from a remote system.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Firmware Upgrade". It contains a dropdown menu for "Method *" with "SCP" selected. Below are four input fields: "Account *" (0/31), "Password *" (0/31) with a toggle icon, "Server IP Address *" (0/31), and "File Name *" (0/63). A green "UPGRADE" button is at the bottom left.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Account	Enter the remote system account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the remote system account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the remote system.	IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the filename of the firmware file.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

SFTP

If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method lets you upload and install firmware stored on a remote SFTP server.

Firmware Upgrade

Method
SFTP

Account * 0 / 31

Password * 0 / 31

Server IP Address * 0 / 31

File Name * 0 / 63

UPGRADE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Account	Enter the SFTP server account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the SFTP server account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server.	IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the filename of the firmware file.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

Software Package Management

Menu Path: System > System Management > Software Package Management

This page lets you upgrade your Network Security Package and MXsecurity Agent Package, enhancing your device's security capabilities. To upgrade a software package, you can either use the package included with the currently installed firmware, or you can download the latest version from the resource section on the Moxa website at

www.moxa.com.

Note

Keeping your software packages updated is critical to keep your device and network secure against the latest cyberattacks.

- Network Security Package:** Helps you protect your device and network with IPS (Intrusion Prevention System) patterns and a DPI (Deep Packet Inspection) engine.

Note

Products that do not support a firewall will not be compatible with the Network Security Package. Most Moxa routers support firewall functionality, except for products with model names that include '-ETBN-' but do not include '-F-', such as the TN-4908-ETBN-4GTX-4GTXPB-WV-CT-T.

- **MXsecurity Agent Package:** Provides centralized visibility and security management to streamline management of your device. It helps you monitor and identify cyberthreats, and also helps prevent security misconfigurations to create a robust threat defense.

Network Security Package

Network Security Package

Status
Enabled

Source *

UPGRADE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Source	Select a source to use to upgrade the software package. Local: Use a file stored on the local host. Firmware: Use the package included with the current firmware.	Local / Firmware	N/A
Select File (if Local is set for Source)	Select network security package downloaded from Moxa's website. Moxa will periodically release new security packages on the Moxa official website. Users can download the latest security package and then import it into their device.	N/A	N/A
Package Version (if Firmware is set for Source)	Shows the included package version of the current firmware.	N/A	Current Package Version

MXsecurity Agent Package

MXsecurity Agent Package

Status
Enabled

Source * ▼

UPGRADE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Source	<p>Select a source to use to upgrade the software package.</p> <p>Local: Use a file stored on the local host.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The Local option is not commonly used in standard environments. However, if you experience issues with your device and MXsecurity, please reach out to Moxa Technical Support. They can utilize the Local option as a troubleshooting interface.</p> </div> <p>Firmware: Use the package included with the current firmware.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Starting from v3.10, the MXsecurity Agent Package will be automatically upgraded when the firmware is upgraded. When upgraded, a "Successfully installed MXSecurity agent package" notification will appear when logging in, and a notification can be found in the Event Log > System Log.</p> </div>	Local / Firmware	N/A
Select File (if Source is Local)	This is a troubleshooting interface in case you encounter issues with your device and MXsecurity.	N/A	N/A
Package Version (if Source is Firmware)	This shows the included package version of the current firmware.	N/A	Current Package Version


Configuration Backup and Restore

Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore

This page helps you back up and restore your device configuration.

This page includes these tabs:

- Backup
- Restore
- File Encryption

 **Note**

For the TN-4900 Series, configuration files from firmware version v1.2 are not compatible with firmware v3.0 and higher due to substantial changes made between v1.2 and v3.0. Please create and import a new configuration file when changing from firmware v1.2 to v3.0 or higher. If you encounter any issues, please contact Moxa technical support.


Configuration Backup and Restore - Backup

Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - Backup

This page lets you create a backup of the current device configuration.

There are multiple methods of backing up the device configuration:

- Local
- TFTP
- USB
- SCP
- SFTP

 **Note**

For security reasons, we strongly recommend that you back up the system configuration to a secure storage location periodically.

Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method will export the configuration backup file to the local host.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Backup', 'Restore', and 'File Encryption'. The 'Backup' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a 'Method *' dropdown menu with 'Local' selected. A green 'BACK UP' button is located below the dropdown.

TFTP

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you upload the configuration backup file to a remote TFTP server.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface with the 'TFTP' method selected. The 'Method *' dropdown menu is set to 'TFTP'. Below it, there are two input fields: 'Server IP Address *' and 'File Name *'. A green 'BACK UP' button is located below the input fields.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server.	Valid IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration backup file.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

USB

If you select **USB** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to export the configuration backup file to a USB drive connected to the device. You can also enable automatic backups, which will export a configuration file to a USB drive whenever the configuration is changed.

Note

This feature requires USB Function to be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.

Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup | Restore | File Encryption

Method *
USB

BACK UP

Auto Backup of Configurations

Automatically Back Up *
Enabled

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Automatically Back Up	Enable or disable automatic backups.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

SCP

If you select **SCP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SCP (secure copy protocol) method lets you upload the configuration backup file to a remote system.

Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup | Restore | File Encryption

Method *
SCP

Account * 0 / 31 Password * 0 / 31

Server IP Address * 0 / 31 File Name * 0 / 63

BACK UP

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Account	Enter the remote system account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the remote system account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the remote system.	Valid IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration backup file.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

SFTP

If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method lets you upload the configuration backup file to a remote SFTP server.

Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup
Restore
File Encryption

Method *
SFTP

Account *

Password *

Server IP Address *

File Name *

BACK UP

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Account	Enter the SFTP server account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the SFTP server account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the SFTP server.	Valid IP address	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration backup file.	1 to 63 characters	N/A

Configuration Backup and Restore - Restore

Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - Restore

This page lets you restore a previously backed up configuration.

There are multiple methods of restoring the device configuration:

- Local
- TFTP
- USB
- SCP
- SFTP

Local

If you select **Local** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The Local method will restore from a configuration file on the local host.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface. At the top, there are three tabs: 'Backup', 'Restore' (which is active), and 'File Encryption'. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Configuration Firmware Version Checking' with a 'Status *' dropdown menu currently set to 'Enabled' and an 'APPLY' button. Underneath this section, there is a 'Method' dropdown menu set to 'Local'. Below the 'Method' dropdown is a 'Select File *' field with a folder icon to its right, and a 'RESTORE' button at the bottom.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable configuration file firmware version checking. This checks to make sure the configuration file is for the current firmware version or earlier.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Select File	Select the configuration file to restore from.	N/A	N/A

TFTP Server

If you select **TFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The TFTP method lets you restore from a configuration file on a remote TFTP server.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface. It has three tabs: 'Backup', 'Restore', and 'File Encryption'. The 'Restore' tab is active. Under 'Configuration Firmware Version Checking', there is a 'Status *' dropdown menu set to 'Enabled' and an 'APPLY' button. Below that, the 'Method' dropdown menu is set to 'TFTP'. There are two input fields: 'Server IP Address *' with a character count of '0 / 31' and 'File Name *' with a character count of '0 / 63'. A 'RESTORE' button is located at the bottom of the form.

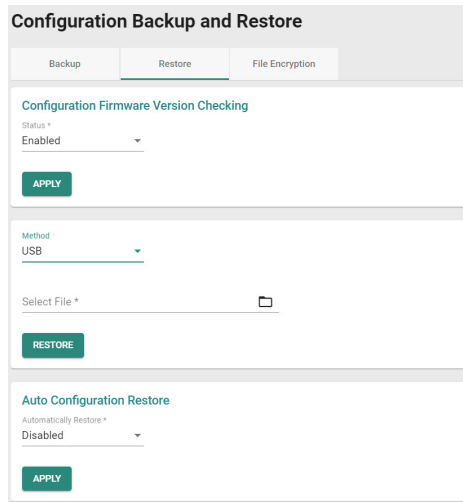
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable configuration file firmware version checking. This checks to make sure the configuration file is for the current firmware version or earlier.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the TFTP server.	Valid IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration file to restore from.	N/A	N/A

USB

If you select **USB** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The USB method allows you to restore from a configuration file on a USB drive connected to the device.

Note

This feature requires USB Function to be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable configuration file firmware version checking. This checks to make sure the configuration file is for the current firmware version or earlier. Note If the configuration file does not have a version header, it will still be considered to be a valid file to restore from.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Select File	Select the configuration file to restore from.	N/A	N/A
Automatically Restore (If Method is USB)	Enable or disable auto restore of the device configuration. If this function is enabled, the device will automatically restore its configuration from an inserted ABC-02 whenever the device is booted. Note The auto-restore feature will look for configuration files on an inserted ABC-02 in the following order: <ol style="list-style-type: none">1. An .ini configuration file named with the device's MAC address2. A sys.ini configuration file	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

SCP

If you select **SCP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SCP (secure copy protocol) method allows you to restore from a configuration file on a remote system.

The screenshot shows the 'Configuration Backup and Restore' interface with the 'Restore' tab selected. It includes a 'Configuration Firmware Version Checking' section with a 'Status' dropdown set to 'Enabled' and an 'APPLY' button. Below this is a 'Method' dropdown set to 'SCP'. There are four input fields: 'Account *' (0/31), 'Password *' (0/31), 'Server IP Address *' (0/31), and 'File Name *' (0/63). A 'RESTORE' button is located at the bottom of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable configuration file firmware version checking. This checks to make sure the configuration file is for the current firmware version or earlier.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Account	Enter the remote system account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the remote system account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the remote system.	Valid IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration file to restore from.	N/A	N/A

SFTP

If you select **SFTP** as your **Method**, these settings will appear. The SFTP method allows you to restore from a configuration file on a remote SFTP server.

Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup
Restore
File Encryption

Configuration Firmware Version Checking

Status *

APPLY

Method *

Account * Password *

0 / 31 0 / 31

Server IP Address * File Name *

0 / 31 0 / 63

RESTORE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable configuration file firmware version checking. This checks to make sure the configuration file is for the current firmware version or earlier.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Account	Enter the remote system account name.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the remote system account password.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Server IP Address	Specify the IP address of the remote system.	Valid IP address	N/A
File Name	Specify the file name of the configuration file to restore from.	N/A	N/A

Configuration Backup and Restore - File Encryption

Menu Path: System > System Management > Configuration Backup and Restore - File Encryption

This page lets you configure data encryption settings for exported configuration files.

Configuration Backup and Restore

Backup
Restore
File Encryption

Configuration File Signature *
Disabled ▼

Signature Information *
Encrypt sensitive information only ▼

Key String *
....

4 / 30

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Configuration File Signature	Enables or disables the use of a digital signature for checking the integrity of a configuration file.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Signature Information	Select the type of data to encrypt. Encrypt sensitive information only: Only encrypt password-related sensitive information in the exported configuration file. Encrypt all information: Encrypt all information in the exported configuration file.	Encrypt sensitive information only / Encrypt all information	Encrypt sensitive information only
Key String	Specify an encryption key string. The key string is used to decrypt encrypted configuration files.	1 to 30 characters	moxa

Account Management

Menu Path: System > Account Management

This section lets you manage the user accounts used to access the device.

This section includes these pages:

- User Accounts
- Password Policy

User Accounts

Menu Path: System > Account Management > User Accounts

This page allows you create, manage, modify, and remove user accounts.

Note

1. We strongly recommend changing the default password for the admin account after logging in for the first time.
2. The default admin account cannot be deleted and is enabled by default.
3. Only admin accounts may change the password for supervisor and user accounts.
4. For security reasons, it is recommended for the administrator to keep a record of the account list and associated users.

Warning

Due to the constraints of the IEC 62443-4-2 integrity verification standard, User Accounts will be reset to Factory Default under certain conditions. Specifically, all non-Factory Default user accounts will be entirely removed by the system when the following conditions are all met:

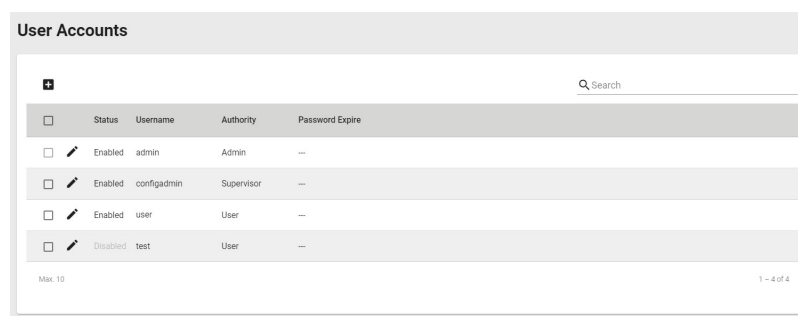
1. The original firmware version of the user device is V.3.0 or higher.
2. The user downgrades the firmware below to V.3.0 and performs any action on this firmware.
3. The firmware version is subsequently upgraded back to V.3.0 or higher.

In cases where all these conditions are satisfied, all user-created non-factory default accounts will be removed.

However, if a user's original firmware version was below V.3.0 and they later upgrade to V.3.0 or subsequent versions, this issue will not arise.

Limitations

You can create up to 10 user accounts.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Username	Authority	Password Expire
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	admin	Admin	—
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor	—
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	user	User	—
<input type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	test	User	—

UI Setting **Description**

Status Shows if the account is enabled or disabled.

Username Shows the username of the account.

Authority Shows the authority level of the account.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Password Expire Shows the number of days left before the password expires for the account. A - means the password will not expire. The password expiration time is determined by the **Password Max-life-time** setting on the **Password Policy** page. Refer to System > Account Management > Password Policy for more information.



Create New Account

Menu Path: System > Account Management > User Accounts - Create New Account

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **System > Account Management > User Accounts** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new user account. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Status	Enable or disable this user account.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Username	Enter a user name for this account.	4 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authority	<p>Select an authority role for this account.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Admin: The account will have read/write access to all configuration parameters. Supervisor: The account will have read/write access to all configuration parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts. User: The account can only view configurations and cannot make any modifications. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Refer to User Role Privileges for a list of what read/write access privileges are granted for the different authority levels.</p> </div>	Admin / Supervisor / User	N/A
New Password	<p>Enter a password for this account.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>The new password must follow any requirements set on the System > Account Management > Password Policy page.</p> </div>	4 to 64 characters, additional requirements are based on settings in System > Account Management > Password Policy	N/A
Confirm Password	<p>Enter the password again to confirm.</p>	4 to 64 characters	N/A

Edit Account Settings

Menu Path: [System > Account Management > User Accounts - Edit Account Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit ()** icon for an account on the **System > Account Management > User Accounts** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing user account. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

All account parameters can be modified, except for the username. To modify the username, you must create a new user account.

Edit Account Settings

Status *
Enabled

Username
admin
At least 4 characters 5 / 32

Authority *
Admin

Old Password *
At least 4 characters 0 / 64

New Password *
At least 4 characters 0 / 64

Confirm Password *
At least 4 characters 0 / 64

CANCEL


APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this user account.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Username	Shows the username for this account. The username cannot be changed.	4 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authority	<p>Select an authority role for this account.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Admin: The account will have read/write access to all configuration parameters. Supervisor: The account will have read/write access to all configuration parameters except create, delete, and modify accounts. User: The account can only view configurations and cannot make any modifications. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Refer to User Role Privileges for a list of what read/write access privileges are granted for the different authority levels.</p> </div>	Admin / Supervisor / User	N/A
Old Password	Enter the old password for this account.	4 to 64 characters	N/A
New Password	<p>Enter the new password for this account.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The new password must follow any requirements set on the System > Account Management > Password Policy page.</p> </div>	4 to 64 characters, additional requirements are based on settings in System > Account Management > Password Policy	N/A
Confirm Password	Enter the password again to confirm.	4 to 64 characters, additional requirements are based on settings in System > Account Management > Password Policy	N/A

Delete User Account

Menu Path: [System > Account Management > User Accounts](#)

You can delete user accounts by using the checkboxes to select the accounts you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.

Note

The default admin account is enabled by default and cannot be deleted.



Status	Username	Authority	Password Expire
<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	admin	Admin	--
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enabled	configadmin	Supervisor	--
<input type="checkbox"/> Enabled	user	User	--

Password Policy

Menu Path: System > Account Management > Password Policy

This page allows you to set password complexity rules for user accounts to improve security. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

To improve the security of your device and network, we recommend that you:

- Set the Minimum Length for passwords to 16.
- Enable the Password complexity strength check and enable all the requirement options.
- Set a Password Max-life-time to ensure that users change their password regularly.

Password Policy

Minimum Length *

4

4 - 16

Password complexity strength check

Disabled

Must contain at least one digit (0-9)

Disabled

Must include both upper and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z)

Disabled

Must contain at least one special character (~!@#\$%^&*~_~.,<>{}|())

Disabled

Password Max-life-time *

0

0 - 365

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Minimum Length	Set the minimum required password length.	4 to 16 characters	4
Password complexity strength check	Enable or disable the password complexity strength check.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Must contain at least one digit (0-9) (if Password complexity strength check is Enabled)	Enable or disable requiring the password to contain at least one digit.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Must include both upper and lower case letters (A-Z, a-z) (if Password complexity strength check is Enabled)	Enable or disable requiring the password to include both uppercase and lowercase letters.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Must contain at least one special character (~!@#\$%^&*~ ;,:.<>{}[]()) (if Password complexity strength check is Enabled)	Enable or disable requiring the password to contain at least one special character.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Password Max-life-time	Specify how long in days passwords will be valid for. When the password expires, the system will require the user to change their password. If this is set to 0, passwords will not expire.	0 to 365	0

License Management

Menu Path: System > License Management

This page lets you add new licenses and view details about existing ones.

This page includes these sections:

- Overview
- License History

Overview

This section lets you view details about your current license, and lets you add or get a new license. To add or get a new license, click on **ADD NEW LICENSE**, which will guide you through the process.

The screenshot displays the 'License Management' interface. The 'Overview' section shows a license card for 'IPS-DEVICE' with the following details:

- Name: IPS-DEVICE
- Start Date: 2022-04-01 12:20:00
- Status: Valid
- Valid Durations (days): 11246
- End Date: 2053-12-08 02:06:40
- Link: [Get New License Here](#)

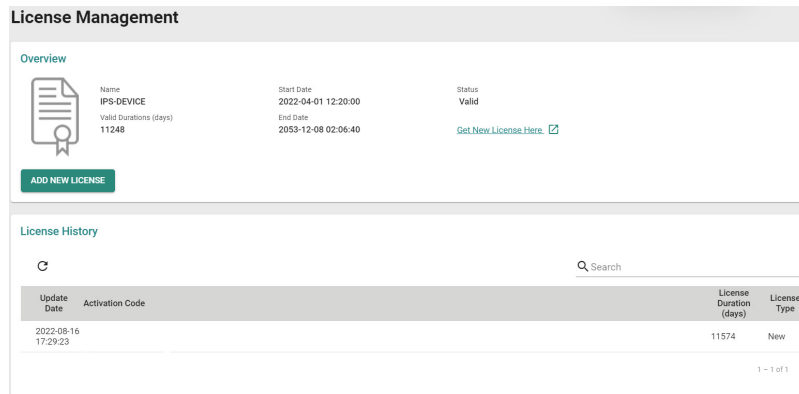
Below the overview is an 'ADD NEW LICENSE' button. The 'License History' section features a search bar and a table with the following data:

Update Date	Activation Code	License Duration (days)	License Type
2022-08-16 17:29:23		11574	New

Page 1 of 1

License History

This area lets you see details about previously installed licenses.



The screenshot shows the 'License Management' interface. It has an 'Overview' section with a document icon and a table of license details. Below that is a 'License History' section with a search bar and a table of license updates.

Name	Start Date	Status
IPS-DEVICE Valid Durations (days) 11248	2022-04-01 12:20:00 End Date: 2053-12-08 02:06:40	Valid

[Get New License Here](#)

ADD NEW LICENSE

Update Date	Activation Code	License Duration (days)	License Type
2022-08-16 17:29:23		11574	New

UI Setting	Description
Update Date	Shows date the license was updated.
Activation Code	Shows the activation code of the license.
License Duration (days)	Shows the remaining duration of the license in days.
License Type	Shows the type of license.

Adding a New License

Goal

This section provides step-by-step instructions on how to add a new license for your Moxa device.

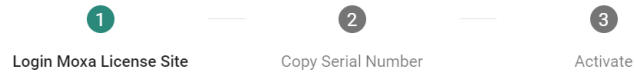
Prerequisites

- You will need the registration code for your license. You should have received this by email after purchasing the license.

Procedure

- In **System > License Management**, click on the **Add New License** button. A new page with instructions will appear.

Add New License



1. Login [Moxa License Site](#) .
2. Choose "Activate a Product License" and product type "Security Package" on the site.
3. Key in the Registration Code and Serial Number on Moxa License Site. Serial Number would be get at the next step.

CLOSE **NEXT**

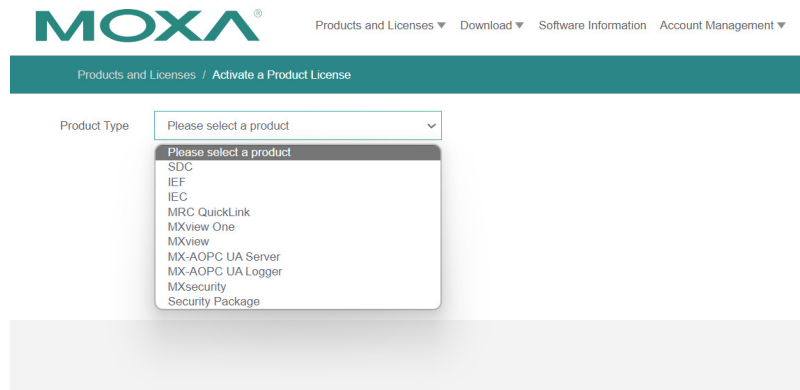
2. Click on the **Moxa License Site** link to open a new browser window for the Moxa Software Licensing site and log in.



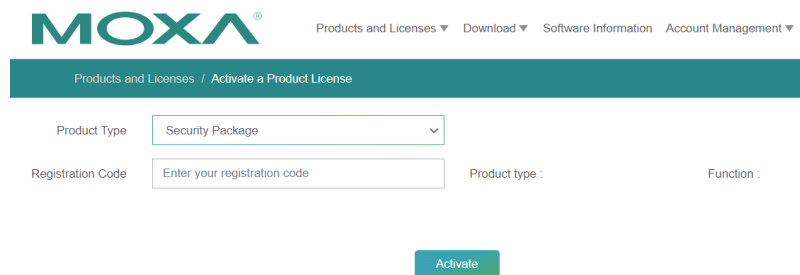
3. Click on the **Products and Licenses** category at the top of the page to expand it, and then select **Activate a Product License**.

Product type	Activate an add-on or renewal License	About to expire (Quantity)
SDC Activation Code	0	0
IEF Activation Code	0	0
IEC Activation Code	0	0
MRC QuickLink Activation Code	0	0
MView One Activation Code	0	0
MView Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-ADPC UA Server Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-ADPC UA Logger Activation Code	0	N/A
MXsecurity Activation Code	0	0
Security Package Activation Code	1	0

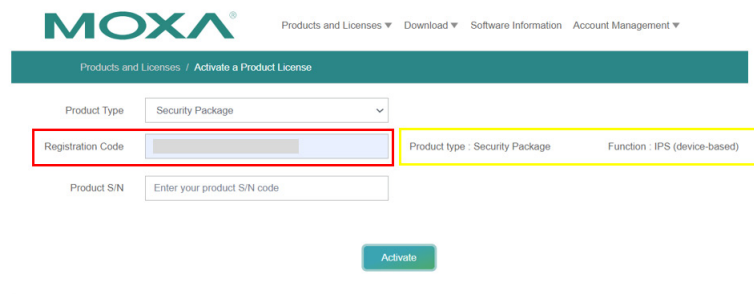
4. Choose the product type for which you want to add a license. In this example, we will be adding a **Security Package**.



5. Enter the **Registration Code** and click **Activate**.

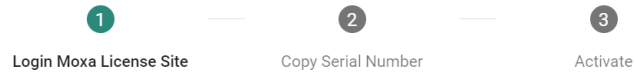


6. Once you click **Activate**, the **Product S/N** (Serial Number) will be displayed, and additional information will appear on the right side of the page.



7. Back in the Add New License window for your Moxa device, click **NEXT**.

Add New License

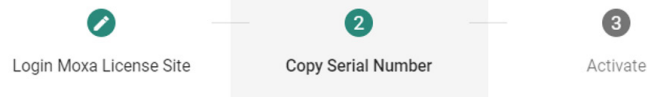


1. Login [Moxa License Site](#) .
2. Choose "Activate a Product License" and product type "Security Package" on the site.
3. Key in the Registration Code and Serial Number on Moxa License Site. Serial Number would be get at the next step.

CLOSE **NEXT**

8. Copy the serial number from the Moxa device UI window and paste it in the **Product S/N** field in the Software Licensing window, then click **ACTIVATE**.

Add New License



Copy the Serial Number to [Moxa License Site](#) .

Serial Number:

CLOSE **NEXT**

The screenshot shows the Moxa website interface for activating a license. The page title is 'MOXA®' with navigation links for 'Products and Licenses', 'Download', 'Software Information', and 'Account Management'. The current page is 'Products and Licenses / Activate a Product License'. The form includes a 'Product Type' dropdown menu set to 'Security Package', a 'Registration Code' field, and a 'Product S/N' field which is highlighted with a red box. Below the form is an 'Activate' button.

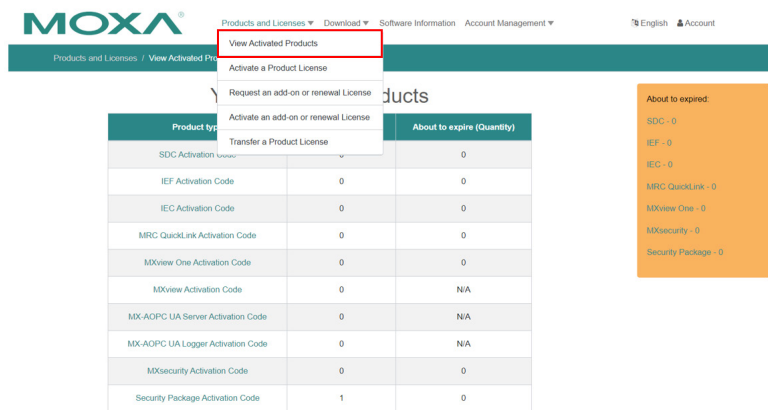
9. A message notification page will appear to confirm that your registration code was successfully activated.

Message notification

The Registration Code you entered is activated, you can check it in Software Information page.

I know

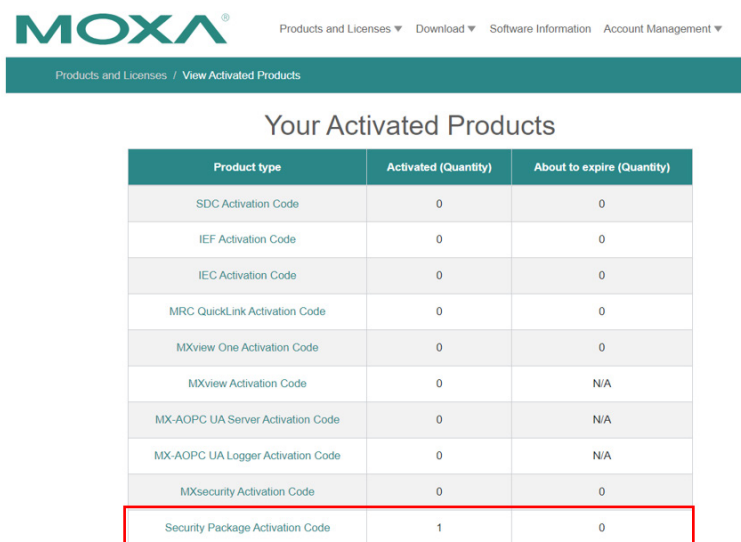
10. In the Software Licensing window, click on **Products and Licenses** to expand it, then select **View Activated Products**.



The screenshot shows the MOXA Software Licensing interface. The 'Products and Licenses' menu is expanded, and 'View Activated Products' is highlighted with a red box. Below the menu, a table lists various product types and their activation status.

Product type	Activated (Quantity)	About to expire (Quantity)
SDC Activation Code	0	0
IEF Activation Code	0	0
IEC Activation Code	0	0
MRC QuickLink Activation Code	0	0
MXview One Activation Code	0	0
MXview Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-AOPC UA Server Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-AOPC UA Logger Activation Code	0	N/A
MXsecurity Activation Code	0	0
Security Package Activation Code	1	0

11. Click on the name of the product you just activated. For this example, we need to click on **Security Package Activation Code**.



The screenshot shows the MOXA Software Licensing interface with the 'Your Activated Products' table. The 'Security Package Activation Code' row is highlighted with a red box.

Product type	Activated (Quantity)	About to expire (Quantity)
SDC Activation Code	0	0
IEF Activation Code	0	0
IEC Activation Code	0	0
MRC QuickLink Activation Code	0	0
MXview One Activation Code	0	0
MXview Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-AOPC UA Server Activation Code	0	N/A
MX-AOPC UA Logger Activation Code	0	N/A
MXsecurity Activation Code	0	0
Security Package Activation Code	1	0

12. Click on **View Activated Products** and then click on the **Activation Code**.

MOXA® Products and Licenses ▾ Download ▾ Software Information Account Management ▾

Products and Licenses / Activated Product List - Security Package

The product(s) you have activated - Security Package

About to expire ▾

[View Activated Products ▾](#)

Activation Code :

Product S/N :

Valid Start Date : 2023/04/06 15:17:39 Valid End Date : 2023/07/05 23:59:59

Total number of nodes : 1 Due day : 71 day

Function : IPS (device-based) Update History▼

Renewal/Additional Purchase Enquiry

Renewal/Additional Purchase Activation

13. Copy the activation code that appears in the pop-up notification.

Message notification

UOUyB5V

I know

14. In the device UI window, click **NEXT** and paste in your activation code, then click **APPLY**.

Add New License

1 Login Moxa License Site 2 Copy Serial Number 3 Activate

Download the license from [Moxa License Site](#), and paste the Activation Code here.

Activation Code


CLOSE APPLY

End Result

You will now see the new license in the **License History** section.

License Management

Overview


 Name: IPS-DEVICE
 Valid Durations (days): 71
 Start Date: 2023-04-06 03:17:39
 End Date: 2023-07-05 11:59:59
 Status: Valid
[Get New License Here](#)

ADD NEW LICENSE

License History

Search

Update Date	Activation Code	License Duration (days)
2023-04-06 16:44:25		90

Management Interface

Menu Path: System > Management Interface

This section lets you configure the interfaces use to manage the device.

This section includes these pages:

- Out of Band Management
- User Interface
- Hardware Interface
- SNMP
- Moxa Remote Connect
- MXsecurity

Out of Band Management

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Out of Band Management

This page lets you enable and monitor your device's out of band management port, which segregates traffic from the LAN port to provide a fully isolated and more secure Ethernet connection. This port uses an independent IP address so users can securely connect and configure devices without interfering with operational traffic.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

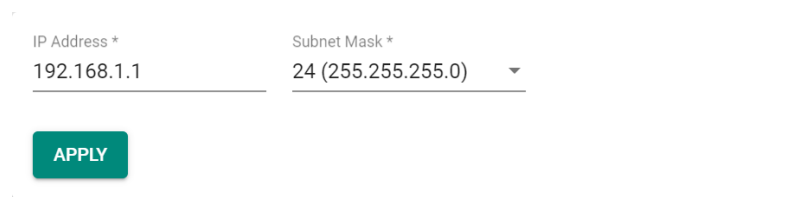
This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

Out of Band Management - Settings

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Out of Band Management - Settings

This page lets you configure the settings of your device's out of band management port.



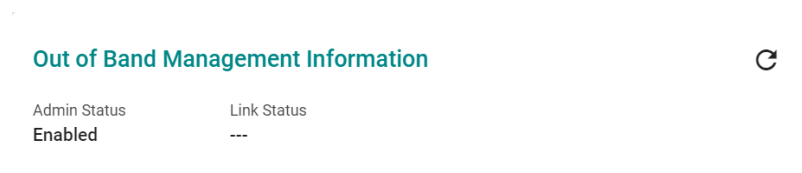
IP Address * 192.168.1.1 Subnet Mask * 24 (255.255.255.0)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address to use for the out of band management port.	Valid IP address	192.168.1.1
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask to use for the out of band management port.	Valid subnet mask	24 (255.255.255.0)

Out of Band Management - Status

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Out of Band Management - Settings

This page lets you view the status of your device's out of band management port.



Out of Band Management Information

Admin Status Enabled Link Status ---

UI Setting	Description
Admin Status	Shows whether the out of band management port is enabled or disabled. Refer to System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface for more information.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Link Status	Shows the link status of the out of band management port.
--------------------	---

User Interface

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [User Interface](#)

This page lets you configure which interfaces can be used to access the device.

 **Note**

For security reasons, users should access the device using the secure HTTPS and SSH interfaces.



User Interface

HTTP	TCP Port (HTTP) *
Enabled	80
	80, 1024 - 65535
HTTPS	TCP Port (HTTPS) *
Enabled	443
	443, 1024 - 65535
Telnet	TCP Port (Telnet) *
Enabled	10023
	23, 1024 - 65535
SSH	TCP Port (SSH) *
Enabled	22
	22, 1024 - 65535
Ping Response	
WAN, LAN, lan1, lan_...	
Moxa Service	
Enabled	
TCP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)	
443	
UDP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)	
40404	
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS *	
5	
1 - 10	
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH *	
5	
1 - 5	

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
HTTP	Enable or disable HTTP connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
TCP Port (HTTP)	Set the TCP port number for HTTP.	80, 1024 to 65535	80
HTTPS	Enable or disable HTTPS connections. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The administrator can manually import a self-signed certificate (in .p12 format) for web server (HTTPS) services. However, the administrator should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When the browser verifies the signature and accesses the device, it will return the subject name which the administrator can use to confirm the connected device is authorized.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.</p> <p>The lifetime of certificates generated for web server (HTTPS) services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
TCP Port (HTTPS)	Set the TCP port number for HTTPS.	443, 1024 to 65535	443
Telnet	Enable or disable HTTPS connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
TCP Port (Telnet)	Set the TCP port number for Telnet.	23, 1024 to 65535	23
SSH	Enable or disable HTTPS connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
TCP Port (SSH)	Set the TCP port number for SSH.	22, 1024 to 65535	22

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Ping Response	<p>Tick the selected interface to be ping.</p> <p> Note To ping selected interface, make sure the interface is checked in Ping Response.</p>	Drop-down check box	N/A
MOXA Service	<p>Enable or disable the MOXA Service.</p> <p> Note Moxa Service is only used for Moxa network management software. Moxa Service is only available for user accounts with admin privileges.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
TCP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)	The TCP port number for Moxa Service. This setting cannot be changed.	443	443
UDP Port for Moxa Service (Encrypted)	The UDP port number for Moxa Service. This setting cannot be changed.	40404	40404
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for HTTP+HTTPS	Set the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in to the Moxa Router using HTTP and HTTPS.	1 to 10	5
Maximum Number of Login Sessions for Telnet+SSH	Set the maximum combined number of users that can be logged in to the Moxa Router using Telnet and SSH.	1 to 5	5

Hardware Interface (all products except TN Series)

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [Hardware Interface](#)

This section lets you configure the additional hardware interfaces for your device.

 **Note**

Available settings will vary depending on your product model.

USB Function *
Out of Band Interface *

Disabled ▾
Enabled ▾

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
USB Function	Enable or disable the USB interface on the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Out of Band Interface	Enable or disable the out of band port on the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Hardware Interface (TN Series only)

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [Hardware Interface](#)

This page lets you configure the additional hardware interfaces for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- USB
- Fault LED

USB

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [Hardware Interface - USB](#)

This page lets you enable or disable the USB interface on your device for use with a USB drive.

USB Function *
Disabled ▾

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
USB Function	Enable or disable the USB interface on the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Fault LED

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface - Fault LED

This page lets you select the behavior of the Fault LED.

LED Mode

Moxa Default / System Fault Alarm

Advanced / Configuration Change Alarm

APPLY

Fault LED Mode Option Description

	Moxa Default	Advanced
Off	Device is operating normally	Device is operating normally
On	System Fault	System Fault
Rapid blinking for 6 sec	N/A	Configuration Importing and Saving

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
LED Mode	Select the behavior mode to use for the Fault LED. Moxa Default / System Fault Alarm: The Fault LED will be off when the device is operating normally, and on when there is a system fault. Advanced / Configuration Change Alarm: The Fault LED will be off when the device is operating normally, and on when there is a system fault. When the device configuration is being imported and saved, the Fault LED will blink rapidly for 6 seconds.	Moxa Default / Advanced	Moxa Default

SNMP

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP

This section lets you configure SNMP settings for your device.

There are two tabs in this section:

- General
- SNMP Account

SNMP - General

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP - General

This page lets you enable or disable SNMP. SNMP versions V1, V2c, and V3 are supported.

Limitations

You can set up to two community names with corresponding access controls.

SNMP

General | SNMP Account

SNMP Version *
V1, V2c, V3

User-Defined Engine ID
Disabled

Community Name 1 *
public
6 / 64

Access Control 1 *
Read Only

Community Name 2 *
private
7 / 64

Access Control 2 *
Read Write

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
SNMP Version	Specify the SNMP protocol version used to manage your device. Disabled: Disable SNMP. V1, V2c, V3: Enable SNMP V1, V2c, and V3. V1, V2c: Enable SNMP V1, V2c only. V3 only: Enable SNMP V3 only.	Disabled / V1, V2c, V3 / V1, V2c / V3 only	Disabled
User-Defined Engine ID (Only for SNMP Version is V1, V2c, V3 or V3 only)	Enable or disable use of a user-defined engine ID. If disabled, the system will use the default engine ID.	Disabled / Enabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Engine ID	Specify an engine ID to manage your device. If User-Defined Engine ID is disabled, the engine ID will be view-only.	2 to 54 hexadecimal character string. The length of the string must be even.	800021f305
Community Name 1	Specify a community string name match to use for authentication.	1 to 64 characters	public
Community Name 2	Specify a community string name match to use for authentication.	1 to 64 characters	private
Access Control 1	Specify the access control type to use when Community String 1 is matched.	Read Write / Read only / No Access	Read Only
Access Control 2	Specify the access control type to use when Community String 2 is matched.	Read Write / Read only / No Access	Read Write

SNMP - SNMP Account

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account

This page lets you configure the SNMP management accounts for the device. SNMP management accounts are provided for Admin and User-level authority.

Authority	Authentication Type	Encryption Method
Admin	MDS	None
User	MDS	None

UI Setting	Description
Authority	Shows authority level of the management account. admin: Can read/write configuration settings. user: Can only read configuration settings.
Authentication Type	Shows the authentication type used for the account.
Encryption Method	Shows the encryption method used for the account.

Edit SNMP Account Settings


Menu Path: System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an account on the **System > Management Interface > SNMP - SNMP Account** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify the selected account. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit SNMP Admin Account Settings

Authentication Type *
 MD5

Encryption Method *
 AES

Encryption Key * 
 At least 8 characters 0 / 64


CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Type	Select which authentication method to use for the account. None: No authentication will be used. MD5: Use MD5 authentication. SHA: Use SHA authentication.	None / MD5 / SHA	None
Encryption Method	Select which encryption method to use for the account.	None / DES / AES	None
Encryption Key (if Encryption Method is DES or AES)	Specify an encryption password for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A

Moxa Remote Connect

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Moxa Remote Connect

This section lets you establish a connection to the MRC Quick Link cloud platform to monitor and remotely access your device. Visit the [Moxa Remote Connect Suite](#) page for more information.

 **Note**

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

There are two tabs in this section:

- Settings
- Status

Moxa Remote Connect - Settings

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [Moxa Remote Connect - Settings](#)

This page lets you enable or disable MRC service and configure its connection parameters.

MRC

Click **APPLY** to activate the device in MRC Quick Link.

Click **RESET KEY** to unbind the device from MRC Quick Link.

 **Note**

When the gateway exhibits any of the following behaviors, it will appear as offline in MRC Quick Link:

- Clicking RESET KEY in the MRC settings page of the gateway web console
- Clicking Reset to Defaults in the gateway web console
- Physically pressing the reset button on the hardware

To reactivate the gateway, you will need to perform the deactivate function and download a new activation key in MRC Quick Link and then enter it into the gateway, or create a new gateway in MRC Quick Link and enter a new key into the gateway.

MRC

MRC Service *
 Disabled ▾


Activation Type *
 Enter Activation Key ▾ Activation Key _____

Bridge IP Configuration ⓘ

IP Address * Subnet Mask *
 192.168.126.254 24 (255.255.255.0) ▾

Bridge Member * ⓘ

APPLY RESET KEY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
MRC Service	Enable or disable the MRC service for establishing remote access connections.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Activation Type	Select the Activation Type. Enter Activation Key: Manually enter an activation key for authentication. Import from USB drive: Insert a USB drive that has an activation key on it for authentication.	Enter Activation Key / Import from USB	Enter Activation Key
	<p> Note</p> <p>To use this, USB functionality must be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.</p>		

Bridge IP Configuration

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify an IP address for the bridge.	Valid IP address	192.168.126.254
Subnet Mask	Specify a subnet mask for the bridge.	Valid subnet mask	24(255.255.255.0)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Bridge Member	<p>Select which ports will be members of the bridge.</p> <p>Note Only devices connected to the Bridge port can be remotely accessed via MRC service. Please ensure that the device's IP and the Bridge IP are set within the same subnet.</p> <p>Note Bridge members are limited to LAN ports only. If any port is used as a WAN port, please do not add that port as a bridge member to avoid affecting the WAN network settings.</p>	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

Tunnel Control Settings

Tunnel Control Settings

Tunnel Control ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Tunnel Control	<p>Select the Tunnel Control Type.</p> <p>Persistent Connection: Always establish a tunnel for remote access.</p> <p>Controlled by Key file from USB drive: Establish a tunnel for remote access only when a USB containing the key is inserted into the device.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>This feature requires USB Function to be enabled in System > Management Interface > Hardware Interface.</p> </div> <p>Controlled by DI: Establish a tunnel for remote access only when the Digital Input is detected as On.</p>	Persistent Connection / Controlled by USB Key / Controlled by DI	Permanent Connection

Moxa Remote Connect - Status

Menu Path: System > Management Interface > Moxa Remote Connect - Status

This page lets you view the status and details of your Moxa Remote Connect connection.

MRC Status

This shows the current status of your MRC connection.



UI Setting	Description
Internet	<p>Shows the status of your device's Internet connection.</p> <p>Green: The device is connected to the Internet.</p> <p>Red: The device failed to connect to the Internet.</p> <p>Gray: The device has not been activated yet.</p>

UI Setting	Description
MRC Cloud	Shows the status of your device's MRC Cloud connection. Green: Connected to MRC Cloud successfully. Red: Failed to connect to MRC Cloud. Gray: Have not tried to connect to MRC Cloud yet.
Key Verification	Shows the status of your device's key verification. Green: Successfully verified the activation key. Red: Failed to verify the activation key. Gray: Have not tried to verify the activation key yet.
Online	Shows the status of your device in MRC Quick Link. Green: Device online. Red: Device offline. Gray: Device not authenticated yet.
Connected	Shows the status of your device's remote connection. Green: Remote connection established successfully. Red: Failed to establish remote connection. Gray: Remote connection not yet established yet.

MRC Information


MRC Information

Gateway Name
 gw_status_4302_test

UI Setting	Description
Gateway Name	Shows the name of this device in MRC Quick Link.

Local Device List

Local Device List

Local Device Name	Status	Device Type	IP Address	Virtual IP	Connectivity Check
 device_903	● Online	IP Ethernet Device	192.168.126.3	10.11.64.2	Ping Check (10 sec.)

UI Setting	Description
Local Device Name	Shows the name of the local device connected to this device.
Status	Shows the connection status of the local device.
Device Type	Shows the type of the local device. (IP Ethernet Device / Layer 2 Ethernet Device / Serial Device)
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the local device.
Virtual IP	Shows the virtual IP address of the local device that is assigned by the MRC Quick Link server.
Connectivity Check	Shows how the local device's alive status will be checked for connectivity.

MXsecurity

Menu Path: [System](#) > [Management Interface](#) > [MXsecurity](#)

This page lets you establish a connection to an MXsecurity instance to monitor and manage the device.

After configuring the connection parameters, click **CONNECT** to establish the connection.

Note

To manage your the device through MXsecurity, the MXsecurity Agent Package must be installed and enabled first. Refer to the Software Package Management section for more information and instructions.

MXsecurity

Connection Status

Status	Package Version
Connecting	1.0.0017
Service Address	Profile Synchronization
3.129.140.152	---

New Connection

Service Address

0 / 64

HTTPS Port

1 - 65535

Communication Port

1 - 65535

CONNECT

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Service Address	Set the MXsecurity server IP address or domain name.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
HTTPS Port	Specify the HTTPS port number for MXsecurity.	1 to 65535	443
Communication Port	Specify the communication port number for MXsecurity.	1 to 65535	8833

Time

Menu Path: System > Time

This section lets you configure the system time settings for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- System Time
- NTP/SNTP Server

System Time

Menu Path: System > Time > System Time

This section lets you set up time settings for the device itself.

This page includes these tabs:

- Time
- Time Zone
- NTP Authentication

Note

This device does not include a real-time clock. If there is no NTP/SNTP server on the network or if the device is not connected to the Internet, the Current Time and Current Date must be manually reconfigured after each reboot.

System Time - Time

Menu Path: System > System Time - Time

This page lets you set the system time and date.

You can set your system time using these clock sources:

- Local
- SNTP Time
- NTP Time

Local Time

If you select **Local** as your **Clock Source**, these settings will appear. Local lets you set your device's system time manually, or you can copy the time from your local host by clicking **SYNC FROM BROWSER**. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

System Time

Time
Time Zone
NTP Authentication

Current Time
1970-04-18 11:13:36 UTC+08:00

Clock Source
Local ▼

Date *
1970-04-18 📅

Time
上午 11:13 🕒

APPLY
SYNC FROM BROWSER

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Current Time	This shows the device's current system date, time, and time zone.	N/A	N/A
Date	Specify the date manually in YYYY-MM-DD format.	YYYY-MM-DD	Current date
Time	Specify the time manually in HH:MM AM/PM format.	HH:MM AM/PM	Current time

SNTP Time

If you select **SNTP** as your **Clock Source**, these settings will appear. SNTP allows your device to update its system time from a Simplified Network Time Protocol (SNTP) time server. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

System Time

Time
Time Zone
NTP Authentication

Current Time
1970-04-18 11:13:36 UTC+08:00

Clock Source
SNTP ▼

Time Server 1

Time Server 2

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Current Time	This shows the device's current system date, time, and time zone.	N/A	N/A
Time Server 1	Set the IP or domain address of the primary time server (e.g., 192.168.1.1, time.stdtime.gov.tw , or time.nist.gov).	IP address or domain, 1 to 39 characters	N/A
Time Server 2	Set the IP or domain address of the secondary time server. This will be used by the device if it cannot connect to the primary time server.	IP address or domain, 1 to 39 characters	N/A

NTP Time

If you select **NTP** as your **Clock Source**, these settings will appear. NTP allows your device to update its system time from a Network Time Protocol (NTP) server. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

System Time

Time
Time Zone
NTP Authentication

Current Time
1970-04-18 11:13:36 UTC+08:00

Clock Source
NTP

Time Server 1
0 / 39

Time Server 2
0 / 39

Authentication
Disabled

Authentication
Disabled

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Current Time	This shows the device's current system date, time, and time zone.	N/A	N/A
Time Server 1	Set the IP or domain address of the primary time server (e.g., 192.168.1.1, time.stdtime.gov.tw , or time.nist.gov).	IP address or domain, 1 to 39 characters	N/A
Time Server 2	Set the IP or domain address of the secondary time server. This will be used by the device if it cannot connect to the primary time server.	IP address or domain, 1 to 39 characters	N/A
Authentication	Specify whether to disable or use a key ID for NTP server authentication. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;">To use authentication, set up the Key ID value in the NTP Authentication tab first. After setting it up, it will become available in the Authentication drop-down.</div>	Disabled / Key IDs created in the NTP Authentication tab	Disabled

System Time - Time Zone

Menu Path: System > System Time - Time Zone

This page lets you set the time zone settings of your device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

Changing the time zone will automatically adjust the device's system time. Be sure to set the time zone before setting the system time.

System Time

Time Time Zone NTP Authentication

Time Zone
(UTC+08:00)Taipei

Daylight Saving
Daylight Saving Status
Disabled

APPLY

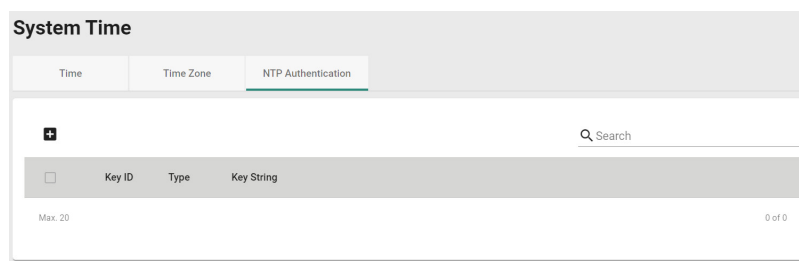
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Time Zone	Select a time zone from the list of UTC (Coordinated Universal Time) time zones.	N/A	N/A
Daylight Saving Status	Enable or disable Daylight Saving time adjustment.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Offset (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the offset (in hours) to add to the time when Daylight Saving time is active.	0 to 12	0
Month (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the month Daylight Saving time begins/ends.	User-specified month	N/A
Week (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the week Daylight Saving time begins/ends.	User-specified week	N/A
Day (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the day of the week Daylight Saving time begins/ends.	User-specified day	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Hour (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the hour Daylight Saving time begins/ends.	User-specified hour	00
Minutes (if Daylight Saving Status is Enabled)	Set the minute Daylight Saving time begins/ends.	User-specified minute(s)	00

System Time - NTP Authentication

Menu Path: System > System Time - NTP Authentication


This section describes how to configure NTP Authentication. After creating a key, it will be available for use in the **Time** tab. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description
Key ID	Shows the key ID for the authentication key.
Type	Shows the type of NTP authentication the key uses. MD5: Uses authentication based on MD5 algorithms. SHA: Uses authentication based on SHA-512 algorithms.
Key String	Shows the key string used by the authentication key.

Create Entry

Menu Path: System > System Time - NTP Authentication - Create Entry

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **System > System Time - NTP Authentication** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new NTP authentication key. Click **CREATE** to save your settings and create the new authentication key.

System Time

Time Time Zone NTP Authentication

+ Q Search


<input type="checkbox"/>	Key ID	Type	Key String

Max. 20 0 of 0

Create Entry

Key ID *

Type *

Key String * 


CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Key ID	Specify the key ID to use for the authentication key.	1 to 65535 characters	N/A
Type	Specify the type of NTP authentication the key should use. MD5: Sets authentication based on MD5 algorithms. SHA: Sets authentication based on SHA-512 algorithms.	MD5 / SHA-512	N/A
Key String	Specify the key string to use for the authentication key.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

Edit Entry

Menu Path: System > System Time - NTP Authentication - Edit Entry

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a key on the **System > System Time - NTP Authentication** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing authentication key. Click **APPLY** to save your settings.


Note

All key parameters can be modified, except for the key ID. To modify the key ID, you must create a new authentication key.

Edit Entry Settings

Key ID
1
1 - 65535

Type *
MD5

Key String * 
0 / 32

CANCEL



APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Key ID	Shows the key ID for this authentication key. The key ID cannot be changed.	N/A	Current key ID
Type	Specify the type of NTP authentication the key should use. MD5 : Sets authentication based on MD5 algorithms. SHA : Sets authentication based on SHA-512 algorithms.	MD5 / SHA	N/A
Key String	Specify the key string to use for the authentication key.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

Delete Entry

You can delete authentication keys by using the checkboxes to select the keys you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.

System Time

Time	Time Zone	NTP Authentication	
			
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Key ID	Type	Key String
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	1	MD5	*****

Max. 20

NTP/SNTP Server

Menu Path: System > Time > NTP/SNTP Server


NTP/SNTP server allows you to set up: **NTP/SNTP Server, Client Authentication.**
 While finished, Click **APPLY** to save the settings.

NTP/SNTP Server

NTP/SNTP Server *
 Disabled ▼

Client Authentication *
 Disabled ▼


APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
NTP/SNTP Server	<p>Enable or disable NTP/SNTP server functionality for clients:</p> <p>Enabled: Enable NTP/SNTP server functionality for clients.</p> <p>Disabled: Disabled NTP/SNTP server functionality for clients.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Client Authentication	<p>Enable or disable client authentication of NTP/SNTP server:</p> <p>Enabled: Enable Client Authentication functionality for clients.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Before enabling Client Authentication, you will need to create NTP authentication keys first.</p> <p>Refer to System > System Time - NTP Authentication for more information.</p> </div> <p>Disabled: Disable Client Authentication functionality for clients.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Power Management

Menu Path: System > Power Management

This page lets you configure the power management features of your device.

 **Note**

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

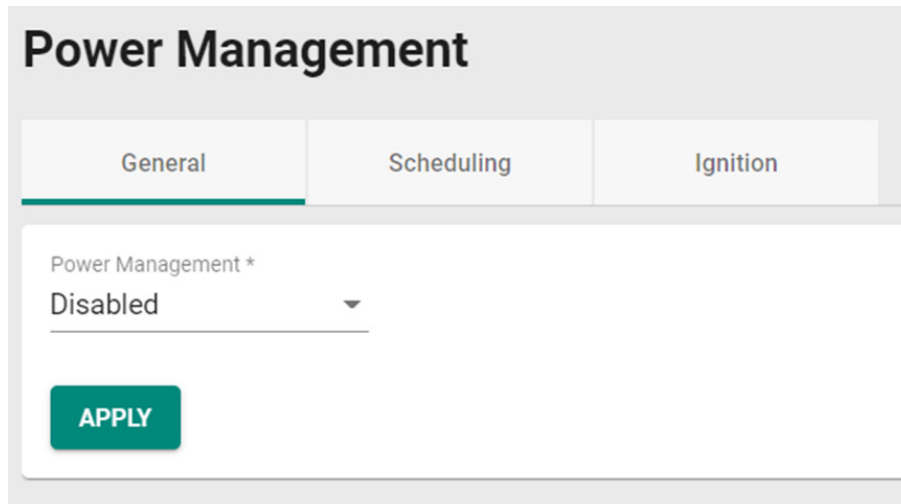
This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Scheduling
- Ignition

Power Management - General

Menu Path: System > Power Management - General

This page lets you enable power management for your device. If enabled, you can control how and when the device enters a power-saving state. If disabled, the device will never enter power-saving mode.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Power Management	<p>Select a power management setting for your device.</p> <p>Disabled: Disables power management.</p> <p>Scheduling: Enables power-saving mode based on a schedule you define. Refer to Scheduling for more details.</p> <p>Ignition: Enables power-saving mode based on signals sent to the digital input, allowing the device to enter power-saving mode when a vehicle ignition is off.</p>	Disabled / Scheduling / Ignition	Disabled

Power Management - Scheduling

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Scheduling

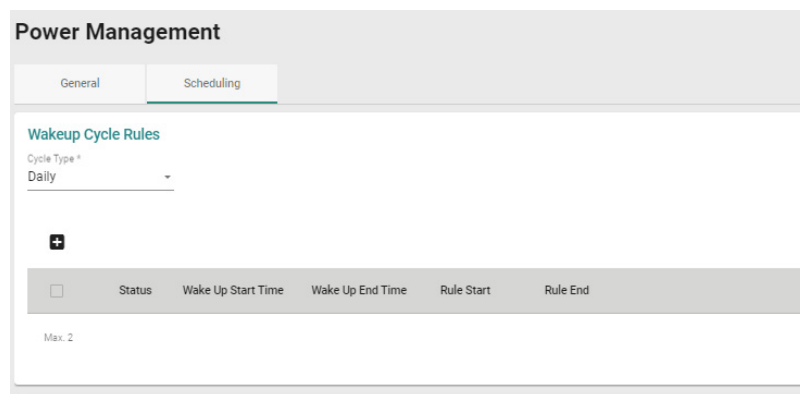
This page lets you create both one-time and repeating schedules to determine when the device should enter and leave power-saving mode.

🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 2 cycle rules, and up to 12 one-time rules.

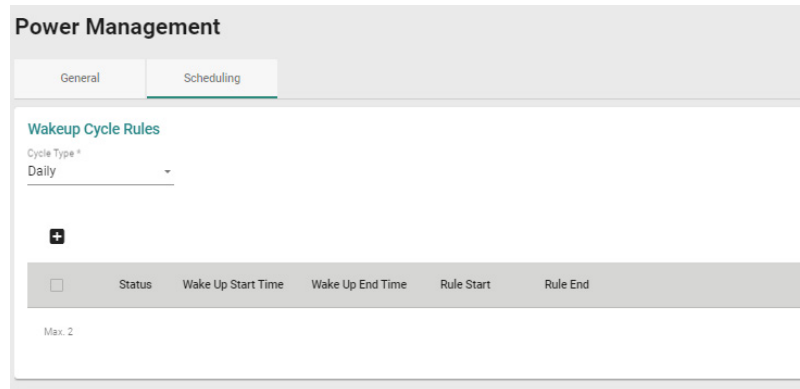
- Both cycle rules must use the same Cycle Type. If the Cycle Type is changed, all existing cycle rules will be deleted.
- If the Cycle Type is set to Weekly or Monthly, the start and end times must be within the same day. If you need the start and end times to be on different days, create a One Time Rule.

Wakeup Cycle Rules



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Cycle Type	<p>Select a wakeup cycle to use for power-saving mode scheduling.</p> <p>Hourly: The device will enter and leave power-saving mode according to specific times every hour.</p> <p>Daily: The device will enter and leave power-saving mode according to specific times every day.</p> <p>Weekly: The device will enter and leave power-saving mode according to specific times on specific days of the week. Multiple days of the week may be selected.</p> <p>Monthly: The device will enter and leave power-saving mode according to specific times on specific days of the month. Multiple days of the month may be selected.</p>	Hourly / Daily / Weekly / Monthly	Daily

Wakeup Cycle Rule List



UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows the status of the wakeup cycle rule.
Wake Up Start Time	Shows when the device will leave power-saving mode. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;">The units shown will vary depending on the wakeup cycle type used.</div>
Wake Up End Time	Shows when the device will enter power-saving mode. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 5px;">The units shown will vary depending on the wakeup cycle type used.</div>
Rule Start	Shows when the wakeup cycle rule will start taking effect.
Rule End	Shows when the wakeup cycle rule will no longer take effect.

Add Cycle Rule

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Scheduling

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon in the **Wakeup Cycle Rule List** on the **System > Power Management - Scheduling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new wakeup cycle rule. The options shown will vary depending on what **Cycle Type** is selected.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

Add Cycle Rule - Hourly

If the **Cycle Type** is set to **Hourly**, these options will appear.


Add Cycle Rule


Status *
Enabled

Wake Up Start Time *
HH:00

Wake Up End Time *
HH:15

Rule Schedule

Start Date * 

End Date * 

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Wakeup Start Time	Specify the minute when the device will leave power-saving mode each hour.	00 to 59	00
Wakeup End Time	Specify the minute when the device will enter power-saving mode each hour.	00 to 59	15
Start Date	Specify when this cycle rule will take effect.	Date	N/A
End Date	Specify when this cycle rule will end.	Date	N/A

Add Cycle Rule - Daily

If the **Cycle Type** is set to **Daily**, these options will appear.

Add Cycle Rule

Status *
Enabled ▾

Wake Up Start Time
上午 12:00 ⌚

Wake Up End Time
上午 12:15 ⌚

Rule Schedule

Start Date * 📅

End Date * 📅

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Wakeup Start Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will leave power-saving mode every day. You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:00 AM
Wakeup End Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will enter power-saving mode every day. You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:15 AM
Start Date	Specify when this cycle rule will take effect.	Date	N/A
End Date	Specify when this cycle rule will end.	Date	N/A

Add Cycle Rule - Weekly

If the **Cycle Type** is set to **Weekly**, these options will appear.

Edit Cycle Rule

Status *	Day(s) of the Week *
Enabled ▾	Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, F... ▾
Wake Up Start Time	Wake Up End Time
上午 12:00 ⌚	上午 12:15 ⌚

Rule Schedule

Start Date *	
2023-11-21 📅	
End Date *	
2023-11-28 📅	

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Day(s) of the Week	Select which days of the week this rule will apply to. You can select multiple days.	Days of the week	N/A
Wakeup Start Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will leave power-saving mode on the specified Day(s) of the Week . You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:00 AM
Wakeup End Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will enter power-saving mode on the specified Day(s) of the Week . You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:15 AM
Start Date	Specify when this cycle rule will take effect.	Date	N/A
End Date	Specify when this cycle rule will end.	Date	N/A

Add Cycle Rule - Monthly

If the **Cycle Type** is set to **Monthly**, these options will appear.

Edit Cycle Rule

Status *	Enabled	Day(s) of the Month	1,31
		1 - 31, allow comma(,)	day
Wake Up Start Time	上午 12:00	Wake Up End Time	上午 12:15

Rule Schedule

Start Date *	2023-11-28
End Date *	2023-11-28


CANCEL

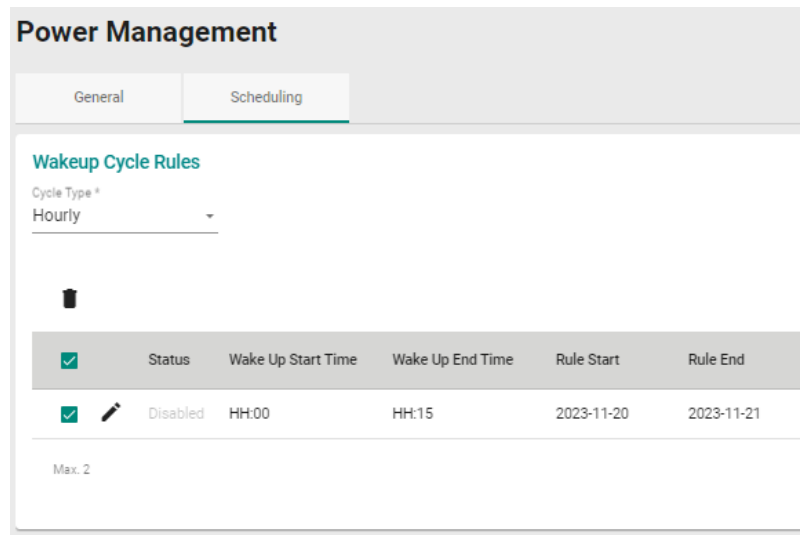
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the cycle rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Day(s) of the Month	Select which days of the month this rule will apply to. You can select multiple days by entering a comma in between each day (e.g., 1,2,16). If a month does not have a specified day in it, the rule will be ignored for that day.	1 to 31, multiple days should be separated by a comma	N/A
Wakeup Start Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will leave power-saving mode on the specified Day(s) of the Month . You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:00 AM
Wakeup End Time	Specify the hour and minute when the device will enter power-saving mode on the specified Day(s) of the Month . You can also click the clock icon to select the time from a drop-down list.	Time	12:15 AM
Start Date	Specify when this cycle rule will take effect.	Date	N/A
End Date	Specify when this cycle rule will end.	Date	N/A

Delete Cycle Rule

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Scheduling

You can delete a cycle rule by using the checkboxes to select the cycle rules you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



One Time Rule List



UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows the status of the one-time rule.
Type	Shows the type of the one-time rule. Power Saving: The device will enter power-saving mode during the specified period. Wake Up: The device will leave power-saving mode during the specified period.
Rule Start	Shows the rule start date.
Rule End	Shows the rule end date.

Add One-time Rule

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Scheduling

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon in the **One Time Rule** list on the **System > Power Management - Scheduling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new one-time rule.



Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

Add One-time Rule



Status *
Enabled ▾

Type *
Power Saving ▾

Start

Start Date *  Start Time  --:--

End


End Date *  End Time  --:--

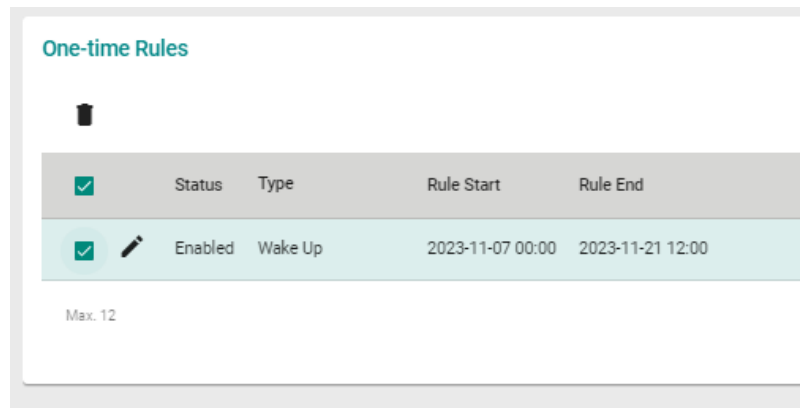
[CANCEL](#) [APPLY](#)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the one-time rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Type	Select the type for the one-time rule. Power Saving: The device will enter power-saving mode during the specified period. Wake Up: The device will leave power-saving mode during the specified period. This requires an active cycle rule.	Power Saving / Wake up	Power Saving
Start Date	Specify the date this one-time rule will take effect.	Date	N/A
Start Time	Specify the time this one-time rule will take effect.	Time	N/A
End Date	Specify the date this one-time rule will end.	Date	N/A
End Time	Specify the time this one-time rule will end.	Time	N/A

Delete One-time Rule

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Scheduling

You can delete a one-time rule by using the checkboxes to select the one-time rules you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



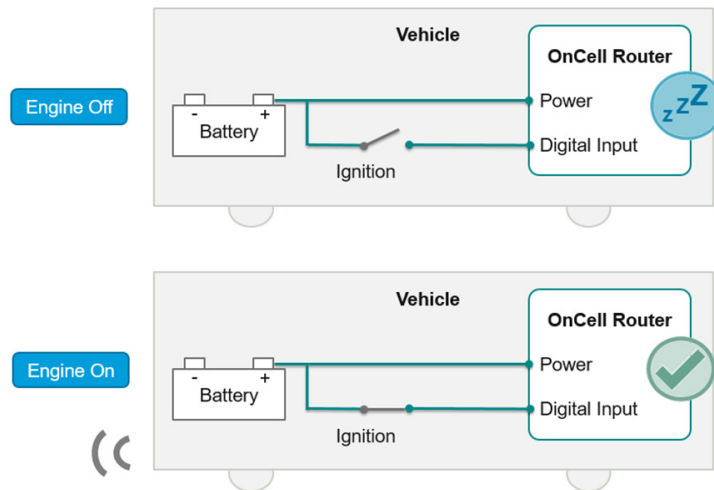
Power Management - Ignition

Menu Path: System > Power Management - Ignition

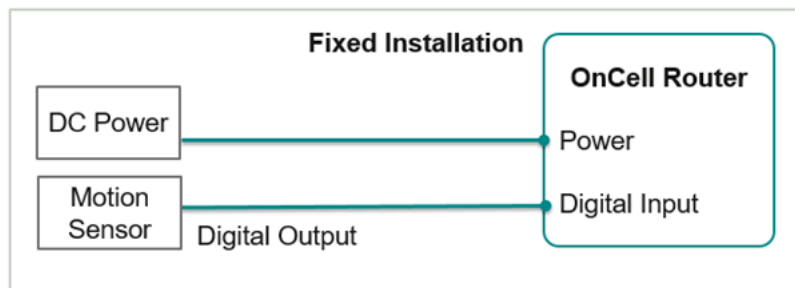
Note

The Ignition feature is only applicable to OnCell G4302 hardware rev 1.1 and higher.

This page lets you enable the Ignition feature, which lets you use the digital input to determine when the device should enter and leave power-saving mode. This allows the device to enter and leave power saving modes when a vehicle starts or turns off. The device detects the ignition status through the digital input, and the device will enter power saving mode when the vehicle ignition is off to save battery power.



This feature can also use on fixed installations with an I/O to monitor an external device such as a motion sensor. You can configure the I/O line to wake the device or put the device in power saving mode.



General	Scheduling	Ignition
Wakeup DI Status *		
Low		
DI Sensing Time		
5		
5 - 3600 sec.		
Power Saving Delay Time		
15		
0 - 15 min.		
APPLY		

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Wakeup DI Status	Select the DI status when waking up the device. High: The device will leave power saving mode when it detects the DI high and enters power saving mode when it detects DI is low. Low: The device will leave power saving mode when it detects the DI is low and enters power saving mode when it detects DI is high.	High / Low	High
DI Sensing Time	Enter the number of seconds the DI status must remain changed for before the device determines there is a change in DI status. This is useful for avoiding erratic behavior when the DI signal is unstable.	5-3600	5
Power Saving Delay Time	Enter the number of minutes to delay entering enter power saving mode after the vehicle's ignition shuts off. This is useful if you want to maintain a network connection while the vehicle's engine is off for a short period of time.	0-15	15

SMS

Menu Path: System > SMS

This page allows you to configure your device's SMS settings.

When a cellular connection is not available or if there is limited service, SMS provides an emergency recovery mechanism and a way for performing out-of-band management. The remote SMS control feature helps you get the current cellular status of the device, re-establish the cellular connection, and restart the system by sending specific SMS messages to the device. To ensure the security of out-of-band communication, the SMS function supports password protection and trusted number authentication. With wireless out-of-band management, engineers can control and troubleshoot remote devices, avoiding costly onsite visits by service technicians and minimizing service downtime.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

Note

When sending remote control SMS messages, wait 30 seconds between each message to ensure optimal system stability.

This settings area includes these sections:

- General

- Remote Control List
- Send SMS

SMS - General


Menu Path: System > SMS - General

This page lets you configure basic SMS settings and the trusted number list.

Limitations


You can add up to 4 trusted numbers.

SMS Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
SMS Remote Control	Enable or disable SMS remote control. If enabled, the device can be controlled remotely through specific SMS messages. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>The cellular module must be enabled for this feature. Refer to Cellular for more information.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Password	Specify the required password in SMS remote control message format: @password@command	0 to 15 characters	N/A
Trusted Number Authentication	Enable or disable trusted number authentication. If enabled, the device will only accept SMS messages from numbers added to the Trusted Numbers List. If disabled, the device can be controlled by messages sent from any number. Refer to Add Trusted Number Entry.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Trusted Number List

Trusted Number List




<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Country Code	Number

Max: 4 0 of 0

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name used to identify the trusted number.
Country Code	Shows the country code for the trusted number.
Number	Shows the trusted number.

Add Trusted Number Entry

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **SMS > General > Trusted Number List** will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new trusted number list. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new trusted number.

Add Trusted Number Entry

Name *

0 / 15

+ Country Code * Number *

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name to help identify the number. This is for reference only.	1 to 15 characters	N/A
Country Code	Specify the country code of the number.	Valid country code	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Number	Enter the phone number.	Valid phone number	Enabled
---------------	-------------------------	--------------------	---------

Edit Trusted Number Entry

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an account on the **SMS > General > Trusted Number List** will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing trusted number list. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Trusted Number List

+ Search

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Country Code	Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	✎ Moxa 1	886	0911111111
<input type="checkbox"/>	✎ Moxa 2	886	0912222222
<input type="checkbox"/>	✎ Moxa 3	886	0913333333
<input type="checkbox"/>	✎ Moxa 4	886	0914444444

Max. 4

Edit Trusted Number Entry

Name *

Moxa 1

6 / 15

Country Code *

+ 886

Number *

0911111111

CANCEL

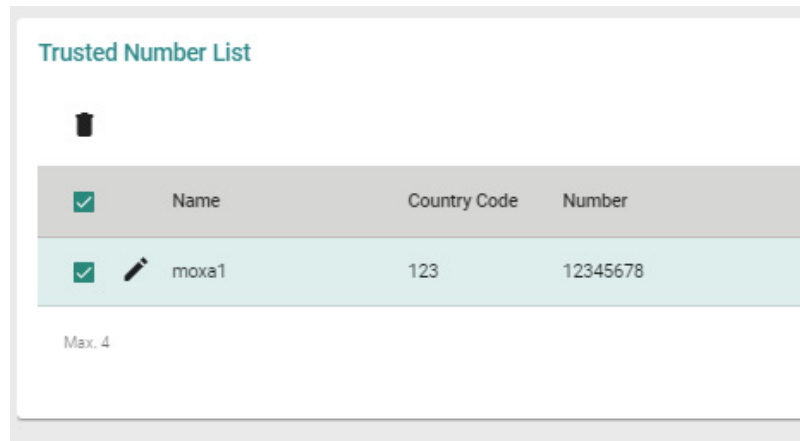
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Name	Specify a name to help identify the number. This is for reference only.	1 to 15 characters	N/A
Country Code	Specify the country code of the number.	Country code	N/A
Number	Enter the phone number.	Phone number	Enabled

Delete Trusted Number Entry

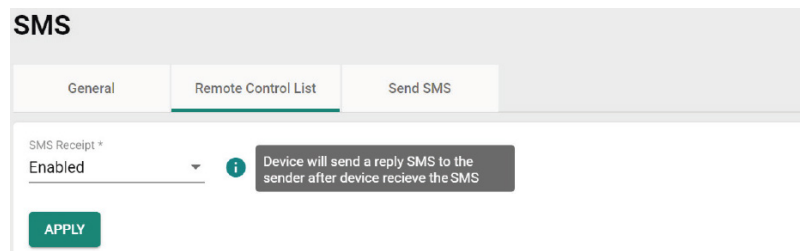
You can delete trusted numbers by using the checkboxes to select the ones you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.



Remote Control List

This page lets you manage the remote control commands your device will respond to.


Remote Control List Settings

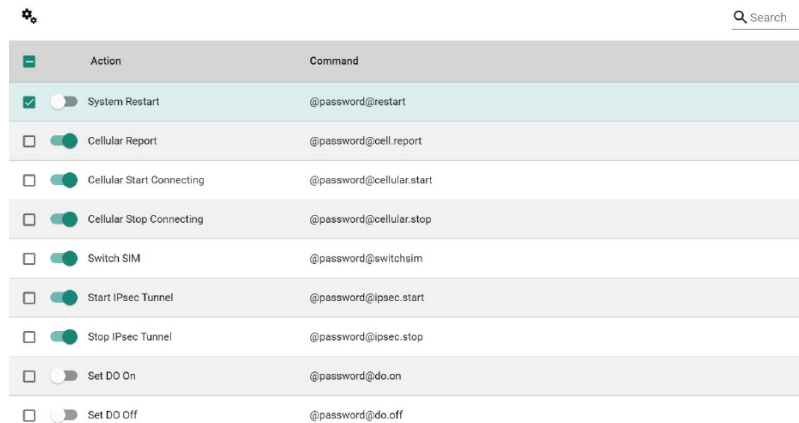


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
SMS Receipt	Enable or disable SMS receipts. If enabled, the device will send a confirmation SMS when receiving a command SMS.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Remote Control Command List

Use the toggle buttons to enable or disable the corresponding SMS command. Alternatively, check the boxes of the commands you want to manage and use the Quick

Setting () icon to enable or disable the selected commands in bulk. Refer to the table below for an overview of each command.



Action	Command
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> System Restart	@password@restart
<input type="checkbox"/> Cellular Report	@password@cell.report
<input type="checkbox"/> Cellular Start Connecting	@password@cellular.start
<input type="checkbox"/> Cellular Stop Connecting	@password@cellular.stop
<input type="checkbox"/> Switch SIM	@password@switchsim
<input type="checkbox"/> Start IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.start
<input type="checkbox"/> Stop IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.stop
<input type="checkbox"/> Set DO On	@password@do.on
<input type="checkbox"/> Set DO Off	@password@do.off

Action	Command	Description
System Restart	@password@restart	The device will reboot.
Cellular Report	@password@cell.report	The device will reply with an SMS message containing the current cellular status of the device.
Cellular Start Connecting	@password@cellular.start	The device will enable the cellular data connection.
Cellular Stop Connecting	@password@cellular.stop	The device will disable the cellular data connection.
Switch SIM	@password@switchsim	The device will restart the cellular module and use the SIM card installed in the other SIM slot.
Start IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.start	The device will establish an IPsec tunnel.
Stop IPsec Tunnel	@password@ipsec.stop	The device will disconnect the IPsec tunnel.
Set DO On	@password@do.on	The device will set the status of the relay output to On.
Set DO Off	@password@do.off	The device will set the status of the relay output to Off.

Send SMS

This page lets you send a custom SMS message from the device to a specified recipient, which can be useful for testing the device's SMS connection. Click **SEND** to send the SMS message.

The screenshot shows the 'Send SMS' interface. At the top, there is a header 'SMS' and three tabs: 'General', 'Remote Control List', and 'Send SMS'. The 'Send SMS' tab is selected. Below the tabs, there is a section titled 'Send SMS'. It contains two input fields: '+ Country Code *' and 'Number *'. Below these is a larger text area for 'SMS Message *' with a character count '0 / 160' and a note: 'Special characters such as ^, \, |, ~, [], { } require two bytes'. A green 'SEND' button is located at the bottom of the form.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Country Code	Specify the country code for the recipient's number.	Valid country code	N/A
Number	Specify the recipient's phone number.	Valid phone number	N/A
Message	Specify the text of the message to send.	0 to 160 characters	N/A

GNSS

Menu Path: System > GNSS

These pages let you configure the GNSS settings of your device.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

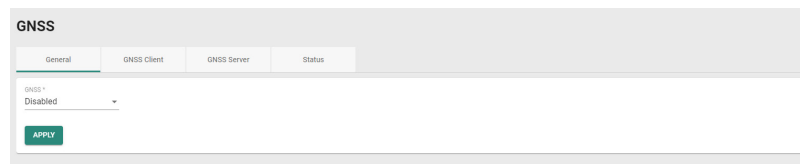
This page includes these tabs:

- General
- GNSS Client
- GNSS Server
- Status

GNSS - General

Menu Path: System > GNSS - General

This page lets you enable or disable GNSS functionality.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
GNSS	Enable or disable GNSS functionality. If enabled, the device will use satellite positioning to show its real-time physical location on a map.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Note

The cellular module must be enabled for this feature. Refer to Cellular for more information.

GNSS Client

Menu Path: System > GNSS - GNSS Client

This page lets you configure GNSS Client settings to allow the device to send GNSS data to a user-configured server.

GNSS

General
GNSS Client
GNSS Server
Status

GNSS Client *
 Disabled i

Report Protocol *
 TCP

Host Address Host Port
 IP Address/Domain Name 8919
 1 - 65535

Report Period
 30
10 - 86400 sec.

Report Format *
 NMEA Report ID
0 / 15

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
GNSS Client	Enable or disable GNSS Client functionality. If enabled, the device will send GNSS data to the configured server at a specified interval.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Report Protocol	Select the report protocol to use. TCP: Send reports over TCP. This requires a receipt from the server to confirm the data was delivered. UDP: Send reports over UDP. This does not require a receipt from the server.	TCP / UDP	TCP
Host Address	Specify the IP address or host name of the server that will receive the GNSS data.	IP address / host name	N/A
Host Port	Specify the TCP or UDP port number of the server that will receive the GNSS data.	1 to 65535	8919
Report Period	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which GNSS data reports are generated.	10 to 86400	30
Report Format	Select the report format to use. NMEA: Send GNSS data in standard NMEA format. General: Send GNSS data in latitude-longitude format.	NMEA / General	NMEA
Report ID	Enter the ID to use in the GNSS data report header. The Report ID and device MAC address will be included in both report formats.	1 to 15 characters	N/A

GNSS Server

Menu Path: System > GNSS - GNSS Server

This page lets you configure the the device to act as a GNSS Server to allow clients to request GNSS data reports.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
GNSS Server	Enable or disable GNSS Server functionality. If enabled, clients will be able to request GNSS data reports from this server.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Server Port	Specify the UDP port number for clients to access the server.	1 to 65535	8919
Report Period	Specify the interval in seconds at which GNSS data reports are generated.	10 to 86400	30
Report Format	Select the report format. NMEA: Send GNSS data in standard NMEA format. General: Send GNSS data in latitude-longitude format.	NMEA / General	NMEA
Report ID	Enter the ID to use in the GNSS data report header. The Report ID and device MAC address will be included in both report formats.	1 to 15 characters	N/A

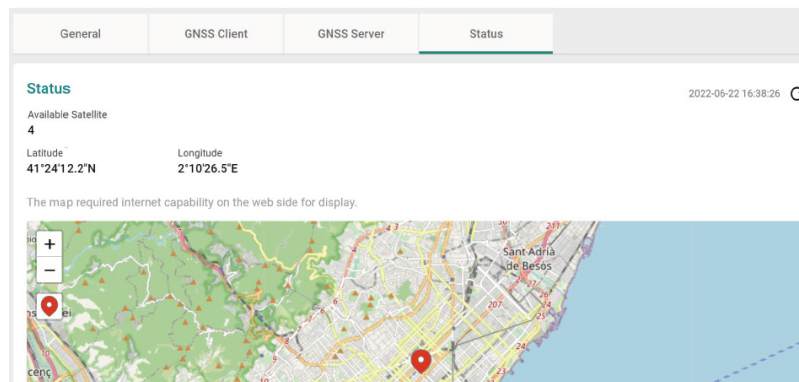
Status




Menu Path: System > GNSS - Status

The Status screen shows the current geolocational information of the device, as well the device's current physical location on an interactive map.

Note

The device's physical location and coordinates will only appear if GNSS is enabled.



UI Setting	Description
Available Satellite	Shows number of satellites the device is receiving information from.
Latitude	Shows the north-south position of the device.
Longitude	Shows the east-west position of the device.
	Click to refresh the coordinate data.
	Click to zoom in or zoom out on the map.
	Click to center the map on the device's location.

Setting Check

Menu Path: System > Setting Check

This page provides a double confirmation mechanism that allows you to verify configuration changes made by remote users before they are applied.

Setting Check is available for the following configuration settings:

- Layer 3 -7 Policy
- Network Address Translate
- Trusted Access

Setting Check

Setting Check Configuration

Layer 3-7 Policy

Network Address Translate

Trusted Access

Timer *

180

10 - 3600 sec.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Layer 3-7 Policy	Enable or disable Setting Check for Layer 3 - 7 policy changes.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Network Address Translate	Enable or disable Setting Check for NAT policy changes.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Trusted Access	Enable or disable Setting Check for Trusted IP address changes.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Timer	Set the time (in seconds) the user has to confirm the changes.	10 to 3600	180

Note

If the user does not confirm the changes within the specified time period, the system will automatically undo the changes.

Cellular

Menu Path: Cellular

This page lets you configure mobile network connection settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- SIM Settings
- GuaranLink
- Status

Note

These features are only available on devices with cellular capabilities.

Cellular - User Privileges

Privileges to Cellular settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Cellular	R/W	R/W	R

Cellular - General

Menu Path: Cellular - General

This page lets you configure basic cellular settings for your device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Cellular Module	Enable or disable the cellular module for establishing cellular connections, sending SMS messages, and using GNSS services.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Cellular Operation Mode	The device will function as an IP router for IP data communication.	Router	Router
Cellular Data Connection	Enable or disable cellular data connections. If enabled, cellular connections may incur data usage costs based on your cellular service and ISP.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
MTU	Specify the Maximum Transmission Unit (MTU) value for router mode. The recommended MTU size may vary depending on the cellular carrier. Make sure the end device is set to the same MTU value for optimal performance.	576 to 1500	1428



SIM Settings

Menu Path: Cellular - SIM Settings


This section lets you enable or disable SIM cards and manage the SIM card settings including the priority, cellular bands, and authentication method.

Reordering SIM Card Priority

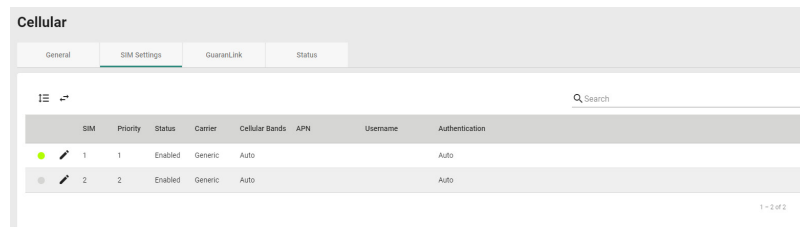
The device will always connect to the Internet using the SIM card designated with priority 1. The secondary SIM card will act as a redundant backup. To change the priority of the



SIM cards, click the **Reorder Priorities** () icon then click and drag the SIM card to the desired priority. Click the **Finish Reorder** () icon to confirm the change.

Changing the Active SIM Card

The green dot icon indicates the SIM card is active and connected to the Internet. By default, the SIM card designated with priority 1 will be used to connect to the Internet while the SIM with priority 2 acts as a backup. If necessary, you can manually change the active SIM card. Click the **Change SIM** () icon to swap the active SIM card.

SIM Card List



SIM	Priority	Status	Carrier	Cellular Bands	APN	Username	Authentication
 1	1	Enabled	Generic	Auto			Auto
 2	2	Enabled	Generic	Auto			Auto

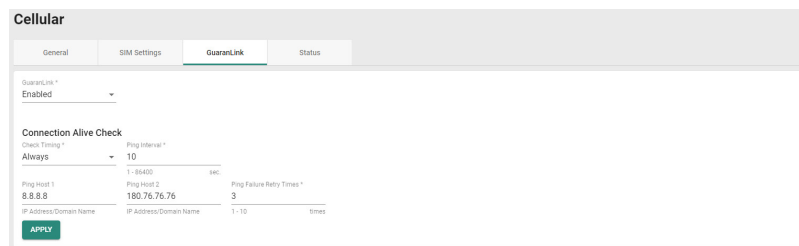
UI Setting	Description
SIM	Shows which SIM slot the entry is for.
Priority	Shows the priority of the SIM card.
Status	Shows the configured status of the SIM card.
Carrier	Shows the carrier for the SIM card.
Cellular Bands	Shows the cellular bands the SIM card will use.
APN	Shows the access point network (APN) information.
Username	Shows the username for PAP authentication.
Authentication	Shows the authentication method.

GuaranLink

Menu Path: Cellular - GuaranLink

This page lets you set up Moxa's GuaranLink feature, which enables reliable connectivity with 3 different connection checks and 4 levels of recovery actions. A number of factors can contribute to connection failures in cellular communications, including loss of cellular signal, interference, connection errors caused by the base station, or termination by the operator for unknown reasons. GuaranLink is designed to address various needs, including minimizing cellular costs by optimizing the number of cellular packets sent to check connection status and optimizing the time it takes to swap to a backup SIM.

GuaranLink Settings



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
GuaranLink	<p>Enable or disable GuaranLink. If enabled, the device will monitor cellular connections. If a connection failure is detected, the device will attempt to automatically recover the connection.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Enabling this function will send additional alive check cellular messages, which may incur additional cellular costs.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Check Time	<p>Specify the check time.</p> <p>Always: The device will constantly send out alive check packets to check for cellular connection issues.</p> <p>Idle Transmission: The device will only send alive check packets when the device has not received any data transmissions during the specified Ping Interval period.</p> <p>Poor Signal: The device will only send alive check packets when the device identifies poor signal quality.</p>	Always / Idle Transmission / Poor Signal	Always
Ping Interval (Only when Check Time is Always)	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the device will send out an alive check packet.	1 to 86400 seconds	10

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Ping Interval (Only when Check Time is Idle Transmission)	Specify the interval (in minutes) the device will wait for data transmissions. If no data transmissions take place during the interval, the device will perform a connection alive check.	1 to 600 minutes	5
Signal Checking Interval (Only when Check Time is Poor Signal)	Specify the interval (in minutes) the device will check the host for poor signal quality. If the device detects poor signal quality from the host, the device will perform a connection alive check.	1 to 600 minutes	5
Ping Host 1/2	Enter the IP address or domain name of the remote host to ping. If both ping host 1 and 2 are configured, the device will perform connection alive checks for both hosts simultaneously. The device will only consider the connection to have failed if the device receives no response from both hosts.	IP address/domain name	N/A
Ping Failure Retry Times	Specify the number of times the device will perform the connection alive check. If the check fails the specified number of retry times, the device will determine that the cellular connection has failed and will initiate the GuaranLink recovery process.	1 to 10	3

GuaranLink Recovery Settings

GuaranLink Recovery Settings

Recovery Step	Recovery Action	Attempts ↑
1	Cellular Reconnect	1
2	ISP Reregister	1
3	Cellular Module Reset	3
4	System Reboot	0

UI Setting	Description
Recovery Step	Shows the sequence of the recovery step.

UI Setting	Description
Recovery Action	Shows the recovery action.
Attempts	Shows the number of times the action will be attempted.

Edit Recovery Action Settings

Menu Path: Cellular - GuaranLink

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an action on the **Cellular - GuaranLink** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you specify the number of times to attempt each recovery action before moving to the next recovery action. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Recovery Action Settings

Step 1 Cellular Reconnect

Attempts *

1

Step 2 ISP Reregister

Attempts *

1

Step 3 Cellular Module Reset

Attempts *

3

Step 4 System Reboot

Attempts *

0

CANCEL

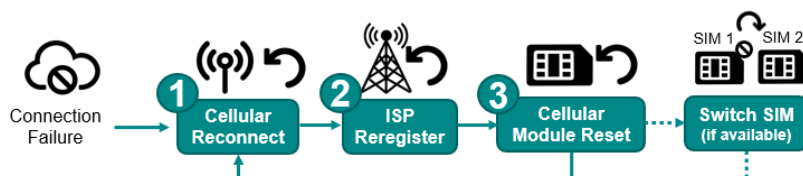
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Step 1 Cellular Reconnect Attempts	<p>Specify the number of times the device will try to disconnect and re-establish the cellular connection.</p> <p>If the connection is not restored after the specified number of attempts, the device will move on to the next recovery step.</p> <p>If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.</p>	0 to 5	1
Step 2 Re-register Attempts	<p>Specify the number of times the device will try to re-register with the ISP to obtain a new IP address from the base station to re-establish the cellular connection.</p> <p>If the connection is not restored after the specified number of attempts, the device will move on to the next recovery step.</p> <p>If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.</p>	0 to 5	1
Step 3 Cellular Module Reset Attempts	<p>Specify the number of times the device will try to reset the cellular module to re-establish the cellular connection.</p> <p>If the connection is not restored after the specified number of attempts, the device will move on to the next recovery step.</p> <p>If set to 0, the device will skip this step and move on to the next recovery step.</p>	0 to 10	3
Step 4 System Reboot Attempts	<p>Specify whether the device will reboot in order to re-establish the cellular connection.</p> <p>If the connection is not restored after rebooting, the device will restart the recovery process from step 1.</p>	0 to 1	0



If set to 0, the device will not perform a system reboot and will restart the recovery process from step 1.

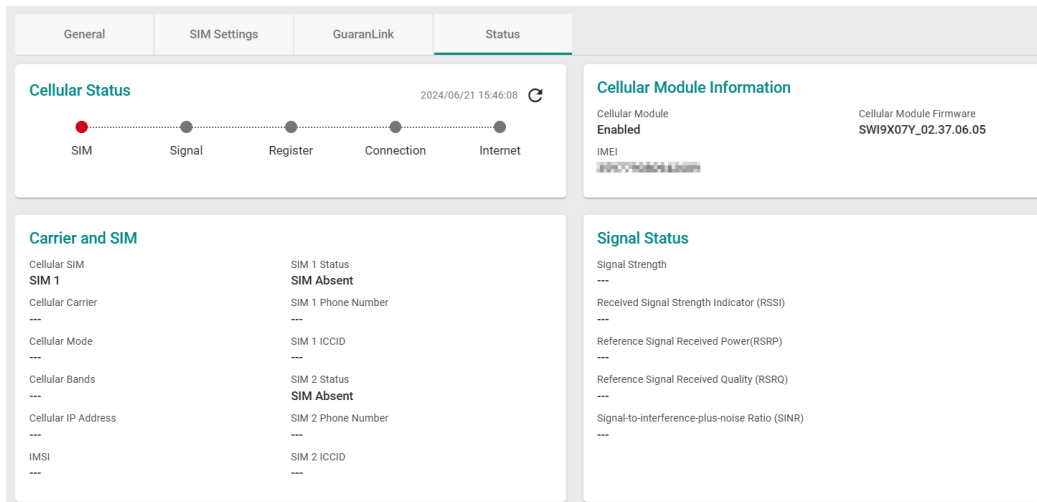
If two SIM cards are inserted the device, the device will attempt to use another SIM card to restart the recovery process from step 1.



Cellular - Status

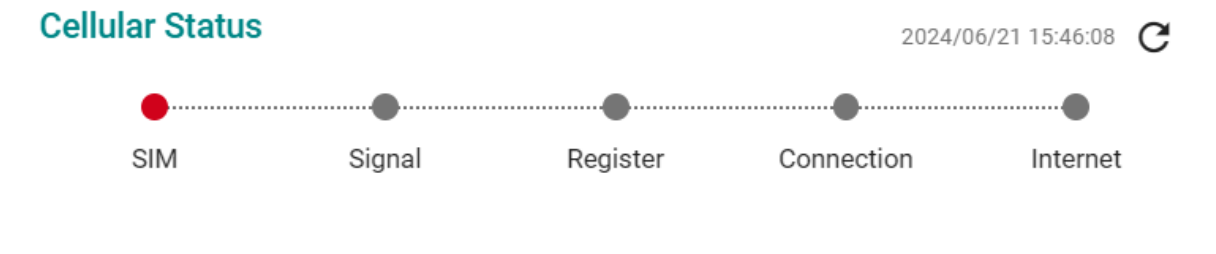
Menu Path: Cellular - Status

This section lets you see the current status of the cellular connection as well as information about the cellular carrier and SIM card, cellular module, and signal strength.



Cellular Status

This section shows you the cellular connection status of your device.



UI Setting	Description
SIM	Shows the status of the SIM card. Green: The SIM card is active. Red: The SIM card is inactive. Gray: No SIM card inserted.
Signal	Shows the status of the device's cellular signal. Green: Good cellular signal. Amber: Fair cellular signal. Red: Poor cellular signal. Gray: No cellular signal.

UI Setting	Description
Register	Shows the status of the device's cellular registration. Green: The device successfully registered with the base station. Red: The device failed to register with the base station. Gray: The registration phase has not been reached yet.
Connection	Shows the status of the device's network connection. Green: The device obtained an IP address from the base station. Red: The device failed to obtain an IP address from the base station. Gray: The connection phase has not been reached yet.
Internet	Shows the status of the device's Internet connection. Green: The device is connected to the Internet. Red: The device failed to connect to the Internet. Gray: Alive checks are not being performed.

Note

GuaranLink must be enabled to perform connection alive checks. Refer to Cellular - GuaranLink for more information.

Cellular Module Information

Cellular Module Information

Cellular Module

Enabled

IMEI

XXXXXXXXXXXX

Cellular Module Firmware

SWI9X07Y_02.37.06.05

UI Setting	Description
Cellular Module	Shows the current status of the cellular module.
Cellular Module Software	Shows the firmware version of the cellular module.
IMEI	Shows the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) number of the cellular module.

Carrier and SIM

Carrier and SIM

Cellular SIM	SIM 1 Status
SIM 1	SIM Absent
Cellular Carrier	SIM 1 Phone Number
---	---
Cellular Mode	SIM 1 ICCID
---	---
Cellular Bands	SIM 2 Status
---	SIM Absent
Cellular IP Address	SIM 2 Phone Number
---	---
IMSI	SIM 2 ICCID
---	---

UI Setting	Description
Cellular SIM	Shows the SIM card used for establishing the cellular connection.
Cellular Carrier	Shows the cellular service provider being used.
Cellular Mode	Shows the cellular connection technology being used, such as LTE or HSPA.
Cellular Band	Shows the cellular band frequency being used.
Cellular IP Address	Shows the cellular IP address assigned by the cellular carrier.
IMSI	Shows the International Mobile Subscriber Identity number.
SIM 1 Status	Shows the status of the SIM card installed in SIM slot 1.
SIM 1 Phone Number	Shows the phone number of the SIM card in SIM slot 1.
SIM 1 ICCID	Shows the Integrated Circuit Card ID of the SIM card in SIM slot 1.
SIM 2 Status	Shows the status of the SIM card installed in SIM slot 2.
SIM 2 Phone Number	Shows the phone number of the SIM card in SIM slot 2.
SIM 2 ICCID	Shows the Integrated Circuit Card ID of the SIM card in SIM slot 2.

Signal Status

Signal Status

Signal Strength

Received Signal Strength Indicator (RSSI)

Reference Signal Received Power(RSRP)

Reference Signal Received Quality (RSRQ)

Signal-to-interference-plus-noise Ratio (SINR)

UI Setting	Description
Signal Strength	Shows the current overall signal strength of the device.
RSRP (Reference Signal Received Power)	Shows the current RSRP. Good: Higher than -80 dBm Average: -80 to -90 dBm Poor: -90 to -100 dBm Inadequate: Less than-100 dBm
RSSI (Received Signal Strength Indicator)	Shows the current RSSI. Good: Higher than -73 dBm Average: -73 to -89 dBm Poor: -89 to -113 dBm Inadequate: Less than -113 dBm
RSRQ (Reference Signal Received Quality)	Shows the current RSRQ. Good: Higher than -10 dB Average: -10 to -15 dB Poor: -15 to -20 dB Inadequate: Less than -20 dB
SINR (Signal to Interference and Noise Ratio)	Shows the current SINR. Good: Higher than 20 dB Average: 13 to 20 dB Poor: 0 to 13 dB Inadequate: Less than 0 dB

Serial

Menu Path: Serial

This page lets you configure your device's serial settings.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

This page includes these tabs:

- Port Settings
- Operation Mode
- Data Packing
- Status
- Serial Data Logs

Serial - User Privileges

Privileges to Serial settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Serial	R/W	R/W	R

Serial - Port Settings

Menu Path: Serial - Port Settings

This page lets you enable or disable the serial port and configure the serial communication parameters. When enabled, the device allows for traditional serial (RS-232/422/485) devices to transmit data over the cellular network.

Note

The serial port settings on the device should match the parameters configured for the connected serial device. Refer to your serial device's user manual to determine the appropriate serial communication parameters.

Serial Port *
Disabled ▼

Interface Type *
RS-232 ▼

Baudrate *
115200 ▼

Data Bits * Stop Bits *
8 1 ▼

Parity *
None ▼

Flow Control *
RTS, CTS ▼

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Serial Port	Enable or disable the serial port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Interface Type	Select the serial interface type to use for the serial device.	RS-232 / RS-422 / 2-wire-RS-485/ 2-wire-RS-485	RS-232
Baud Rate	Specify the data transmission rate to and from the serial device.	300 to 921600	115200
Data Bits	Specify the size for data characters.	5 to 8	8
Stop Bits	Specify the size for stop characters.	1 to 2	1
Parity	Select the parity mode. Even and odd parity provide rudimentary error-checking. Space and mark parity are rarely used.	None / Even / Odd / Space / Mark	None
Flow Control	Select the flow control method. This determines how the system will suspend and resume data transmissions to prevent data loss. RTS/CTS (hardware) flow control is recommended.	None / RTS/CTS / DTR/DSR / Xon/Xoff	RTS/CTS

Port Buffering and Logs Settings



Serial Port Buffering (10 MB) *

Disabled ▼

Serial Data Logs (64 KB) *

Disabled ▼

Port Buffering and Logs Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Serial Port Buffering	<p>Enable or disable serial port buffering. When enabled, if the WAN connection goes down, the router will keep the serial data and retransmit the buffered data when the WAN connection is back. If disabled, serial data will be lost if the WAN connection goes down.</p> <div><p> Note</p><ul style="list-style-type: none">• Port buffering can be used in Real COM, RFC2217, TCP Server, and TCP Client modes.• For other modes, the port buffering settings will have no effect.• The maximum buffer size is 10 MB.• Buffer data exceeding 10 MB will overwrite previous data.</div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Serial Data Logs	<p>Enable or disable serial data logs. If enabled, the router will store the serial data logs in the system RAM.</p> <div><p> Note</p><p>The system RAM can save up to 64 kb of serial data logs. Serial log data will be cleared when the router is powered off.</p></div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Operation Mode

Menu Path: Serial - Operation Mode

This page lets you set up and configure a serial operation mode. Refer to Serial Operation Modes for more information about the different modes.

Operation Mode - Real COM

If you select **Real COM** as your **Operation Mode**, these settings will appear.

Operation Mode *
Real COM

Connection Settings
TCP Alive Check Interval
7
1 - 99 min.
Max. Connections
1
1 - 2 connection

Connection Down Settings
Set RTS Signal * Set DTR Signal *
High High

APPLY

Connection Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
TCP Alive Check Interval	Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets. Disabling this option can help free up device resources.	1 to 99	7
Max. Connections	Specify the maximum number of simultaneous connections that the port will accept. Up to 2 hosts can simultaneously collect data from the same serial device.	1 to 2	1

Connection Down Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Set RTS Signal	Select the RTS signal method to use. High: The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect RTS signals. Low: If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, RTS signals will change to low.	High / Low	High

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Set DTR Signal	<p>Select the DTR signal method to use.</p> <p>High: The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect DTR signals.</p> <p>Low: If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, DTR signals will change to low.</p>	High / Low	High

Operation Mode - TCP Server

If you select **TCP Server** as your **Operation Mode**, these settings will appear.

The screenshot shows a configuration page for 'TCP Server' under 'Operation Mode'. It includes sections for 'Connection Settings' and 'Connection Down Settings'. The 'Connection Settings' section has fields for 'TCP Alive Check Interval' (7), 'Max. Connections' (1), 'TCP Data Port' (4001), and 'TCP Command Port' (966). The 'Connection Down Settings' section has dropdowns for 'Set RTS Signal' and 'Set DTR Signal', both set to 'High'. An 'APPLY' button is at the bottom.

Connection Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
TCP Alive Check Interval	<p>Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note Disabling this option can help free up device resources.</p> </div>	1 to 99	7
Max. Connections	<p>Specify the maximum number of simultaneous connections that the port will accept. Up to 2 hosts can simultaneously collect data from the same serial device.</p>	1 to 2	1

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
TCP Data Port	Specify the TCP port number for the serial port used to listen to connections and for other devices to contact. To avoid conflicts with well-known TCP ports, the default port is 4001.	1 to 65535	4001
TCP Command Port	Specify the TCP port number for MOXA IP-Serial Library commands.	1 to 65535	9006
	<p>Note</p> <p>It is not necessary to reference this port number in your application when using the Moxa IP-Serial Library since the library automatically obtains the number from the device server. Only change this setting if there is a port number conflict with another application or device.</p>		
Serial Port Inactivity Time	Specify the time limit in milliseconds to keep the connection open if there is no data going to or from the serial device. If there is no activity for the specified time period, the connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will always keep the TCP connection open regardless of data activity.	1 to 65535	0
	<p>For many applications, this option should be set to 0, as the serial device may be idle for long periods of time.</p> <p>Warning</p> <p>Serial Port Inactivity Time setting should be greater than the Force Transmit Interval in Data Packing settings. Otherwise, the connection may be closed before the data in the buffer can be transmitted.</p> <p>To prevent the unintended loss of data due to the session being disconnected, it is highly recommended that this value is set large enough so that the intended data transfer is completed.</p>		

Connection Down Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Set RTS Signal	<p>Select the RTS signal method to use.</p> <p>High: The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect RTS signals.</p> <p>Low: If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, RTS signals will change to low.</p>	High / Low	High

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Set DTR Signal	<p>Select the DTR signal method to use.</p> <p>High: The cellular or Ethernet connection status will not affect DTR signals.</p> <p>Low: If the cellular or Ethernet connection is lost, DTR signals will change to low.</p>	High / Low	High

Operation Mode - TCP Client

If you select **TCP Client** as your **Operation Mode**, these settings will appear.

Operation Mode *

TCP Client ▼

Connection Settings

TCP Alive Check Interval

7

1 - 99 min.

Serial Port Inactivity Time

0

0 - 65535 ms



Connection Control *

Startup/None ▼

APPLY

Connection Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
TCP Alive Check Interval	<p>Specify the interval (in minutes) at which to check if the TCP connection is still alive. If there is no response from the other end of the connection after the specified time, the TCP connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will keep the TCP connection open and will not send any "keep alive" packets.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Disabling this option can help free up device resources.</p> </div>	1 to 99	7

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Serial Port Inactivity Time	<p>Specify the time limit in milliseconds to keep the connection open if there is no data going to or from the serial device. If there is no activity for the specified time period, the connection will be terminated. A setting of 0 means the system will always keep the TCP connection open regardless of data activity.</p> <p>For many applications, this option should be set to 0, as the serial device may be idle for long periods of time.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>The serial port inactivity time is only applied when the Connection Control option is set to Any Character/Inactivity Time.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px;"> <p> Warning</p> <p>Serial Port Inactivity Time setting should be greater than the Force Transmit Interval in Data Packing settings. Otherwise, the connection may be closed before the data in the buffer can be transmitted.</p> <p>To prevent the unintended loss of data due to the session being disconnected, it is highly recommended that this value is set large enough so that the intended data transfer is completed.</p> </div>	1 to 65535	0

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Connection Control	<p>Select a connection control method.</p> <p>Startup/None: A TCP connection will be established on startup and will remain active indefinitely.</p> <p>Any Character/None: A TCP connection will be established when any character is received from the serial interface and will remain active indefinitely.</p> <p>Any Character/Inactivity Time: A TCP connection will be established when any character is received from the serial interface and will be disconnected after the specified Serial Port Inactivity Time.</p> <p>DSR On/DSR Off: A TCP connection will be established when a DSR "On" signal is received and will be disconnected when a DSR "Off" signal is received.</p> <p>DSR On/None: A TCP connection will be established when a DSR "On" signal is received and will remain active indefinitely.</p> <p>DCD On/DCD Off: A TCP connection will be established when a DCD "On" signal is received and will be disconnected when a DCD "Off" signal is received.</p> <p>DCD On/None: A TCP connection will be established when a DCD "On" signal is received and will remain active indefinitely.</p>	Startup/None / Any Character/None / Any Character/Inactivity Time / DSR On/DSR Off / DSR On/None / DCD On/DCD Off / DCD On/None	Startup/None

Add a Destination Entry (TCP Client)

Menu Path: Serial - Operation Mode (TCP Client)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Serial - Operation Mode (TCP Client)** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a destination entry. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

Add Destination

IP Address *

Destination Data Port * 

1 - 65535

Local Data Port * 

1 - 65535


CANCEL

CREATE


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the remote host.	Valid IP address	N/A
Destination Data Port	Specify the TCP port number of the remote host.	1 to 65535	N/A
Local Data Port	Specify a designated local port or leave this field blank to let the system assign a port.	1 to 65535	N/A


Delete a Destination Entry (TCP Client)

Menu Path: Serial - Operation Mode (TCP Server)

You can delete a destination entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete ()** icon.

Destination Settings

 Q Search

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	IP Address	Destination Data Port	Local Data Port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	19.122.111.111	4001	60

Max. 4

Operation Mode - UDP

If you select **UDP** as your **Operation Mode**, these settings will appear.

Operation Mode *
UDP

Connection Settings

UDP Data Port
4001

1 - 65535

APPLY

Connection Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
UDP Data Port	Enter the UDP port number for contacting the serial device.	1 to 65535	4001

Add a Destination Entry (UDP)

Menu Path: Serial - Operation Mode (UDP)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Serial - Operation Mode (UDP)** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a destination entry. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

Note

The maximum IP address range size is 64 addresses. However, when using multicast, you may enter IP addresses in the form xxx.xxx.xxx.255 in the Start IP Address field.

For example, enter 192.168.127.255 to allow the system to broadcast UDP packets to all hosts with IP addresses between 192.168.127.1 and 192.168.127.254.

Add Destination

Start IP Address *

End IP Address *

Destination Data Port * 

1 - 65535


CANCEL

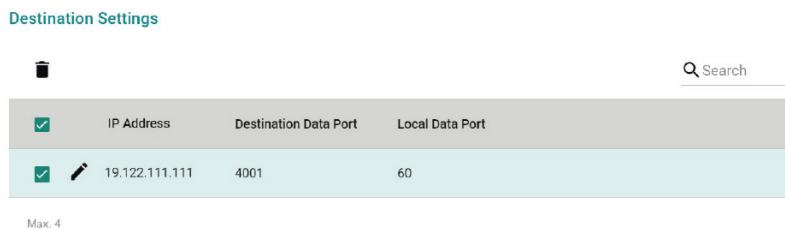
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Starting IP Address	Enter the starting IP address of the remote host IP range.	IP Address	N/A
End IP Address	Enter the ending IP address of the remote host IP range.	IP Address	N/A
Destination Data Port	Enter the UDP port number of the remote host.	1 to 65535	N/A

Delete a Destination Entry (UDP)

Menu Path: Serial - Operation Mode (UDP)

You can delete a destination entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



Data Packing

Menu Path: Serial - Data Packing

This page lets you configure the conditions and delimiter settings for serial port data buffering and transmission.

Packet Length

 0 - 1024 bytes

Force Transmit Interval

 0 - 65535 ms

Delimiter Settings

Delimiter 1 Enable *
 ▼

Delimiter 1 *

 Hex digit

Delimiter 2 Enable *
 ▼

Delimiter 2 *

 Hex digit

Delimiter Process *
 ▼

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Packet Length	<p>Specify the Packet Length in bytes for the serial port buffer. The packet length refers to the maximum amount of data that is allowed to accumulate in the serial port buffer before sending.</p> <p>At the default packet length of 0, no maximum amount is specified and data in the buffer will be sent as specified by the delimiter settings or when the buffer is full.</p> <p>If a packet length of 1 to 1024 bytes is specified, data in the buffer will be sent as soon as it reaches the specified length.</p>	0 to 1024	0
Force Transmit Interval	<p>Specify the interval in milliseconds to force transmission of serial port data if no activity is recorded.</p> <p>This setting controls data packing by the amount of time that elapses between bits of data. As serial data is received, it accumulates in the device port’s buffer. If serial data is not received for the specified amount of time, the data that is currently in the buffer is packed for network transmission.</p> <p>A setting of 0 means that data in the buffer will not be automatically packed when additional data is not received from the device.</p>	0 to 65535	0

Delimiter Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Delimiter 1/2 Enable	<p>Enable or disable delimiter 1 or 2.</p> <p>Enabled: The serial port will queue data in the buffer and send it to the cellular or Ethernet port when a specific hex character is received. When both Delimiter 1 and 2 are enabled and specified, both of them will be used to control when data should be sent.</p> <p>Disabled: The serial port will not check for specific characters for data transmission.</p> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>⚠ Warning</p> <p>When Delimiter is enabled, the Packet Length must be set to 0.</p> </div>	Disabled / Enabled	Disabled
Delimiter 1/2	<p>Specify the character that acts as the delimiter to control when data should be sent.</p> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>⚠ Warning</p> <p>When the device port buffer is full, the data will be packed for network transmission regardless of the Delimiter 1, Delimiter 2, and Force Transmit Interval settings.</p> </div>	0x00 to 0xFF	0x00
Delimiter Process	<p>Select the delimiter process.</p> <p>Delimiter: Data in the buffer will be transmitted when the delimiter is received.</p> <p>Delimiter +1: Data in the buffer will be transmitted after 1 additional byte is received following the delimiter.</p> <p>Delimiter +2: Data in the buffer will be transmitted after 2 additional bytes are received following the delimiter.</p> <p>Strip Delimiter: Data in the buffer is stripped of the delimiter before being transmitted.</p>	Delimiter / Delimiter +1 / Delimiter +2 / Strip Delimiter	Delimiter

Serial - Status

Menu Path: Serial - Status

This page lets you see detailed statistics and information about the serial port data and connections.

Serial State

Serial State

- DSR
- DTR
- RTS
- CTS
- DCD

UI Setting	Description
Serial State	Shows the status of the serial signal. Green: The signal pins are connected. Grey: The signal pins are disconnected.

Serial Counter

Serial Counter

TX Count	TX Total Count	RX Count	RX Total Count
0	0	0	0

UI Setting	Description
TX Count	Shows the number of packets transmitted.
TX Total Count	Shows the total total number of packets transmitted since the device was powered on.
RX Count	Shows the number of packets received.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

RX Total Count Shows the total total number of packets received since the device was powered on.

Error Counter

Error Counter

Frame Error Count	Parity Error Count	Overrun Count	Break Count
0	0	0	0

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Frame Error Count Shows the number of frame errors since the device was powered on.

Parity Error Count Shows the number of parity errors since the device was powered on.

Overrun Count Shows the number of overrun errors since the device was powered on.

Break Count Shows the number of break errors since the device was powered on.

Serial - Connection List

Connection List

🔍 Search

Operation Mode	IP Address
----------------	------------

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Operation Mode Shows the operation mode for the connection.

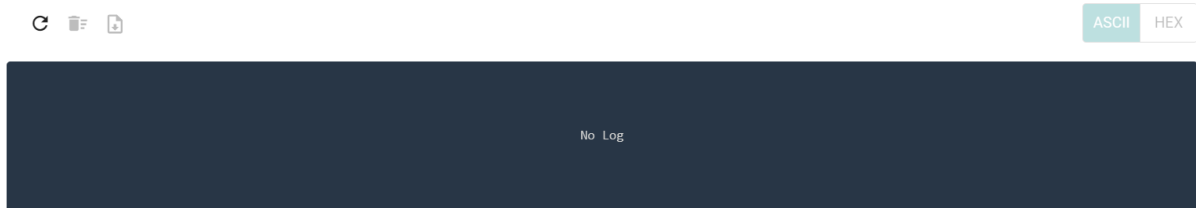
IP Address Shows the IP address of the connection.

Serial Data Logs

Menu Path: Serial - Serial Data Logs

This page lets you see the device's serial data logs in ASCII or HEX format.

- Click the **Refresh icon** (🔄) icon to refresh the serial data logs.
- Click the **Clear Data Log icon** (🗑️) icon to delete all serial data logs.
- Click the **Export icon** (📄) icon to export all serial data logs to a file.
- Click **ASCII** or **HEX** to change the format of the logs.



Network Configuration

Menu Path: Network Configuration

The Network Configuration settings area lets you configure settings related to your device's networking ports.

This settings area includes these sections:

- Ports
- Layer 2 Switching
- Network Interfaces

Network Configuration - User Privileges

Privileges to Network Configuration settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Ports			

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Port Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Link Aggregation	R/W	R/W	R
PoE	R/W	R/W	R
Link Fault Passthrough	R/W	R/W	R
LAN Bypass Gen3	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 2 Switching			
VLAN	R/W	R/W	R
MAC Address Table	R/W	R/W	R
QoS	R/W	R/W	R
Rate Limit	R/W	R/W	R
Multicast	R/W	R/W	R
Network Interfaces	R/W	R/W	R

Ports

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Ports](#)

This section includes these pages:

- [Port Settings](#)
- [Link Aggregation](#)
- [PoE](#)
- [Link Fault Passthrough](#)
- [LAN Bypass Gen3](#)

Port Settings

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Ports](#) > [Port Settings](#)

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

Port Settings - Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Port Settings - Settings

This tab lets you view and adjust the settings for each port.

The screenshot shows the 'Port Settings' interface with two tabs: 'Setting' and 'Status'. The 'Setting' tab is active. Below the tabs is a search bar and a table with the following columns: Port, Status, Media Type, Description, Speed/Duplex, Flow Control, and MDI/MDIX. The table contains 9 rows of data for ports 3 through 12. Each row has a pencil icon in the 'Port' column, indicating editability. The 'Status' column for all ports is 'Enabled'. The 'Media Type' for ports 3-8 is '1000TX,RJ45', for G1 and G2 it is '100FX,minigBIC', and for Trk1 and Trk2 it is '-'. The 'Speed/Duplex' for ports 3-8 is 'Auto', for G1 and G2 it is '--', and for Trk1 and Trk2 it is '--'. The 'Flow Control' for ports 3-8 is 'Disabled', for G1 and G2 it is 'Disabled', and for Trk1 and Trk2 it is '--'. The 'MDI/MDIX' for ports 3-8 is 'Auto', for G1 and G2 it is '--', and for Trk1 and Trk2 it is '--'. A '1 - 9 of 9' indicator is visible at the bottom right of the table.

Port	Status	Media Type	Description	Speed/Duplex	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX
3	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
4	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
5	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
6	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
8	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45		Auto	Disabled	Auto
G1	Enabled	100FX,minigBIC		--	Disabled	--
G2	Enabled	100FX,minigBIC		--	Disabled	--
Trk1	Enabled	--		--	--	--
Trk2	Enabled	--		--	--	--

UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows which port this row describes.
Status	Shows the status of the port.
Media Type	Shows the port's media type.
Description	Shows the description for the port.
Speed / Duplex	Shows the speed and duplex mode for the port.
Flow Control	Shows the whether flow control is enabled or disabled for the port.
MDI / MDIX	Shows the MDI/MDIX setting for the port.

Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Port Settings - Settings - Edit Port Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Ports > Port Settings - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the settings for a port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Port 3 Settings

Status *
Enabled ▼

Media Type
1000TX,RJ45

Description
 0 / 127

Speed/Duplex Mode *
Auto ▼

Flow Control *
Disabled ▼ i

MDI/MDIX *
Auto ▼

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or Disable the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Media Type	Displays the port's media type. This setting cannot be changed.	N/A	Port's media type
Description	Enter a description for the port to make it easier to identify.	1 to 127 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Speed / Duplex	<p>Select the speed and duplex mode for the port.</p> <p>Auto: Allows the port to use IEEE 802.3u protocol to negotiate the best port speed and duplex mode to use for the connected device.</p> <p>100M-Full: This will force the port to connect using 100 Mbps at full-duplex.</p> <p>100M-Half: This will force the port to connect using 100 Mbps at half-duplex.</p> <p>10M-Full: This will force the port to connect using 10 Mbps at full-duplex.</p> <p>10M-Half: This will force the port to connect using 10 Mbps at half-duplex.</p>	Auto / 100M-Full / 100M-Half / 10M-Full / 10M-Half	Auto
Flow Control	<p>Enable or disable flow control for this port when the port's Speed/Duplex setting is set to Auto. Flow control helps manage the data transfer rate between the device and the connected Ethernet devices.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If Speed/Duplex is set to something other than Auto, Flow Control will be disabled.</p> </div>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
MDI / MDIX	<p>Select whether the port should use MDI or MDIX. The correct setting depends on both the connected device and the cabling used to connect to the device.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Auto: Allow the port to auto-detect whether to use MDI or MDIX for connected devices. • MDI: Force the port to use MDI (also known as "straight-through"). • MDIX: Force the port to use MDIX (also known as "crossover"). <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Only choose MDI or MDIX if your connected Ethernet device has trouble auto-negotiating the correct port type.</p> </div>	Auto / MDI / MDIX	Auto

Port Settings - Status

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Port Settings - Status

This tab lets you monitor the status of each port. Click the **Refresh** (🔄) button to refresh the table.

Port Settings

Setting **Status**

C Search

Port	Status	Media Type	Link Status	Description	Flow Control	MDI/MDIX	Port State
3	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	100M-Full		Off	MDI	Forwarding
4	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	-		-	-	-
5	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	-		-	-	-
6	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	100M-Full		Off	MDI	Forwarding
8	Enabled	1000TX,RJ45	1G-Full		Off	MDI	Forwarding
G1	Enabled	N/A	-		-	-	-
G2	Enabled	N/A	-		-	-	-
Tk1	Enabled	-	-		-	-	-
Tk2	Enabled	-	1G-Full		-	-	-

1 - 9 of 9

UI Setting

Description

Port	Shows which port this row describes.
Status	Shows the status of the port.
Media Type	Shows the port's media type.
Link Status	Shows the speed and duplex mode the connection is currently using. If the link is not active, a - will be shown.
Description	Shows the description for the port.
Flow Control	Shows the whether flow control is currently on or off for the port. If the link is not active, a - will be shown.
MDI / MDIX	Shows whether the port is using MDI or MDIX for its connection. If the link is not active, a - will be shown.
Port State	Shows the port state for the port. If the link is not active, a - will be shown.

Link Aggregation

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation

This page lets you configure link aggregation for your device. Link aggregation (or port trunking) is the process of combining multiple physical network links into a single logical link to increase bandwidth, improve redundancy and availability, and provide load balancing across links.

Note

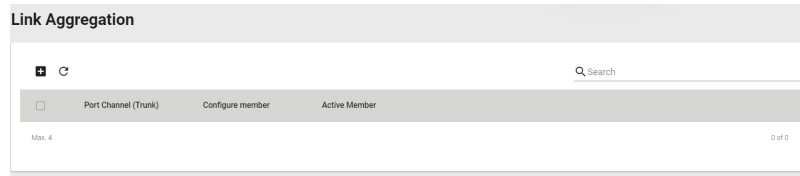
Ports in the same link aggregation must have the same speed.

Note

If a port is being used for Turbo Ring or Turbo Chain, it will not appear in the Link Aggregation list.

Note

For TN-4916 models with only 4 Gigabit ports, ports 1 to 8 cannot be aggregated with ports 9-12 due to design limitations.



Create Link Aggregation

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation - Create Link Aggregation

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new link aggregation with member ports.

Create Link Aggregation

If you want to activate new port trunking settings, the all functions related to the trunking ports will be set to default values.

Config Member Port * 

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Config Member Port	Select the ports you want to include in the link aggregation group.	Port drop-down menu	N/A
---------------------------	---	---------------------	-----

Edit Link Aggregation

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation - Edit Link Aggregation

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a link aggregation on the **Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing link aggregation with member ports.

Edit Port Channel 1 Settings

If you want to activate new port trunking settings, the all functions related to the trunking ports will be set to default values.

Config Member Port *
 

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Config Member Port	Select the ports you want to include in the link aggregation group.	Port drop-down menu	N/A
---------------------------	---	---------------------	-----

Delete Link Aggregation

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > Link Aggregation

You can delete link aggregations by using the checkboxes to select the link aggregations you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑) icon.

Link Aggregation

Port Channel (Trunk)	Configure member	Active Member
1	1	
2	2,7	7

Max: 4 1 - 2 of 2

PoE

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE

This section lets you configure your device's Power over Ethernet (PoE) settings. PoE allows your Moxa device to power other connected PoE Ethernet devices—such as security cameras, wireless access points, and sensors—through the Ethernet cable.

Note

PoE functionality is only available on specific PoE-enabled Moxa device models. Connected PoE devices must support the IEEE 802.3af/at standard in order to use this feature.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- PD Failure Check
- Scheduling
- Status

Port	PoE Supported	Power Output	Output Mode	Power Allocation	Legacy PD Detection	Prior
1	No	--	--	--	--	--
2	No	--	--	--	--	--
3	Yes	Enabled	Auto	0	Disabled	Low
4	Yes	Enabled	Auto	0	Disabled	Low

PoE - General

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - General

This page lets you enable or disable various PoE related features. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

The screenshot shows the PoE configuration interface with the following settings:

- Power Output ***: Enabled
- Power Management Mode ***: Consumed Power
- Auto Power Cutting ***: Enabled
- System Power Budget ***: 50 Watt (Valid Range: 30 - 50)

An **APPLY** button is visible at the bottom left of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Power Output	Enable or disable PoE.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Power Management Mode	Specify whether the power budget for all ports should be calculated. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Allocated Power: This calculates the power budget based on the Power Allocation settings of all ports. For more information on per-port power allocation, refer to Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - General - Edit Port Settings. Consumed Power: This calculates the power budget based on actual power consumed by all ports. 	Allocated Power / Consumed Power	Consumed Power
Auto Power Cutting	Enable or disable auto power cutting, which allows PoE to be disabled for ports when total power consumption exceeds the system power budget threshold. Ports with lower priority will be disabled before ports with higher priority.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
System Power Budget	Specify the "total measured power" limit to use for all PoE ports combined.	<i>(Depends on your device model)</i>	<i>(Depends on your device model)</i> TN-4916 PoE models: 95 W TN-4908 PoE models: 50 W

PoE - General - Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the PoE settings for each port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Power Output	Enable or disable PoE for all PoE ports.	Enable / Disable	Enable
Output Mode	Specify whether to set the PoE output mode to Auto or Force. Auto: Power output will be determined by using 802.3at auto-detection. High Power: Power mode allocates 36 watts of power to the PD if it requires more than 30 watts of power Force: Power output will be determined by the Power Allocation setting for the port. This may be necessary for PDs that do not follow 802.3af/at standards.	Auto / High Power / Force	Auto

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Legacy PD Detection	Enable or disable Legacy PD Detection. When the capacitance of a PD is higher than 2.7 μ F and less than 10 μ F, Legacy PD Detection will trigger the system to output power to the PD. It will take a few seconds for PoE power to be output through the port (if triggered) after enabling Legacy PD Detection.	Enable / Disable	Disable
Power Allocation	Specify the power in watts to allocate to a connected PD when the Output Mode is set to Force . This setting is not used and cannot be adjusted if the Output Mode is set to Auto or High Power . It will be fixed as 0 in Auto mode , and as 36 in High Power model	0 to 36 W	0
Priority	Specify the priority of the port to use with the Auto Power Cutting feature. If Auto Power Cutting is enabled, PoE will be disabled for ports with lower priority when total power consumption exceeds the system power budget threshold. Ports with lower priority will be disabled before ports with higher priority. Refer to Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - General for more information.	Critical / High / Low	Low
Copy Config to Ports	Specify which ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Select port(s) from the drop-down list	None

PoE PD Failure Check









Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - PD Failure Check

This tab lets you monitor the status of a powered device (PD) through its IP address. If the PD fails, the switch will not receive a PD response after the defined period, and the authentication process will be restarted. This function is extremely useful for ensuring network reliability and simplifying management.

PoE

General PD Failure Check Scheduling Status

⌂ Search

Port	PoE Supported	Enable	Device IP	Check Frequency (sec.)	No Response Times	Action
 1	No	--	--	--	--	--
 2	No	--	--	--	--	--
 3	Yes	Disabled		10	3	No Action
 4	Yes	Disabled		10	3	No Action
 5	No	--	--	--	--	--
 6	No	--	--	--	--	--
 7	Yes	Disabled		10	3	No Action
 8	Yes	Disabled		10	3	No Action


1 - 8 of 8

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Port	Shows which port this row describes.
PoE Supported	Shows whether the port supports PoE.
Enable	Shows whether PD failure checking is enabled or disabled for the port.
Device IP	Shows what IP will be monitored for PD failure checking for the port.
Check Frequency (sec.)	Shows how often PD failure checks will be performed for the port.
No Response Times	Shows how many IP checking cycles will be tried before determining a PD is not responding.
Action	Shows what action will be taken if a PD failure is detected for the port.

PoE - PD Failure Check - Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - PD Failure Check

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - PD Failure Check** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the PD failure check settings for each port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Port 3 Settings


Enable *
Disabled ▼

Device IP

Check Frequency *
10
5 - 300 sec.

No Response Times *
3
1 - 10 times

Action *
No Action ▼

Copy Configurations to Ports ▼ 

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enable	Enable or disable the PD failure check function.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Device IP	Specify the PD's IP address.	IP address	0.0.0.0
Check Frequency	Specify how often PD failure checks will run.	5 to 300 seconds	10
No Response Times	Specify the maximum number of IP checking cycles to try before determining a PD is not responding.	1 to 10	3
Action	Decide what action to take when a PD failure is detected.	No Action / Restart PD / Shutdown PD	No Action
Copy Config to Ports	Specify which ports you want to copy this configuration to.	Select port(s) from the drop-down list	None

PoE - Scheduling

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - Scheduling

This tab lets you set schedules for each PoE port. Switch to Advanced Mode, click the Scheduling tab, and then click the + icon to create the scheduling settings.

Limitations

You can create up to 20 scheduling rules.

UI Setting	Description
Rule Name	Shows the name for the scheduling rule.
Status	Shows whether the rule is enabled or disabled.
Start Date	Shows what date the rule will start on.
Schedule Time	Shows the time when the rule will be active.
End Time	Select the end time for the rule.
Apply the rule to port	Shows which ports will use this rule.

PoE - Scheduling - Create Rule

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Ports](#) > [PoE - Scheduling](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - Scheduling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a PoE scheduling rule. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

Create Rule

Rule Name * 0 / 63

Rule *
Enabled ▼

Start Date * 📅

Start Time * 🕒 End Time * 🕒

-- :--: -- :--: 🕒

Repeat Execution * ▼

Apply the rule to the ... ▼

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Rule Name	Specify a name for the scheduling rule.	1 to 63 characters	None
Enable	Enable or disable the scheduling rule.	Enable / Disable	Enabled
Start Date	Specify a start date for the rule.	mm/dd/yyyy	None
Start Time	Specify a start time for the rule.	AM/PM hh/mm	None
End Time	Specify an end time for the rule.	AM/PM hh/mm	None
Repeat Execution	Specify whether to repeat execution of the rule on a daily or weekly basis.	None / Daily / Weekly	None
Apply the rule to port	Specify which ports should use this rule.	Select port(s) from the drop-down list	None

PoE - Scheduling - Edit Rule

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - Scheduling

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon on the **Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - Scheduling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing PoE scheduling rule.

Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Rule

Rule Name *
poerule1
8 / 63

Rule *
Disabled

Start Date *
2024-05-13

Start Time * End Time *
下午 06:00 下午 09:00

Repeat Execution *
Daily

Apply the rule to the port *
1

CANCEL APPLY


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Rule Name	Specify a name for the scheduling rule.	1 to 63 characters	None
Enable	Enable or disable the scheduling rule.	Enable / Disable	Enabled
Start Date	Specify a start date for the rule.	mm/dd/yyyy	None
Start Time	Specify a start time for the rule.	AM/PM hh/mm	None
End Time	Specify an end time for the rule.	AM/PM hh/mm	None
Repeat Execution	Specify whether to repeat execution of the rule on a daily or weekly basis.	None / Daily / Weekly	None

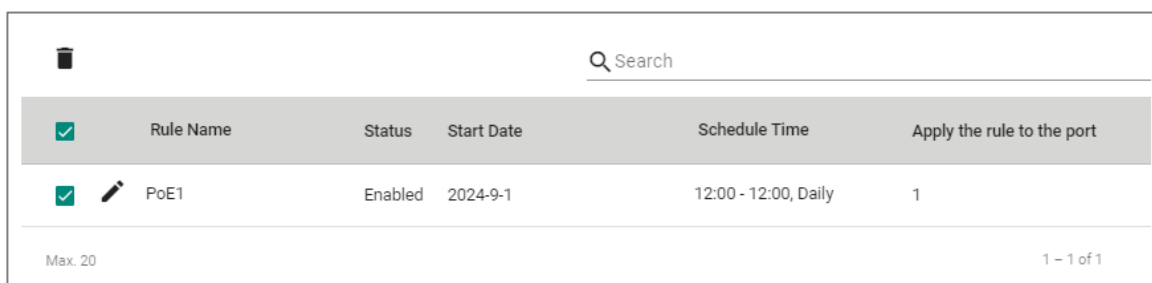
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------


Apply the rule to port	Specify which ports should use this rule.	Select port(s) from the drop-down list	None
-------------------------------	---	--	------

PoE - Scheduling - Delete Rule

Menu Path: Port > PoE – Scheduling

You can delete a rule by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the Delete () icon.



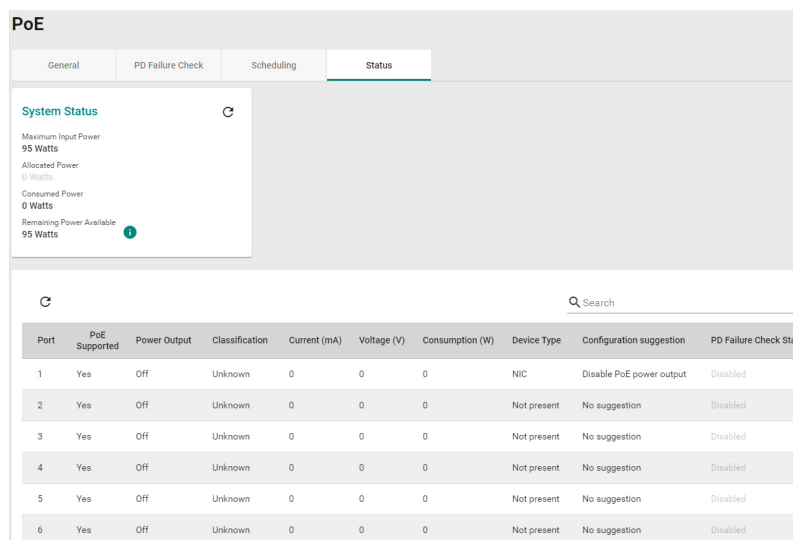
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Rule Name	Status	Start Date	Schedule Time	Apply the rule to the port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 PoE1	Enabled	2024-9-1	12:00 - 12:00, Daily	1

Max. 20 1 - 1 of 1

PoE - Status

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - Status

This tab lets you view the current PoE status of your ports.



PoE

General | PD Failure Check | Scheduling | **Status**

System Status

- Maximum Input Power: 95 Watts
- Allocated Power: 0 Watts
- Consumed Power: 0 Watts
- Remaining Power Available: 95 Watts

Port	PoE Supported	Power Output	Classification	Current (mA)	Voltage (V)	Consumption (W)	Device Type	Configuration suggestion	PD Failure Check Status
1	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	NIC	Disable PoE power output	Disabled
2	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	Not present	No suggestion	Disabled
3	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	Not present	No suggestion	Disabled
4	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	Not present	No suggestion	Disabled
5	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	Not present	No suggestion	Disabled
6	Yes	Off	Unknown	0	0	0	Not present	No suggestion	Disabled

Name	Description
------	-------------

Port	Shows the number of the PoE port.
-------------	-----------------------------------

Name	Description
PoE Supported	Shows whether the port supports PoE.
Power Output	Shows whether PoE power output is on or off for the port.
Classification	Shows the PoE power classification of the port. Each PoE power classification has a different maximum power (in watts) by PSE output as follows: 0: 15.4 watts 1: 4 watts 2: 7 watts 3: 15.4 watts 4: 30 watts
Current (mA)	Shows the amount of current (in mA) being supplied to the port.
Voltage (V)	Shows the voltage (in V) being used for the port.
Consumption (W)	Shows the power consumption (in W) of the device connected to the port.
Device Type	Shows the device type of the device currently connected to the port. Not Present: There are no active connections to the port. 802.3at: An IEEE 802.3at PD is connected to the port. 802.3af: An IEEE 802.3af PD is connected to the port. NIC: A NIC is connected to the port. Unknown: An unknown PD is connected to the port. N/A: The PoE function is disabled.
Configuration Suggestion	Shows configuration suggestions based on detected conditions. Disable PoE power output: A NIC or unknown PD was detected; you may want to disable PoE power output for the port. Select Force Mode: A higher/lower resistance or higher capacitance was detected; you may want to select Force Mode for the port. Select high power output: An unknown classification was detected; you may want to select High Power output. Raise the external power supply voltage to greater than 46 VDC: When the external supply voltage is detected at less than 46 V, the system suggests raising the voltage. Enable PoE function for detection: The system suggests enabling the PoE function. Select IEEE 802.3at auto mode: When detecting an IEEE 802.3at PD, the system suggests selecting 802.3at Auto mode. Select IEEE 802.3af auto mode: When detecting an IEEE 802.3af PD, the system suggests selecting 802.3af Auto mode.

Name	Description
PD Failure Check	<p>Shows the results of the last PD failure check, if checking is enabled. Refer to Network Configuration > Ports > PoE - PD Failure Check for more information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Disable: PD failure checking is not enabled for the port.• Alive: The port is alive, and passed the last PD failure check.• Not Alive: The port is not alive, and failed the last PD failure check.

Link Fault Passthrough

Menu Path: [Network Configuration > Ports > Link Fault Passthrough](#)

This page lets you enable and configure the Link Fault Passthrough function.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

Note

When Link Fault Passthrough is enabled, both ports need to be linked up. Otherwise, traffic between LAN ports or access from LAN ports to the device's web console might be shut down.

Note

Available ports may vary depending on the model, and port selection may be fixed for some models.

Status *
Enabled ▼

Port 1
1 ▼

Port 2
2 ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the Link Fault Passthrough function. When enabled, when any of the port links are down, the other port will be shut down.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Port 1	Specify which port to use as Port 1 in the Link Fault Passthrough pair.	Dropdown list of ports	1
Port 2	Specify which port to use as Port 2 in the Link Fault Passthrough pair.	Dropdown list of ports	2

LAN Bypass Gen3

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Ports](#) > [LAN Bypass Gen3](#)

This page lets you enable and configure different LAN bypass modes for your device.

System Failure Bypass Configuration

System Failure Bypass Configuration

Mode
Disabled ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	<p>Specify which system failure bypass mode to use. When triggered, system failure bypass allows traffic to continue to flow between LAN ports during system failure events, minimizing disruption and maintaining operational integrity.</p> <p>Disabled: Disable system failure bypass. Traffic will not pass between LAN ports during device failure.</p> <p>Shutdown: Enable system failure bypass only when there is a hardware failure, such as a power outage.</p> <p>Shutdown and Halted: Enable bypass function for both hardware failures and software issues, such as the CPU becoming unresponsive.</p>	Disabled / Shutdown / Shutdown and Halted	Shutdown and Halted

System Runtime Bypass Configuration

The screenshot displays the 'System Runtime Bypass Configuration' window. At the top, the title is 'System Runtime Bypass Configuration'. Below it, there is a 'Status' dropdown menu currently showing 'Disabled'. Underneath, there is an 'Auto Recovery Time' input field with the value '5' and a unit indicator 'min.'. To the right of the input field is an information icon (i). Below the input field, the valid range is shown as '0 - 43200 min.'. At the bottom of the configuration area is a green 'APPLY' button.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable/ Disable the system runtime bypass feature. When system runtime bypass is enabled, this will temporarily allow traffic to flow through LAN ports unimpeded, ensuring continuous network operation.	Disabled / Enabled	Disabled
Auto Recovery Time	<p>Specify the number of minutes after which the device will automatically disable system runtime bypass after it is enabled, and will then recover to normal LAN port behavior.</p> <p>If this is set to 0, the device will not exit system runtime bypass after it is enabled.</p>	0 to 43200	5

Layer 2 Switching

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching

This section lets you configure the Layer 2 switching settings for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- VLAN
- MAC Address
- QoS
- Rate Limit
- Multicast

VLAN

This page lets you configure global VLAN settings so you can partition your network into separate VLANs.

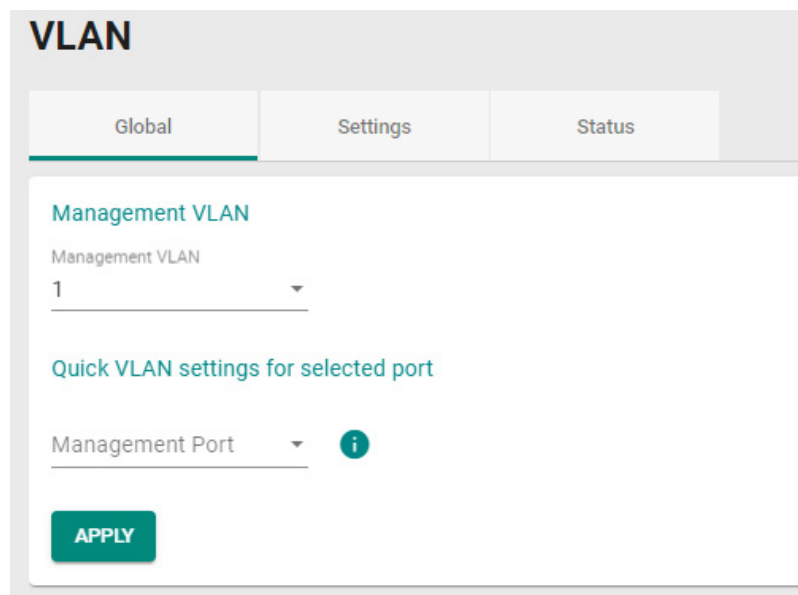
This page includes these tabs:

- Global
- Settings
- Status

VLAN Settings - Global

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [VLAN - Global](#)

This tab lets you configure the settings for the management VLAN and management port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



The screenshot shows the 'VLAN' configuration page with the 'Global' tab selected. The 'Management VLAN' is set to '1'. Below it, there is a section for 'Quick VLAN settings for selected port' with a 'Management Port' dropdown menu and an information icon. An 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom left of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Management VLAN	Specify the management VLAN ID from the drop-down menu.	1 to 4093	1
Management Port	Specify a management port for this device to allow for quick and easy configuration of VLAN settings for multiple ports.	<i>(Depends on your device model)</i>	N/A

The following settings will appear after selecting a **Management Port**:

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	Specify which VLAN mode the port should use: Access: Define the port as an Access port. This is used when connecting to single devices without tags. Trunk: Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN-aware router. Hybrid: Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN-aware router, or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged devices and/or other routers or hubs.	Access / Trunk / Hybrid	Access
PVID	Set the default VLAN ID to use for traffic from untagged devices that connect to the port.	1 to 4093	1
Tagged VLAN	If the Mode is set to Trunk or Hybrid , you can specify what VLAN IDs tagged devices that connect to the port will use. Use commas to separate different VLAN IDs.	All Member VIDs / 1 to 4093	Access mode: N/A Trunk or Hybrid mode: 1
Untagged VLAN	If the Mode is set to Access , assign a VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to the port and remove tags upon egress. Use commas to separate different VLAN IDs.	All Member VIDs / 1 to 4093	Access mode: 1 Trunk or Hybrid mode: N/A

VLAN - Settings

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [VLAN - Settings](#)

This tab lets you configure management VLAN and port settings. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

Please note that port numbers may vary depending on product model.

Limitations

You can create up to 32 VLANs.

VLAN

Global Settings Status

+

<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN	Member Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9, 10
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	8
<input type="checkbox"/>	40	
<input type="checkbox"/>	50	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4040	
<input type="checkbox"/>	4041	

Max. 32

↻

	Port	Mode	PVID	Untagged VLAN	Tagged VLAN
	3	Access	1	1,	
	4	Access	1	1,	
	5	Access	1	1,	
	6	Access	1	1,	
	8	Access	2	2,	
	9	Access	1	1,	
	10	Access	1	1,	
	Trk1	Access	1	1,	
	Trk2	Access	1	1,	

The top table shows a list of VLANs.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- VLAN** Shows the VID for the VLAN.
- Member Port** Shows which ports are in the VLAN.


The bottom table shows a list of the device's ports and their VLAN settings.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------


- Port** Shows which port this row describes.
- Mode** Shows the VLAN mode for the port.
- PVID** Shows the PVID for the port.
- Untagged VLAN** Shows the Untagged VLAN.
- Tagged VLAN** Shows the Tagged VLAN.

VLAN - Settings - Create VLAN

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [VLAN - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > PoE - Scheduling** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a VLAN. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new VLAN.

Create VLAN

VID * 

Max 16 VLANs

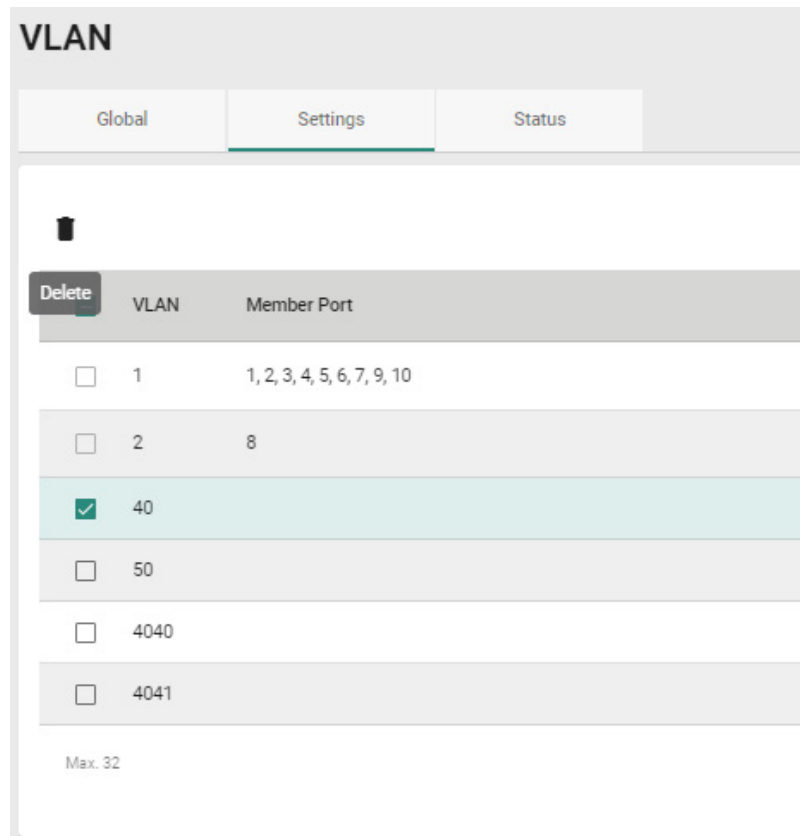
CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VID	Specify the VID to use for the VLAN. You can create multiple VLANs at once by entering single VIDs or VID ranges separated by commas, such as 2, 4-8, 10-13.	1 to 4094. You can enter multiple VIDs and/or VID ranges, separated by commas.	N/A

VLAN - Settings - Delete VLAN

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings

You can delete VLANs by using the checkboxes to select the VLANs you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.



VLAN - Settings - Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the VLAN settings for a port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Port 1 Settings

Mode
Access ▼

PVID
1 ▼

Tagged VLAN
..... ▼

Untagged VLAN
1 ▼

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	Specify which VLAN mode the port should use: Access: Define the port as an Access port. This is used when connecting to single devices without tags. Trunk: Define the port as a Trunk port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN-aware router. Hybrid: Define the port as a Hybrid port. This is used when connecting to another 802.1Q VLAN-aware router, or another LAN that combines tagged and/or untagged devices and/or other routers or hubs.	Access / Trunk / Hybrid	Access
PVID	Set the default VLAN ID to use for traffic from untagged devices that connect to the port.	1 to 4094	1
Tagged VLAN (when editing settings for the Management Port)	If the Mode is set to Trunk or Hybrid , you can specify what VLAN IDs tagged devices that connect to the port will use. Use commas to separate different VLANs.	All Member VLANs / 1 to 4094	N/A
Untagged VLAN (when editing settings for the Management Port)	If the Mode is set to Access , assign a VLAN ID for untagged devices that connect to the port and remove tags upon egress. Use commas to separate different VLAN IDs.	All Member VLANs / 1 to 4094	N/A

VLAN - Status

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > VLAN - Status

This tab lets you monitor the status of the VLANs on your device.

VLAN	Hybrid Port	Trunk Port	Access Port
1			1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9, 10
2			8
3			7
4			
5			

UI Setting	Description
VLAN	Shows the VID of the VLAN.
Hybrid Port	Shows ports acting as a Hybrid Port for the VLAN.
Trunk Port	Shows ports acting as a Trunk Port for the VLAN.
Access Port	Shows ports acting as an Access Port for the VLAN.

MAC Address Table

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > MAC Address Table

This page lets you view your device's MAC address table and set the aging time for MAC address entries.

MAC Address Table

Aging Time

300

5 - 300 sec.

APPLY



Index	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Type	Port
1	1	00:90:e8:7e:d6:b8	Learnt Unicast	6
2	1	01:00:5e:01:02:03	Static Multicast	8
3	1	01:00:5e:7f:ff:ff	Static Multicast	3
4	2	00:00:02:00:00:00	Learnt Unicast	8
5	2	00:05:1b:cc:5f:41	Learnt Unicast	8
6	2	00:1b:21:64:60:3f	Learnt Unicast	8
7	2	00:90:e8:51:21:21	Learnt Unicast	8
8	2	00:90:e8:5d:5f:11	Learnt Unicast	8
9	2	00:90:e8:5d:5f:12	Learnt Unicast	8

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Aging Time	Specify the aging time for MAC address entries in seconds. The aging time determines how long entries will be kept in the MAC address table in the device's memory before expiring.	5 to 300	300
-------------------	---	----------	-----

The MAC address table shows the following information:

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Index	Shows the index number of the MAC address.
VLAN ID	Shows which VLAN ID is being used for the MAC address.
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address.

UI Setting	Description
Type	Shows what kind of MAC address entry this is: Learnt Unicast: Used for all learnt unicast MAC addresses. Learnt Multicast: Used for all learnt multicast MAC addresses. Static Unicast: Used for all static unicast MAC addresses. Static Multicast: Used for all static multicast MAC addresses.
Port	Shows which port on the device the MAC address is connected to.

QoS

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [QoS](#)

This page lets you configure QoS settings to control network traffic prioritization.

This page includes these tabs:

- CoS Mapping
- DSCP Mapping
- Port Classification









CoS Mapping

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Layer 2 Switching](#) > [QoS - CoS Mapping](#)

This tab lets you configure CoS Mapping, which allows you to map 802.1p/1Q Layer 2 CoS tags to priority queues on the device.

QoS


CoS Mapping DSCP Mapping Port Classification

CoS	Priority Queue
 0	0
 1	0
 2	1
 3	1
 4	2
 5	2
 6	3
 7	3

UI Setting	Description
CoS	Shows the CoS level. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.
Level	Shows the priority queue. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.

CoS Mapping - Edit a CoS Mapping

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - CoS Mapping

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an CoS level on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - CoS Mapping** tab will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you map CoS levels to priority queues. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit CoS 0 Settings

Priority Queue *

0 

CANCEL **APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Priority Queue	Specify the priority queue to use for the CoS level. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.	0 to 3 <i>(Depends on your device model)</i>	0

DSCP Mapping

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - DSCP Mapping

This tab lets you map Layer 3 DSCP levels to priority queues on the device.

DSCP	Level
0x0 (1)	0
0x4 (2)	0
0x8 (3)	0
0xc (4)	0
0x10 (5)	0
0x14 (6)	0
0x18 (7)	0
0x1c (8)	0
0x20 (9)	0
0x24 (10)	0
0x28 (11)	0
0x2c (12)	0
0x30 (13)	0
0x34 (14)	0
0x38 (15)	0
0x3c (16)	0
0x40 (17)	1

UI Setting	Description
DSCP	Shows the DSCP level. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.
Level	Shows the priority queue. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.

DSCP Mapping - Edit a DSCP Mapping

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - DSCP Mapping

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an DSCP mapping on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - DSCP Mapping** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you map DSCP levels to priority queues. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit DSCP 0x0 (1) Settings

Priority Queue *
0

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Priority Queue	Specify the priority queue to use for the DSCP level. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.	0 to 3 <i>(Depends on your device model)</i>	0

Port Classification

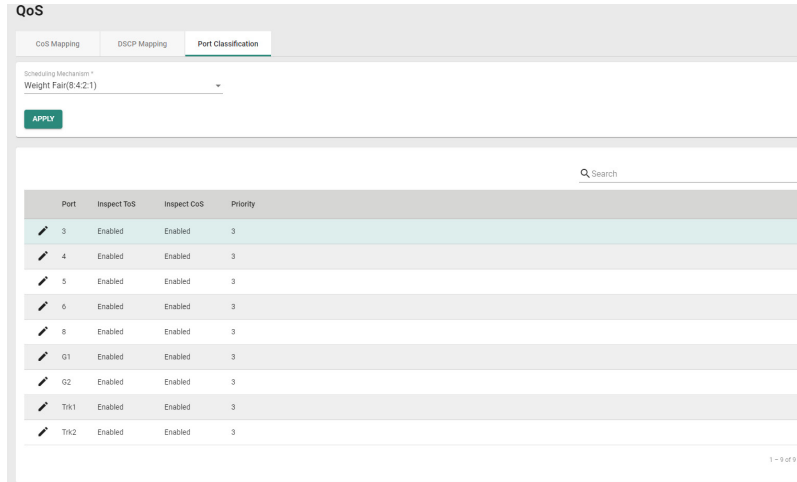
Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - Port Classification

This tab lets you set up QoS queueing mechanisms.

✎ Note

For TN-4900 Series 16-port models, port priority must be handled in 2 separate groups as follows, due to design limitations:

- Ports 1 to 8
- Ports G1 to G8
or
Ports 9 to 12 and G1 to G4
(depends on your model)



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Scheduling Mechanism	<p>Specify the scheduling mechanism to use for your device:</p> <p>Weight Fair(8:4:2:1): In the weight fair scheme, an 8, 4, 2, 1 weighting is applied to the four priority levels on the device. This approach prevents lower priority frames from being starved of opportunities for transmission with only a slight delay to higher priority frames.</p> <p>Strict(High Priority First Always): In the strict-priority scheme, all top-priority frames egress a port until that priority's queue is empty, and then the next lower priority queue's frames egress. This approach can cause the lower priorities to be starved of opportunities for transmitting any frames, but ensures that all high priority frames will egress the switch as soon as possible.</p>	Weight Fair(8:4:2:1) / Strict(High Priority First Always)	Weight Fair(8:4:2:1)

The port classification table shows the following information:

UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows which port this row describes.
Inspect ToS	Shows whether ToS is enabled or disabled for the port.
Inspect CoS	Shows whether CoS inspection is enabled or disabled for the port.
Priority	Shows the priority for the port. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.

Port Classification - Edit Port Setting

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - Port Classification

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > QoS - Port Classification** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you adjust the QoS classification settings for each port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Port 3 Settings

Inspect ToS *
Enabled

Inspect CoS *
Enabled

Priority *
3

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inspect ToS	Enable or disable inspection of Type of Service (ToS) bits in the IPv4 frame to determine the priority of each frame.	Enabled or Disabled	Enabled
Inspect CoS	Enable or disable inspection of 802.1p CoS tags in the MAC frame to determine the priority of each frame.	Enabled or Disabled	Enabled
Priority	Specify the priority of the port. Higher numbers indicate higher priority.	0 to 7	3

Rate Limit

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Rate Limit

This page lets you control the bandwidth of ingress (incoming) and egress (outgoing) traffic through the device to protect end-devices that may not have the capability to handle large amounts of traffic.

Note

Please note that available options may vary depending on the product model.

Rate Limit

Ingress Policy *
Limit Broadcast

Ingress Action *
Drop Packet

APPLY

Search

Port	Ingress	Egress
3	Not Limited (100 Mbps)	Not Limited (100 Mbps)
4	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
5	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
6	Not Limited (100 Mbps)	Not Limited (100 Mbps)
8	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
G1	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
G2	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)

1 - 7 of 7

Rate Limit Settings

Ingress Policy *
Limit Broadcast

Ingress Action *
Drop Packet

APPLY

Rate Limit

Ingress Policy *
Limit Broadcast ▼

Ingress Action * Port Disable Period *
Port Disable ▼ 0

1 - 65535

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Ingress Policy	<p>Select which kind of traffic ingress rate limiting will be applied to.</p> <p>Limit All: Rate limit will be applied to all traffic.</p> <p>Limit Broadcast, Multicast and Flooded Unicast: Rate limit will be applied to broadcast, multicast, and flooded unicast traffic only.</p> <p>Limit Broadcast, Multicast: Rate limit will be applied to broadcast and multicast traffic only.</p> <p>Limit Broadcast: Rate limit will be applied to broadcast traffic only.</p>	Limit All / Limit Broadcast, Multicast and Flooded Unicast / Limit Broadcast, Multicast / Limit Broadcast	Limit Broadcast
Ingress Action	<p>Select the ingress action.</p> <p>Drop Packet: The rate limit will discard incoming packets that do not comply with the ingress policy.</p> <p>Port Disable: The rate limit will disable the port that do not comply with the ingress policy.</p>	Drop Packet / Port Disable	Drop Pakcet
Port Disabled Period (Only if Ingress Action is set as Port Disable)	<p>Select the port disable period during which the port will be disabled. Once this period is over, the port will be re-enabled. However, if the port does not comply with the ingress policy again, it will be disabled then.</p>	1-65535	0

Rate Limit Port List

Port	Ingress	Egress
3	Not Limited (100 Mbps)	Not Limited (100 Mbps)
4	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
5	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
6	Not Limited (100 Mbps)	Not Limited (100 Mbps)
8	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
G1	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)
G2	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)	Not Limited (1000 Mbps)

UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows which port this row describes.
Ingress	Shows the ingress bandwidth rate limit method and bandwidth.
Egress	Shows the egress bandwidth rate limit method and bandwidth.

Rate Limit - Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Rate Limit

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a port on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Rate Limit** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure rate limit settings for each port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Port 1/1 Settings

Ingress *
Not Limited

Egress *
Not Limited

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Ingress	Select the ingress rate limit (% of max. throughput) for all packets.	Not Limited / 3% / 5% / 10% /15% / 25% / 35% / 50% / 65% / 85%	Not Limited
Egress	Select the egress rate limit (% of max. throughput) for all packets.	Not Limited / 3% / 5% / 10% /15% / 25% / 35% / 50% / 65% / 85%	Not Limited

Multicast

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast

This section lets you adjust various settings for handling multicast traffic.

This section includes these pages:

- IGMP Snooping
- Static Multicast Table

IGMP Snooping

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping

This page lets you configure IGMP snooping, which enables intelligent forwarding of multicast traffic in local area networks (LANs). By listening to IGMP messages sent between hosts and multicast routers, IGMP snooping can learn which multicast groups are active on the network and maintain a database of multicast group membership.

This page includes these tabs:

- VLAN Settings
- Group Table
- Forwarding Table

IGMP Snooping

VLAN Settings Group Table Forwarding Table

Query Interval *
125
20 - 600 sec.
APPLY

↻

VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping	Querier	Static Router Port
1	Disabled	V1/V2	--
2	Disabled	V1/V2	--
3	Disabled	V1/V2	--
4	Disabled	V1/V2	--
5	Disabled	V1/V2	--

VLAN Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings

This tab lets you configure IGMP snooping settings for each VLAN.

IGMP Snooping

VLAN Settings Group Table Forwarding Table

Query Interval *
125
20 - 600 sec.
APPLY

↻

VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping	Querier	Static Router Port
1	Disabled	V1/V2	--
2	Disabled	V1/V2	--
3	Disabled	V1/V2	--
4	Disabled	V1/V2	--
5	Disabled	V1/V2	--

IGMP VLAN Settings

IGMP Snooping

VLAN Settings
Group Table
Forwarding Table

Query Interval *

20 - 600 sec.

APPLY

↻

	VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping	Querier	Static Router Port
✎	1	Disabled	V1/V2	---
✎	2	Disabled	V1/V2	---
✎	3	Disabled	V1/V2	---
✎	4	Disabled	V1/V2	---
✎	5	Disabled	V1/V2	---

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Query Interval	Specify the query interval of the querier function globally.	20 to 600 seconds	125 seconds

IGMP VLAN List

IGMP Snooping

VLAN Settings Group Table Forwarding Table

Query Interval *
125
20 - 600 sec.
APPLY

↻

VLAN ID	IGMP Snooping	Querier	Static Router Port
1	Disabled	V1/V2	--
2	Disabled	V1/V2	--
3	Disabled	V1/V2	--
4	Disabled	V1/V2	--
5	Disabled	V1/V2	--

UI Setting

Description

VLAN ID

Shows which VLAN ID this row describes.

IGMP Snooping

Shows whether IGMP snooping is enabled or disabled for the VLAN.

Querier

Shows which version of IGMP snooping the VLAN will use.

Static Router Port

Shows the static router port the VLAN will use to connect to the multicast router for IGMP snooping.

VLAN Settings - Edit VLAN Settings

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a VLAN on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - VLAN Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you enable and configure IGMP snooping for each VLAN. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit VLAN 1 Settings

IGMP Snooping *
 Disabled ▾

Querier *
 V1/V2 ▾

Static Router Port ▾

CANCEL

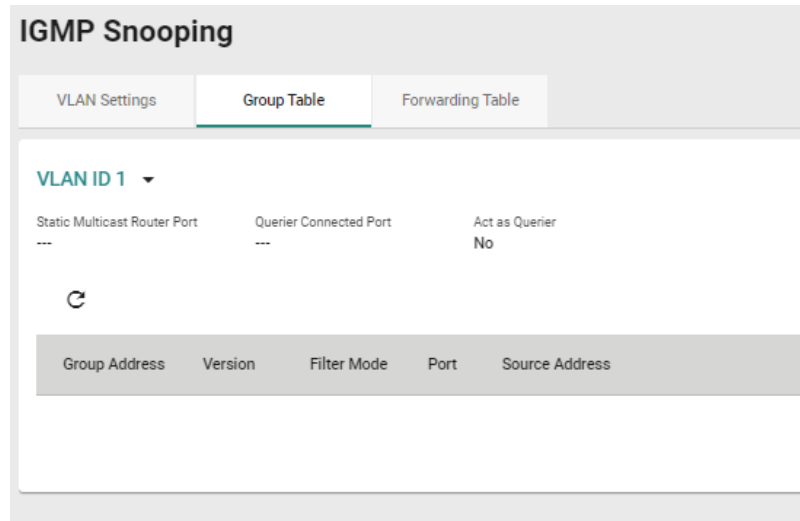
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IGMP Snooping	Enable or disable IGMP Snooping function for the VLAN.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Version	Specify which version of IGMP snooping to use: V1/V2: Enable the Moxa device to send IGMP snooping version 1 and 2 queries. V3: Enable the Moxa device to send IGMP snooping version 3 queries.	V1/V2 / V3	V1/V2
Static Router Port	Select which ports will be used to connect to multicast routers for IGMP Snooping. The device will receive all multicast packets from the selected ports.	1/1 / 1/2 / 1/3 / 1/4 / 1/5 / 1/6 / 1/7 / 1/8 / 1/9 / 1/10	N/A
<p>Note</p> <p>If a router or Layer 3 switch is connected to the network, it will act as the querier, and the querier function will be disabled on all Moxa Layer 2 switches.</p> <p>If all switches on the network are Moxa Layer 2 switches, then only one Layer 2 switch will act as the querier.</p>			

Group Table

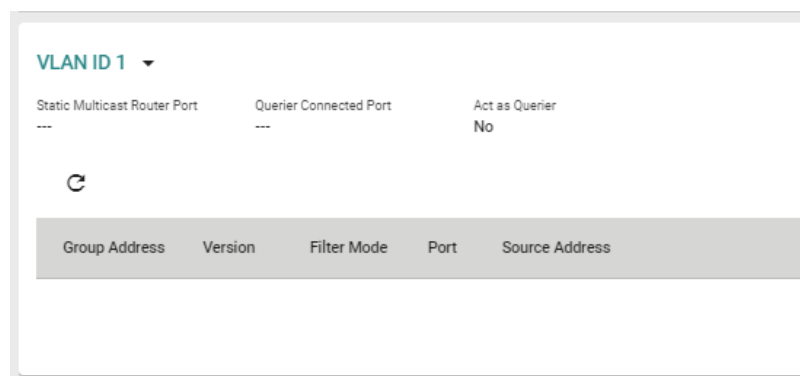
Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - Group Table

This tab lets you see all currently active IGMP groups that were detected for each VLAN.



VLAN Group Table List

You can use the VLAN drop-down to select which VLAN's group table is displayed.



UI Setting	Description
Static Multicast Router Port	Shows the static multicast querier port(s) for the VLAN.
Querier Connected Port	Shows the port which is connected to the querier for the VLAN.
Act as a Querier	Shows whether or not this VLAN has been selected to act as a querier.
Group Address	Shows the multicast group addresses for the VLAN.
Version	Shows the IGMP snooping version for the group address.
Filter Mode	If IGMP v3 is enabled for the VLAN ID, this shows whether the group address is Included or Excluded.
Port	Shows which ports are members of the group address.

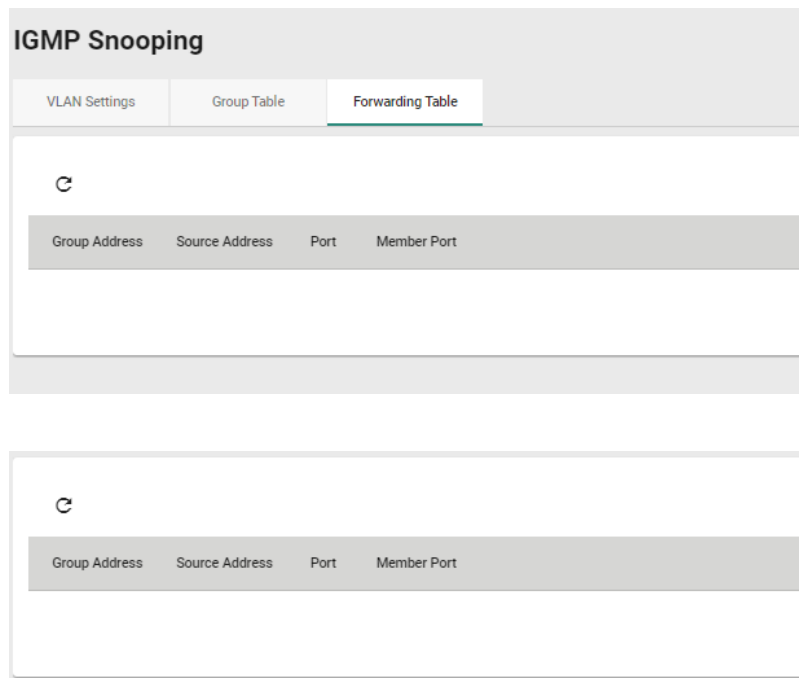
UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Source Address When IGMP v3 is enabled, this shows the multicast source address for the group address.

Forwarding Table

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > IGMP Snooping - Forwarding Table

This page lets you see the multicast stream forwarding status for each VLAN.



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Group Address Shows the multicast group IP address.

Source Address Shows the IP address the multicast group will receive multicast streams from.

Port Shows the port receiving the multicast stream.

Member Port Shows the port the multicast stream is forwarded to.

Static Multicast Table

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table

This page lets you manage your device's static multicast entries.

Note

Please note that settings and available options will vary depending on the product model.

Note

Moxa's Router Series devices manage MAC address learning for VLANs using IVL (Independent VLAN Learning), which uses separate MAC address tables for each VLAN so that MAC address learning for different VLANs do not interfere with each other. This allows the same MAC address to be used in multiple VLANs without causing forwarding issues.


This may lead to a larger MAC address table size, as each VLAN maintains its own individual address table, and the number of MAC address entries will increase based on the number of VLAN member ports used.

Limitations

You can create up to 256 static multicast entries, though some models may support up to 1000 static multicast entries.

The number of entries is calculated as follows: Number of MAC address entries * Number of VLAN IDs

For example, if the static multicast table contains 30 MAC addresses and is connected to 4 VLAN IDs, then the number of MAC address entries would be 30 MAC addresses * 4 VLAN IDs = 120 static multicast entries.



<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:01:02:03	8
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:71:ff:ff	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:71:ff:ff	3

UI Setting

Description

VLAN ID Shows the VLAN ID used for the static multicast entry.


MAC Address Shows the MAC address used for the static multicast entry.


UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Port Shows which ports are included for the static multicast entry.


Static Multicast Table - Create Static Multicast

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a static multicast entry. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new static multicast entry.

 **Note**
 01:00:5E:XX:XX:XX on this page is the IP multicast MAC address, please activate IGMP Snooping for automatic classification.

Create Static Multicast

VLAN ID * MAC Address * 

Port *

CANCEL CREATE


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VLAN ID	Specify the VLAN ID.	Drop-down list of VLAN ID	N/A
MAC Address	Specify the static multicast MAC address.	Valid multicast MAC address	N/A
Port	Specify which ports you want to include in the static multicast group.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

Static Multicast Table - Edit Static Multicast

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an account on the **Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing static multicast entry. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Static Multicast

VLAN ID *	MAC Address *
1	01:00:5e:01:02:03 
Port *	
8	

CANCEL **APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VLAN ID	Specify the VLAN ID.	Drop-down list of VLAN ID	N/A
MAC Address	Specify the static multicast MAC address.	Valid multicast MAC address	N/A
Port	Specify which ports you want to include in the static multicast group.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

Static Multicast Table - Delete Static Multicast

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > Multicast > Static Multicast Table

You can delete user accounts by using the checkboxes to select the accounts you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑) icon.

Static Multicast Table

Search

	VLAN ID	MAC Address	Port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:01:02:03	8
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:7f:ff:ff	
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	01:00:5e:7f:ff:ff	3

Max: 255 Items per page: 50 1 - 3 of 3 |< < > >|

Network Interfaces

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces

This page lets you configure the settings for the various interfaces of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- LAN
- WAN/WAN1
- WAN2/DMZ
- Bridge
- MTU Configuration
- Secondary IP
- Virtual Interface

Network Interfaces

LAN WAN Bridge MTU Configuration Secondary IP Virtual Interface

Search

	Name	Status	VLAN ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask	Virtual MAC	Directed Broadcast	Source IP Override
<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN	Enabled	1		192.168.127.254	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	lan1	Enabled	40		192.168.126.254	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	lan_test	Enabled	50		192.168.125.29	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	lan_test2	Disabled	4040		192.168.9.2	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled

Max: 15 Items per page: 50 1 - 4 of 4 |< < > >|

LAN

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - LAN

This tab lets you manage your LAN interfaces.



Limitations

You can create up to 16 LAN interfaces by configuring each port with unique VLAN ID numbers.

Note

For the TN-4900 Series, when the Connection Type is set to Dynamic IP for an interface, the interface's information including the IP and the file name/file server (Option 66/67) can be checked through the CLI interface.

Network Interfaces List

Network Interfaces									
LAN	WAN	Bridge	MTU Configuration	Secondary IP					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Status	VLAN ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask	Virtual MAC	Directed Broadcast	Source IP Overwrite
<input type="checkbox"/>	 LAN	Enabled	1	0	192.168.127.254	255.255.255.0	--	Disabled	Disabled
<input type="checkbox"/>	 lan2	Enabled	3		192.168.126.1	255.255.255.0	--	Disabled	Disabled
Max. 16									

UI Setting

Description

Name	Shows the name of the interface.
Status	Shows the status of the interface.
VLAN ID	Shows the VLAN ID used for the interface.
Alias	Shows the alias for the interface.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the interface.
Netmask	Shows the subnet mask of the interface.
Virtual MAC	Shows the virtual MAC address of the interface.
Directed Broadcast	Shows whether directed broadcast is enabled for the interface.
Source IP Overwrite	Shows whether source IP overwrite is enabled for the interface.

LAN - Create LAN Interface Entry

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - LAN

Clicking the **Add** (+) icon on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - LAN** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create new LAN interface entries for your device. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new interface.

Limitations

You can create up to 16 LAN interfaces by configuring each port with unique VLAN ID numbers.

Note

The VLAN ID of the first LAN interface configured will be set as the management VLAN ID.

Create LAN Interface Entry

Name *
 0 / 12

VLAN Interface *
Enabled ▼

VLAN ID *
 1 - 4094

Alias
 0 / 31

Proxy ARP
Disabled ▼

Connection Type *
Static IP ▼

Directed Broadcast *
Disabled ▼

Source IP Overwrite
Disabled ▼

IP Address *


Netmask *
24 (255.255.255.0) ▼

Virtual MAC
 00:00:00:00:00:00

CANCEL


CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the interface.	1 to 12 characters	N/A
VLAN Interface	Enable or disable the VLAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
VLAN ID	Specify the VLAN ID.	1 to 4094	N/A
Alias	Specify an alias for the VLAN interface.	1 to 31 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Proxy ARP	Enable or disable proxy ARP for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Connection Type	Select the connection type for the interface. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p> Note The LAN interfaces require static IP addresses; dynamic IPs are not supported.</p> </div>	Static IP / Dynamic IP	Static IP
Directed Broadcast	Enable or disable directed broadcast for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite	Enable or disable source IP overwrite for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address (Only when Connection Type set as Static IP)	Specify the IP address of the interface.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask (Only when Connection Type set as Static IP)	Specify the subnet mask of the interface.	Valid subnet mask	24 (255.255.255.0)
DHCP Client Option 66/67 (Only when Connection Type set as Dynamic IP)	Enable or disable DHCP Client Option 66/67 for the interface, if the device supports it.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address of the interface.	Valid MAC address	00:00:00:00:00:00

LAN - Edit LAN Interface Entry

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Network Interfaces - LAN](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - LAN** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing LAN interface entry for your device. Click **SAVE** to save your changes.

Edit LAN Interface Entry

Name *
 LAN 3 / 12

VLAN Interface *
 Enabled ▼

VLAN ID *
 1 1 - 4094

Alias 0 / 31

Directed Broadcast * Source IP Overwrite
 Disabled ▼ Disabled ▼

IP Address * Netmask *
 192.168.127.254 24 (255.255.255.0) ▼

Virtual MAC
 00:00:00:00:00:00


CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the interface.	1 to 12 characters	N/A
VLAN Interface	Enable or disable the VLAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
VLAN ID	Specify the VLAN ID.	1 to 4094	N/A
Alias	Specify an alias for the VLAN interface.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Proxy ARP	Enable or disable proxy ARP for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Connection Type	Select the connection type for the interface. Note The LAN interfaces require static IP addresses; dynamic IPs are not supported.	Static IP / Dynamic IP	Static IP
Directed Broadcast	Enable or disable directed broadcast for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite	Enable or disable source IP overwrite for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address (Only when Connection Type set as Static IP)	Specify the IP address of the interface.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask (Only when Connection Type set as Static IP)	Specify the subnet mask of the interface.	Valid subnet mask	24 (255.255.255.0)
DHCP Client Option 66/67 (Only when Connection Type set as Dynamic IP)	Enable or disable DHCP Client Option 66/67 for the interface, if the device supports it.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address of the interface.	Valid MAC address	00:00:00:00:00:00

Delete LAN Interface Entry

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - LAN

You can delete interfaces by using the checkboxes to select the interfaces you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.

Network Interfaces

LAN WAN Bridge MTU Configuration Secondary IP

Delete	Name	Status	VLAN ID	Alias	IP Address	Netmask	Virtual MAC	Directed Broadcast	Source IP Overwrite
<input type="checkbox"/>	LAN	Enabled	1	0	192.168.127.254	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	lan2	Enabled	3		192.168.126.1	255.255.255.0	-	Disabled	Disabled

Max. 16

WAN/WAN1

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - WAN/WAN1

This page lets you configure the settings for the WAN interfaces of your device. WAN interfaces are VLAN-based; when WAN is enabled for a VLAN ID, all ports associated with that VLAN ID will act as a single WAN interface.

Note

This tab may appear as WAN or WAN1 depending on your product model.

There are multiple types of WAN you can select for your **Connection Type**:

- Static IP
- Dynamic IP
- PPPoE

Static IP

If you select **Static IP** as your **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.

Network Interfaces

LAN	WAN	Bridge	MTU Configuration	Secondary IP
-----	-----	--------	-------------------	--------------

VLAN ID
 VLAN ID
 2

Connection
 Status: Enabled
 Connection Type: Static IP

Directed Broadcast
 Status: Disabled

Source IP Overwrite: Disabled

Address Information
 IP Address: 10.123.13.33
 Netmask *: 23 (255.255.254.0)
 Gateway: 10.123.12.1

PPTP Dialup
 Status: Disabled

IP Address: 0.0.0.0
 Username: _____ Password: _____
 0 / 30 0 / 30

MPPE Encryption: None

Virtual MAC
 Virtual MAC: 00:00:00:00:00:00

DNS Settings
 Primary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Tertiary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

APPLY

VLAN ID

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VLAN ID	Select a VLAN ID to use for the WAN interface.	VLAN ID	N/A

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP

Directed Broadcast

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable directed broadcast for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite	Enable or disable source IP overwrite for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Address Information

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the interface.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask for the interface.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Gateway	Specify the gateway address for the interface.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

PPTP Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable PPTP connection for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
User Name	Enter the username to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the password to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
MPPE Encryption	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None / Encrypt	None

Virtual MAC

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address for the interface.	Valid MAC address	00.00.00.00.00.00

DNS Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0

Dynamic IP

If you select **Dynamic IP** as your **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.

Note

Please note that settings and available options will vary depending on the product model.

Network Interfaces

LAN
WAN
Bridge
MTU Configuration
Secondary IP

VLAN ID
 VLAN ID
 3

Connection
 Status: Enabled
 Connection Type: Dynamic IP

Directed Broadcast
 Status: Disabled
 Source IP Overwrite: Disabled

PPTP Dialup
 Status: Disabled

IP Address: 0.0.0.0 Username: Password:

MPPE Encryption: None

DHCP Client Option 66/67
 Status: Disabled

Virtual MAC
 Virtual MAC: 00:00:00:00:00:00

DNS Settings
 Primary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0 Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0 Tertiary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

APPLY

VLAN ID

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VLAN ID	Select a VLAN ID to use for the WAN interface.	VLAN ID	N/A

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP

Directed Broadcast

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable directed broadcast for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite	Enable or disable source IP overwrite for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

PPTP Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable PPTP connection for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
User Name	Enter the username to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the password to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
MPPE Encryption	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None / Encrypt	None

DHCP Client Option 66/67

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable DHCP client option 66/67.	Enabled/Disabled	Disabled

Virtual MAC

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address for the interface.	Valid MAC address	00.00.00.00.00.00

DNS Settings

Note

When using Dynamic IP, you can manually configure DNS servers here. Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers coming from the DHCP server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0

PPPoE

If you select **PPPoE** as your **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.

Network Interfaces

LAN	WAN	Bridge	MTU Configuration	Secondary IP
-----	-----	--------	-------------------	--------------

VLAN ID
 VLAN ID
 2

Connection
 Status: Enabled
 Connection Type: PPPoE

Directed Broadcast
 Enabled / Disabled

Source IP Overwrite: Disabled

PPPoE Dialup
 Username * (0/30) Password * (0/30) Host Name (0/30)

Virtual MAC
 Virtual MAC
 00:00:00:00:00:00

DNS Settings
 Primary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Tertiary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

APPLY

VLAN ID

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VLAN ID	Select a VLAN ID to use for the WAN interface.	VLAN ID	N/A

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP

Directed Broadcast

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable directed broadcast for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Source IP Overwrite	Enable or disable source IP overwrite for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

PPPoE Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
User Name	Specify the username used to connect to the PPPoE service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password used to connect to the PPPoE service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Host Name	Specify the hostname of the PPPoE server.	1 to 30 characters	N/A

Virtual MAC

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address for the interface.	Valid MAC address	00.00.00.00.00.00

DNS Settings

Note

When using PPPoE, you can manually configure DNS servers here. Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers coming from the PPPoE server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0

WAN2/DMZ

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - WAN2/DMZ

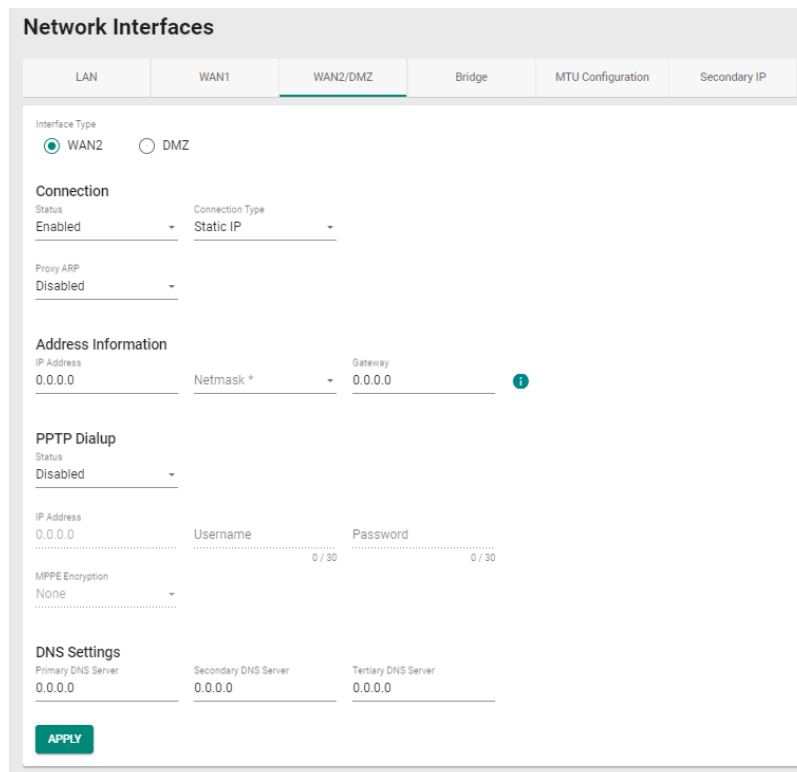
This page lets you configure the settings for the WAN2 or DMZ interfaces of your device. WAN interfaces are VLAN-based; when WAN is enabled for a VLAN ID, all ports associated with that VLAN ID will act as a single WAN interface.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

Static IP

If you select **WAN2** as the **Interface Type** and **Static IP** for the **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.



The screenshot shows the 'Network Interfaces' configuration page. The 'WAN2/DMZ' tab is selected. Under 'Interface Type', 'WAN2' is selected. Under 'Connection', 'Status' is 'Enabled' and 'Connection Type' is 'Static IP'. Under 'Address Information', 'IP Address' is '0.0.0.0', 'Netmask' is '*', and 'Gateway' is '0.0.0.0'. Under 'PPTP Dialup', 'Status' is 'Disabled'. Under 'MPPE Encryption', it is 'None'. Under 'DNS Settings', 'Primary DNS Server', 'Secondary DNS Server', and 'Tertiary DNS Server' are all '0.0.0.0'. An 'APPLY' button is at the bottom left.

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP
Proxy ARP	Enable or disable the Proxy ARP.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Address Information

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the interface.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask for the interface.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Gateway	Specify the gateway address for the interface.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

PPTP Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable PPTP connection for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
User Name	Enter the username to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the password to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
MPPE Encryption	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None / Encrypt	None

Virtual MAC

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Virtual MAC	Specify the virtual MAC address for the interface.	Valid MAC address	00.00.00.00.00.00

DNS Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0

Dynamic IP

If you select **WAN2** as the **Interface Type** and **Dynamic IP** for the **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.

Network Interfaces

LAN
WAN1
WAN2/DMZ
Bridge
MTU Configuration
Secondary IP

Interface Type
 WAN2 DMZ

Connection
 Status: Enabled
 Connection Type: Dynamic IP

Proxy ARP
 Disabled

PPTP Dialup
 Status: Disabled

IP Address: 0.0.0.0
 Username: _____ Password: _____
0 / 30 0 / 30

MPPE Encryption
 None

DHCP Client Option 66/67
 Status: Disabled

DNS Settings
 Primary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Secondary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0
 Tertiary DNS Server: 0.0.0.0

APPLY

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP
Proxy ARP	Enable or disable the Proxy ARP.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

PPTP Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable PPTP connection for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify the PPTP service IP address.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
User Name	Enter the username to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Password	Enter the password to use for dialing in to the PPTP service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
MPPE Encryption	Enable or disable MPPE encryption.	None / Encrypt	None

DHCP Client Option 66/67

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable DHCP client option 66/67.	Enabled/Disabled	Disabled

DNS Settings

Note

When using Dynamic IP, you can manually configure DNS servers here. Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers coming from the DHCP server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0

PPPoE

If you select **WAN2** as the **Interface Type** and **PPPoE** for the **Connection Type**, these settings will appear.

Network Interfaces

LAN
WAN1
WAN2/DMZ
Bridge
MTU Configuration
Secondary IP

Interface Type
 WAN2 DMZ

Connection
 Status: Enabled
 Connection Type: PPPoE

Proxy ARP
 Disabled

PPPoE Dialup

Username * Password * Host Name

0 / 30 0 / 30 0 / 30

DNS Settings

Primary DNS Server: Secondary DNS Server: Tertiary DNS Server:

0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

APPLY

Connection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the WAN interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Connection Type	Specify the connection type to use for the connection.	Static IP / Dynamic IP / PPPoE	Dynamic IP

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Proxy ARP	Enable or disable the Proxy ARP.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
------------------	----------------------------------	--------------------	----------

PPPoE Dialup

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

User Name	Specify the username used to connect to the PPPoE service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
------------------	--	--------------------	-----

Password	Specify the password used to connect to the PPPoE service.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
-----------------	--	--------------------	-----

Host Name	Specify the hostname of the PPPoE server.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
------------------	---	--------------------	-----

DNS Settings

Note

When using PPPoE, you can manually configure DNS servers here. Manually configured DNS servers will have a higher priority than DNS servers coming from the PPPoE server.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Primary DNS Server	Specify the primary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
---------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------	---------

Secondary DNS Server	Specify the secondary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
-----------------------------	---------------------------------------	------------	---------

Tertiary DNS Server	Specify the tertiary DNS IP address.	IP Address	0.0.0.0
----------------------------	--------------------------------------	------------	---------

DMZ

If you select **DMZ** as the **Interface Type**, these settings will appear.

Network Interfaces

LAN | WAN1 | **WAN2/DMZ** | Bridge | MTU Configuration | Secondary IP

Interface Type
 WAN2 DMZ

Address Information
 IP Address: 0.0.0.0 | Netmask *

APPLY **DMZ Setup Wizard**

Address Information

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the interface.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask for the interface.	Valid subnet mask	N/A

DMZ Setup Wizard

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - WAN2/DMZ

Clicking the **DMZ Setup Wizard** button on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - WAN2/DMZ** page will start a wizard to help you configure security policies for the DMZ.

Step 1: Select Mode

Select between basic or advanced configuration mode.

DMZ Setup Wizard

1 Select Mode | 2 Enable DoS & IPS Setting | 3 Create Firewall Policy

Configuration Mode

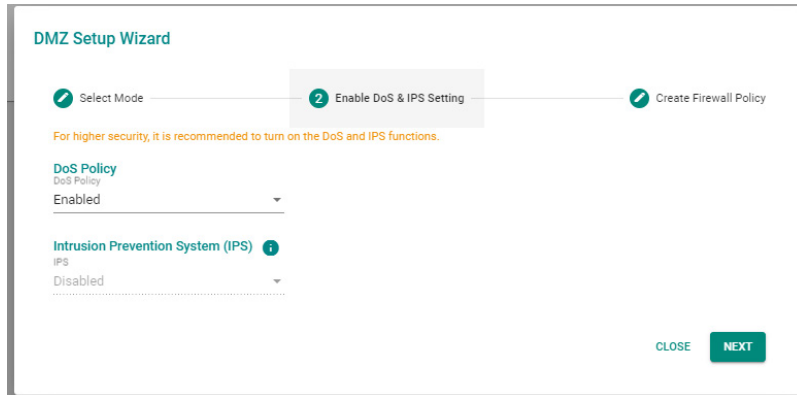
Basic
 This mode will guide users in establishing the default firewall settings to achieve network traffic management for DMZ applications.

Advanced
 In addition to establishing default firewall settings, this mode provides users with advanced options (destination address, service, protocol, port) to create whitelist settings, enabling network traffic management for DMZ applications.

CLOSE **NEXT**

Step 2: Enable DoS & IPS Setting

Select whether to enable DoS protection and IPS functionality.

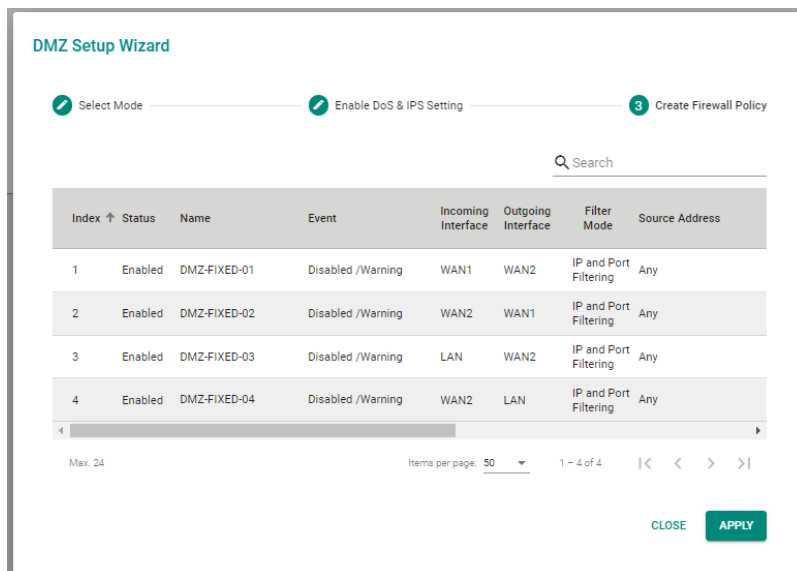


Step 3: Create Firewall Policy

Basic Mode

In basic mode, four policies are preconfigured for you so you don't need to set them manually.

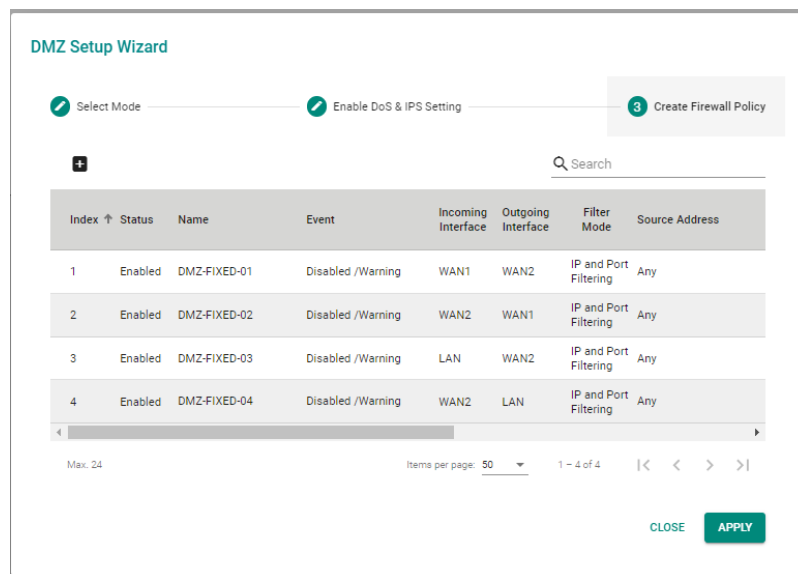
- WAN1 to DMZ (Allow)
- DMZ to WAN1 (Allow)
- LAN to DMZ (Allow)
- DMZ to LAN (Deny)



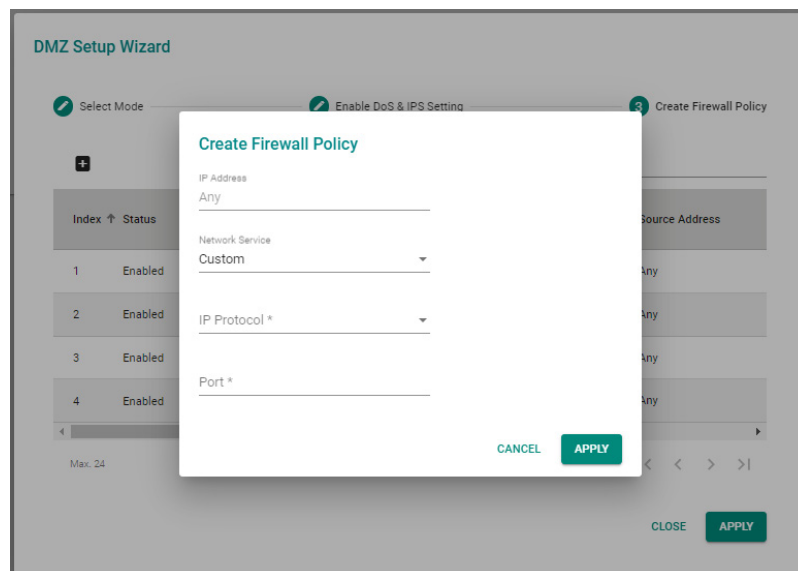
Advanced Mode

In advanced mode, you will need to set up the correct destination address, service, protocol, and port whitelist policies according to each policy's requirements.

- WAN1 to DMZ (Deny)
- DMZ to WAN1 (Allow)
- LAN to DMZ (Deny)
- DMZ to LAN (Deny)

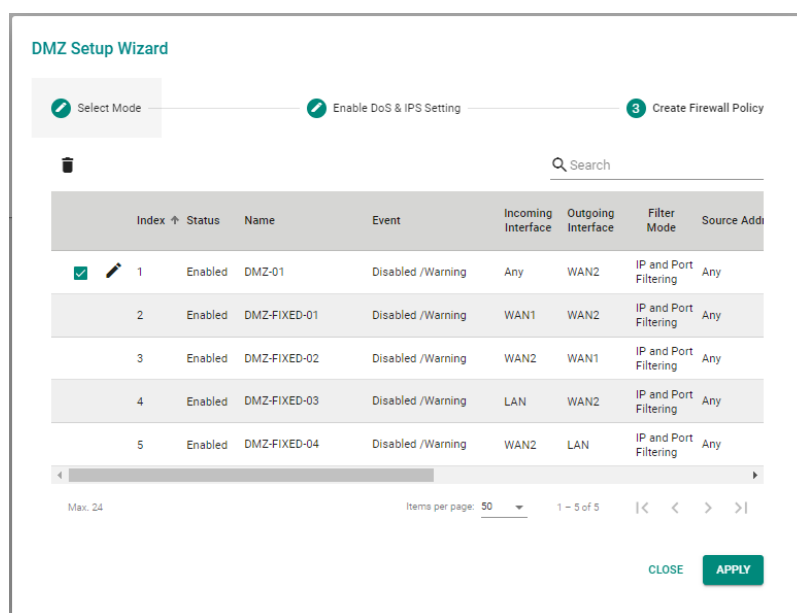


You can also click the **Add (+)** button to add additional firewall policies.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address	Specify the IP address.	Valid IP address	Any
Network Service	Specify the network service.	Custom / TELNET / SSH / SMTP / FTP / HTTP / HTTPS / DNS	Custom
IP Protocol	Specify the IP protocol.	TCP / UDP / TCP and UDP	N/A
Port	Specify the port number.	Valid port number	N/A

To delete a firewall policy, select the checkbox next to it and click the **Delete** (🗑️) button.



After confirming your changes, click the **APPLY** button to save your changes and finish the setup wizard.

Bridge

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Bridge

This page lets you configure a bridge for your device.

You can set up these kinds of bridges:

- Port-based
- Zone-based

Port-Based

If you select **Port-Based** as your **Bridge Type**, these settings will appear. Port-based bridges allow the device's firewall to filter traffic moving between bridge member ports.

Bridge IP Configuration

Bridge Type

Port-Based Zone-Based

Name *
BRG_LAN
7 / 12

Status *
Enabled i

IP Address *
192.168.120.254

Subnet Mask *
24 (255.255.255.0)

Bridge Member

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Bridge Type	Select which bridge type you want to use.	Port-Based / Zone-Based	N/A
Name	Specify a name for the bridge.	1 to 12 characters	BRG_LAN
Status	Enable or disable the bridge.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify an IP address for the bridge.	Valid IP address	192.168.126.254
Subnet Mask	Specify a subnet mask for the bridge.	Valid subnet mask	24(255.255.255.0)
Bridge Member	Select which ports will be members of the bridge.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A

Zone-Based

If you select **Zone-Based** as your **Bridge Type**, these settings will appear. Zone-based bridges allow you to create zones based on VLANs. The device's firewall can filter traffic moving between different zones.

🔔 Limitations

You can create up to 4 different bridge zones.

Bridge IP Configuration

Bridge Type

Port-Based Zone-Based

Name *
ZONE_BRG
8 / 12

Status *
Disabled ⓘ

IP Address * 0.0.0.0 Subnet Mask * 0 (0.0.0.0) ▼

Zone 1

Name Bridge Member ▼
0 / 12

Zone 2

Name Bridge Member ▼
0 / 12

Zone 3

Name Bridge Member ▼
0 / 12

Zone 4

Name Bridge Member ▼
0 / 12

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Bridge Type	Select which bridge type you want to use.	Port-Based / Zone-Based	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the bridge.	1 to 12 characters	ZONE_BRG
Status	Enable or disable the bridge.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IP Address	Specify an IP address for the bridge.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask	Specify a subnet mask for the bridge.	Valid subnet mask	0 (0.0.0.0)

Each zone has the following settings:

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the bridge zone.	1 to 12 characters	N/A
Bridge Member	Select which VLAN will determine the members of this zone.	Drop-down list of VLANs	N/A

MTU Configuration

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Network Interfaces - MTU](#)

This page lets you configure the MTU settings for your interfaces.

Network Interfaces					
	LAN	WAN	Bridge	MTU Configuration	Secondary IP
Name					
WAN		1500		--	
LAN		1500		--	
lan2		1500		--	
Max. 16					

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the interface.
MTU	Shows the MTU size used for the interface.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

PRP Traffic	Shows the PRP traffic status for the interface.
--------------------	---

MTU Configuration - Edit MTU Entry

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - MTU Configuration

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an interface on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - MTU Configuration** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the MTU settings for an interface. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit MTU Entry

Name
WAN
.....

MTU *
1500

68 - 1578

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Name	Shows the name of of this interface. This setting cannot be changed here.	N/A	Name of interface
-------------	---	-----	-------------------

MTU	Specify the MTU size to use for the interface.	68 to 1578	1500
------------	--	------------	------

Note

Jumbo Frames are not currently supported.

Secondary IP

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP

This page lets you create secondary IPs for your interfaces. The Layer 3 interface can act as a secondary IP for a network interface, allowing a single interface to communicate with multiple networks, increasing network flexibility and availability.

Secondary IP - Create Secondary IP Entry

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a secondary IP for an interface. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new secondary IP.

Limitations

You can create up to 640 secondary IPs.

Create Secondary IP Entry

Interface *

IP Address * Netmask *

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Select which interface the secondary IP is for.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary interface.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the secondary interface.	Valid netmask	N/A

Secondary IP - Edit Secondary IP Entry

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing secondary IP entry. Click **SAVE** to save your changes.

Edit Secondary IP Entry

Interface *
LAN ▼

IP Address * Netmask *
192.168.100.100 24 (255.255.255.0) ▼

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Select which interface the secondary IP is for.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary interface.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the secondary interface.	Valid netmask	N/A

Delete Secondary IP

Menu Path: [Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Secondary IP](#)

You can delete secondary IP entries by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (■) icon.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Interface	VLAN ID	IP Address	Netmask	Type
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	LAN	1	192.168.100.100	255.255.255.0	Manual

Max. 640 Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

Virtual Interface

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Network Interfaces - Virtual Interface](#)

This page lets you create virtual interfaces for your device.

Loopback Interface List

Network Interfaces

LAN WAN Bridge MTU Configuration Secondary IP Virtual Interface

Loopback Interface

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	Status	ID	IP Address	Netmask
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	test	Disabled	1	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.254

Max. 10 Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the loopback interface.
Status	Shows whether the loopback interface is enabled or disabled.
ID	Specify the ID of the loopback interface.
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the loopback interface.
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the loopback interface.

Create Loopback Interface Entry

Menu Path: [Network Configuration](#) > [Network Interfaces - Virtual Interface - Loopback Interface](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Virtual Interface - Loopback Interface** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a loopback interface.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new interface.

Create Loopback Interface Entry

Name *
0 / 12

Status * ▼

ID * i
1 - 64

IP Address * Netmask * ▼

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify the name of the loopback interface.	1 to 12 characters	N/A
Status	Enable or disable the loopback interface.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
ID	Specify the ID for the loopback interface.	1 to 64	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the secondary interface.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Specify the subnet mask of the secondary interface.	Valid subnet mask	N/A

Delete Loopback Interface

Menu Path: Network Configuration > Network Interfaces - Virtual Interface - Loopback Interface

You can delete an interface by using the checkboxes to select the interfaces you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.

Network Interfaces						
LAN	WAN	Bridge	MTU Configuration	Secondary IP	Virtual Interface	
Loopback Interface						
<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>						
<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>						
Name	Status	ID	IP Address	Netmask		
test	Disabled	1	192.168.1.1	255.255.255.254		

Redundancy

Menu Path: Redundancy

The Redundancy settings area lets you configure redundancy settings to help you ensure network availability.

This settings area includes these sections:

- Layer 2 Redundancy
- Layer 3 Redundancy
- WAN Redundancy

Redundancy - User Privileges

Privileges to Redundancy settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Redundancy			
Spanning Tree	R/W	R/W	R
Turbo Ring V2	R/W	R/W	R
Turbo Chain	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 Redundancy			
VRRP	R/W	R/W	R
WAN Redundancy	R/W	R/W	R

Layer 2 Redundancy

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#)

This section lets you manage various Layer 2 redundancy features for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [Spanning Tree](#)
- [Turbo Ring V2](#)
- [Turbo Chain](#)

Spanning Tree

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [Spanning Tree](#)

This page lets you configure Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) settings for redundancy.

This page includes these tabs:

- [General](#)
- [Status](#)

Note

Spanning Tree can only run on the Management VLAN.

Spanning Tree - General

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [Spanning Tree - General](#)

This page lets you configure spanning tree settings for your device.

Spanning Tree Settings

Spanning Tree

General | Status

Status: Enabled

Bridge Priority: 32768 | Forward Delay Time: 15 | Hello Time: 2 | Max Age: 20

APPLY

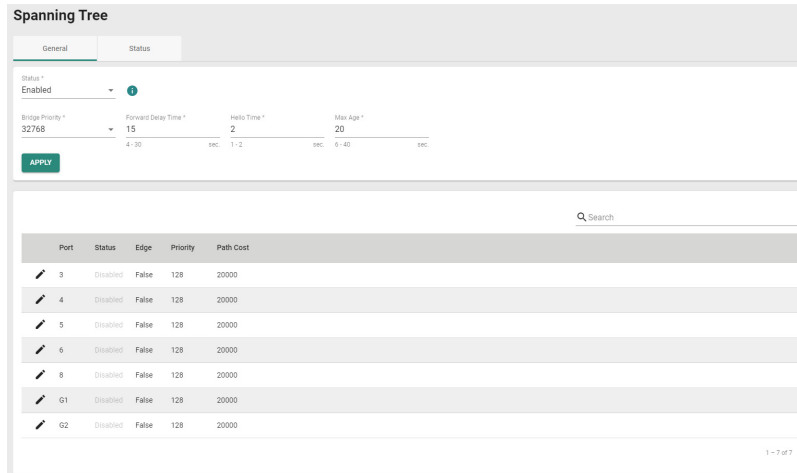
Port	Status	Edge	Priority	Path Cost
3	Disabled	False	128	20000
4	Disabled	False	128	20000
5	Disabled	False	128	20000
6	Disabled	False	128	20000
9	Disabled	False	128	20000
G1	Disabled	False	128	20000
G2	Disabled	False	128	20000

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable Spanning Tree Protocol for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Bridge Priority	Specify the bridge priority. Lower numbers represent higher priority. A device with a higher bridge priority has a greater chance of being established as the root of the spanning tree topology.	0 to 61440, in multiples of 4096	32768
Forward Delay Time	Specify the forwarding delay time. This is the amount of time this device will wait before checking to see if it should change to a different state.	4 to 30 seconds	15
Hello Time	Specify the interval at which the device, if it is currently the root of the spanning tree topology, will send out periodic "Hello" messages to other devices on the network to check if the topology is healthy.	1 to 2 seconds	2
Max Age	Specify the maximum age duration to wait for a "Hello" message from the root of the spanning tree topology before the device will reconfigure itself as root. If two or more devices on the network are recognized as a root, the devices will negotiate to determine which will act as the new root.	6 to 40 seconds	20

Spanning Tree List

Note

We recommend that you disable Spanning Tree Protocol on a port if it is connected to a device (such as a PLC or RTU) instead of network equipment, as this may cause unnecessary negotiation.



UI Setting

Description

- Port** Shows the port number.
- Status** Shows the status of the port as a node in the spanning tree topology.
- Edge** Shows whether the port is an edge port or not.
Force Edge: The port is fixed as an edge port and will always be in the forwarding state.
False: The port is not an edge port.
- Priority** Shows the priority of the port. Lower numbers indicate higher priority.
- Path Cost** Shows the path cost for the port. Higher path costs indicate that this port is less suitable as a node for the spanning tree topology.
 If set to 0, the path cost will be automatically calculated based on different port speeds.

Spanning Tree - Edit Port Settings

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an port on the **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you configure the spanning tree settings for a port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the port as a node in the spanning tree topology.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Edge	Specify whether the port is an edge port or not. Force Edge: The port is fixed as an edge port and will always be in the forwarding state. False: The port is not an edge port.	Force Edge / False	False
Priority	Specify the priority of the port. Lower numbers indicate higher priority.	0 to 240, in multiples of 16	128
Path Cost	Specify the path cost for the port. Higher path costs indicate that this port is less suitable as a node for the spanning tree topology. If set to 0, the path cost will be automatically calculated based on different port speeds.	1 to 200000000	20000

Note

The default value may vary depending on the maximum speed supported by the port.

Spanning Tree - Status

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [Spanning Tree - Status](#)

This page lets you see the current spanning tree status of your device and its ports.

Root Information

Port	Status	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Port State
3	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
4	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
5	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
6	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
8	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
G1	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
G2	Disabled	False	128	20000	—

UI Setting Description

Root State Shows whether the device is currently acting as the root of the spanning tree topology.

Spanning Tree Port List

Port	Status	Edge	Priority	Path Cost	Port State
3	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
4	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
5	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
6	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
8	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
G1	Disabled	False	128	20000	—
G2	Disabled	False	128	20000	—

UI Setting Description

Port Shows the port number.

Enable Shows whether Spanning Tree Protocol is enabled for the port.

UI Setting

Description

Edge

Shows whether the port is an edge port or not.

Force Edge: The port is fixed as an edge port and will always be in the forwarding state.

True: The port is currently designated as an edge port.

False: The port is not an edge port.

Priority

Shows the priority of the port. Lower numbers indicate higher priority.

Path Cost

Shows the path cost for the port. Higher path costs indicate that this port is less suitable as a node for the spanning tree topology.

If set to 0, the path cost will be automatically calculated based on different port speeds.

Port State

Shows the current spanning tree status of the port.

Forwarding: Indicates the port is allowing transmissions normally.

Blocking: Indicates the port is blocking transmissions.

Turbo Ring V2

This page lets you manage the Turbo Ring V2 redundancy feature for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

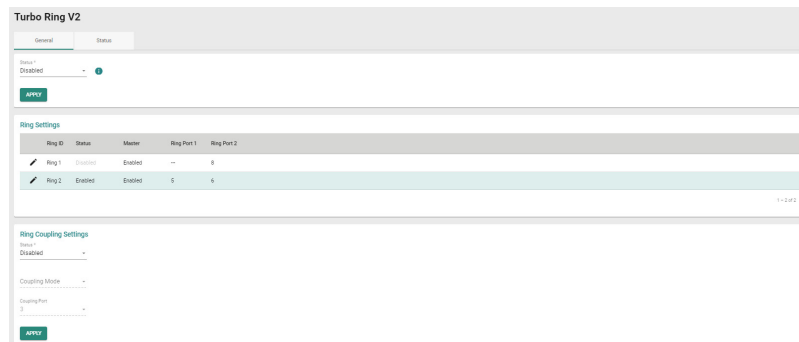
- General
- Status

Turbo Ring V2 - General

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 2 Redundancy](#) > [Turbo Ring V2 - General](#)

This page lets you configure the Turbo Ring settings for your device.

Turbo Ring Settings



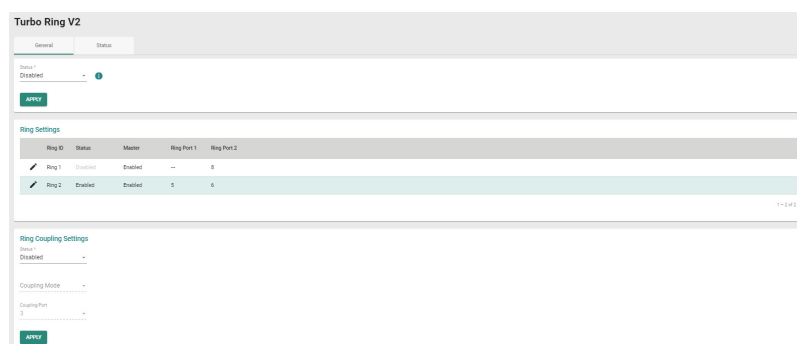
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Status	Enable or disable Turbo Ring V2 for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
---------------	---	--------------------	----------

Ring Settings

Note

To set up a Dual-Ring architecture, you must enable both Ring 1 and Ring 2.



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Ring ID	Shows the ring ID.
Status	Shows the status of the ring.
Master	Shows whether this device is designated as the master for the ring.
Ring Port 1	Shows which port will act as ring port 1. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the primary ring connection.
Ring Port 2	Shows which port will act as ring port 2. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the backup ring connection, and will be blocked normally.

Turbo Ring V2 - Ring Settings

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - General

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a ring on the **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - General** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you adjust your device's settings for the ring. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Ring 1 Settings

Status *
Enabled ▾

Master *
Enabled ▾

Ring Port 1 *
3 ▾

Ring Port 2 *
8 ▾

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable Turbo Ring V2 for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Master	Enable or disable whether this device will be designated as the master for the ring.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Ring Port 1	Specify which port will act as ring port 1. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the primary ring connection.	Select a port from the drop-down menu	7
Ring Port 2	Specify which port will act as ring port 2. If this device is designated as the master for the ring, this will be the backup ring connection, and will be blocked normally.	Select a port from the drop-down menu	8

Ring Coupling Settings

Ring Coupling Settings

Status *

Enabled

Coupling Mode *

Dual Homing

Primary Port *

3

Backup Port *

4

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable ring coupling for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Coupling Mode (if Status is Enabled)	Specify the coupling mode for the device. Dual Homing: This device will handle both the primary path and backup path for ring coupling. Backup Path: This device only handles the backup path for ring coupling; the primary path will be handled by another device. Primary Path: This device only handles the primary path for ring coupling; the backup path will be handled by another device.	Dual Homing / Backup Path / Primary Path	N/A
Primary Port (if Coupling Mode is Dual Homing)	Specify the port that connects to the primary path for ring coupling.	Select a port from the drop-down menu	3
Backup Port (if Coupling Mode is Dual Homing)	Specify the port that connects to the backup path for ring coupling.	Select a port from the drop-down menu	N/A
Coupling Port (if Coupling Mode is Primary Path or Backup Path)	Specify the port that connects to primary path or backup path for ring coupling.	Select a port from the drop-down menu	3

Turbo Ring V2 - Status

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2 - Status

This page lets you see the current status of your rings and ring couplings.

Ring Status

Turbo Ring V2

General | **Status**

Ring Status

Refresh Search

Ring ID	Master ID	Status	Master	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2
---------	-----------	--------	--------	-------------	-------------

0 of 0

Ring Coupling Status

Refresh Search

Coupling Mode	Primary Port	Backup Port
---------------	--------------	-------------

0 of 0

UI Setting	Description
Ring ID	Shows the ID number of the ring.
Master ID	Shows the MAC address of the ring master.
Status	Shows the current status of the ring. Healthy: The ring and its related ports are working properly. Break: One or more rings are broken.
Master	Shows whether this device is acting as a master or slave in the ring.
Ring Port 1	Shows which port is acting as the first ring port.
Ring Port 2	Shows which port is acting as the second ring port.

Ring Coupling Status

Turbo Ring V2

General | **Status**

Ring Status

🔄 Search

Ring ID	Master ID	Status	Master	Ring Port 1	Ring Port 2
---------	-----------	--------	--------	-------------	-------------

0 of 0

Ring Coupling Status

🔄 Search

Coupling Mode	Primary Port	Backup Port
---------------	--------------	-------------

0 of 0

UI Setting	Description
Coupling Mode	Shows the mode being used for the ring coupling.
Primary Port	Shows the primary port for the ring coupling.
Backup Port	Shows the backup port for the ring coupling.

Turbo Chain

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Chain

This page lets you configure Turbo Chain settings for redundancy.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

Turbo Chain - Settings

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Chain - Settings

This section lets you enable and configure Turbo Chain for your device.

Status *
Disabled ▼

Chain Role *
Member ▼

Member Port 1 *
G1 ▼

Member Port 2 *
G2 ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Turbo Chain	Enable or disable Turbo Chain.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Chain Role	Select the chain role of the device.	Head / Member / Tail	Member
Member Port 1	Select which port will be Member Port 1.	Drop-down menu of ports	1/9
Member Port 2	Select which port will be Member Port 2.	Drop-down menu of ports	1/10

Turbo Chain - Status

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Chain - Status

This page lets you view the current status of Turbo Chain for your device.

Chain Information ↻

Status	Chain Role
Disabled	Member
Member 1 Port Status	Member 2 Port Status
Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
Turbo Chain	Shows the status of Turbo Chain.
Chain Role	Shows the chain role for your device.
Member Port 1 Status	Shows the status of Member Port 1.

UI Setting	Description
Member Port 2 Status	Shows the status of Member Port 2.

Layer 3 Redundancy

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy

This section lets you configure the Layer 3 redundancy features of your device.

This section includes these pages:

- VRRP

VRRP

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP

This page lets you configure the VRRP settings for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

VRRP - Settings

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings

This page lets you configure the VRRP settings for your device.

Note

Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) helps solve some problems with static configurations. VRRP enables a group of routers to form a single virtual router with a virtual IP address. The LAN clients can then be configured with the virtual router's virtual IP address as their default gateway. This virtual router consisting of a group of routers is also known as a VRRP group.

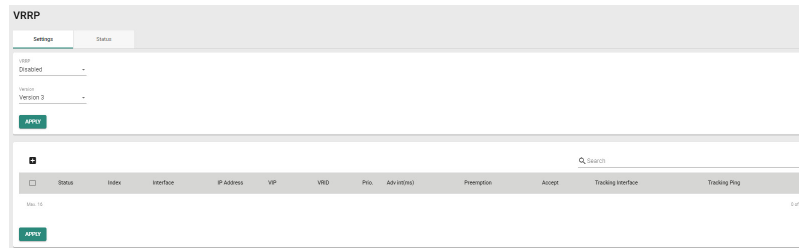
Limitations

You can create up to 16 virtual routers.

VRRP Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VRRP	Enable or disable VRRP for the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Version	Select the VRRP version to use.	Version 2 / Version 3	Version 3
Event	Select the event for VRRP.	No Event / Link Status / DI Status	No Event
On - VRRP Priority (If Event is Link Status or DI Status)	Specify the VRRP Priority when the event is On. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If this is 0, the device will use the priority assigned to each VRRP interface.</p> </div>	0 to 254	0
Off - VRRP Priority (If Event is Link Status or DI Status)	Specify the VRRP Priority when the event is Off. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If this is 0, the device will use the priority assigned to each VRRP interface.</p> </div>	0 to 254	0
Monitored Port (If Event is Link Status)	Select the port to monitor.	Drop-down list of ports	1

VRRP List



UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows the status of the VRRP interface.
Index	Shows the index number used to identify the VRRP interface.
Interface	Shows which network interface is used for the VRRP interface.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the VRRP interface.
VIP	Shows the virtual router IP address for the VRRP interface.
VRID	Shows the virtual router ID for the VRRP interface, which is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.
Prio.	Shows the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest.
Adv int(ms)	Shows the advertisement interval for the VRRP interface in milliseconds.
Preemption	Shows the preemption status of the VRRP interface.
Accept	Shows whether Accept Mode is enabled for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.
Tracking Interface	Shows whether Native Interface Tracking is enabled for the VRRP interface.
Tracking Ping	Shows the tracking ping status of the VRRP interface.

VRRP - Create Virtual Router

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new virtual router for your device. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 16 virtual routers.

Create Virtual Router

VRRP Interface Setting

Status

Disabled

Interface

WAN

Virtual IP *

Virtual Router ID *

Priority *

1

100

1 - 255

1 - 254

Accept Mode

Enabled

Preemption

Enabled

Preempt Delay *

120

0 - 300

sec.

Advertisement Interval *

100

10 - 30000

millisec.

VRRP Tracking

Native Interface Tracking

Disabled

Object Ping Tracking

Target IP

Leave empty or set to 0.0.0.0 to disable

Interval *

Timeout *

1

3

1 - 100

sec.

1 - 100

sec.

Success Count *

Failure Count *

3

3




1 - 100

1 - 100

CANCEL

CREATE


VRRP Interface Setting Entry

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the VRRP interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Interface	Specify which network interface to use for the VRRP interface.	Drop-down list of interfaces	
Virtual IP	Specify the virtual router IP address for the VRRP interface. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Devices in the same VRRP group must be in the same subnet.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	N/A
Virtual Router ID	Specify the virtual router ID to use for the VRRP interface. The virtual router ID is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Devices that operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each interface supports one virtual router ID.</p> </div>	1-255	1
Priority	Specify the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>If multiple devices have the same priority, the device with the highest IP address will have priority.</p> </div>	1-254	100
Accept Mode	Enable or disable Accept Mode for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Preemption	Enable or disable preemption for the VRRP interface. When enabled, preemption will decide if the master will retake authority or not after being unavailable.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Preempt Delay (if Preemption is Enabled)	Specify the preemption delay in seconds to use for the VRRP interface. The preempt delay is the amount of time the master will wait before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master from acting before the network connection is ready.	0-300 sec	120
Advertisement Interval	Specify the advertisement interval in milliseconds for the VRRP interface. This determines the interval for the master sending packets to all slave devices to inform them who the master device is.	10-30000 ms	100

VRRP Tracking


Note

If either Native Interface Tracking or Object Ping Tracking determines a connection failure, the VRRP status will be switched to INIT mode.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Native Tracking Interface	Disable or specify which interface to use for Native Interface Tracking for the VRRP interface. When enabled, if all interfaces on the device are disconnected, it will be considered to be a disconnection.	Disabled / Drop-down list of interfaces	Disabled
Target IP	Specify the target IP to ping to verify if the connection to the destination is working. Leaving this field empty or entering 0.0.0.0 will disable object ping tracking for the VRRP interface. <div><h3> Note</h3><p>Moxa devices will decide which interface/source IP to use for pinging the target IP based on the routing table.</p></div>	Valid IP address	N/A
Interval	Specify the interval in seconds the device will use for pinging the target IP.	1-100 sec	1
Timeout	Specify the timeout duration in seconds the device will wait for a response before timing out.	1-100 sec	3
Success Count	Specify the success count, which indicates how many responses the device must receive to consider the connection as working.	1-100	3
Failure Count	Specify the failure count, which indicates how many times the target IP fails to respond before the device considers the connection as not working.	1-100	3

VRRP - Edit Virtual Router

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 3 Redundancy](#) > [VRRP - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for a VRRP interface on the **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing virtual router. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Virtual Router

VRRP Interface Setting

Status
 Disabled

Interface
 WAN

Virtual IP *
 1.1.1.1

Virtual Router ID *
 1

Priority *
 100

Accept Mode
 Enabled

Preemption
 Enabled

Preempt Delay *
 120

Advertisement Interval *
 100

VRRP Tracking

Native Interface Tracking
 Disabled

Object Ping Tracking

Target IP
 Leave empty or set to 0.0.0.0 to disable

Interval *
 1

Timeout *
 3

Success Count *
 3




Failure Count *
 3

CANCEL

APPLY

VRRP Interface Setting Entry


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the VRRP interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Interface	Specify which network interface to use for the VRRP interface.	Drop-down list of interfaces	

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Virtual IP	Specify the virtual router IP address for the VRRP interface. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Devices in the same VRRP group must be in the same subnet.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	N/A
Virtual Router ID	Specify the virtual router ID to use for the VRRP interface. The virtual router ID is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Devices that operate as master/backup should have the same ID. Each interface supports one virtual router ID.</p> </div>	1-255	1
Priority	Specify the priority of the VRRP interface. Higher numbers indicate higher priority, with 254 being the highest. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>If multiple devices have the same priority, the device with the highest IP address will have priority.</p> </div>	1-254	100
Accept Mode	Enable or disable Accept Mode for the VRRP interface. When enabled, the virtual router designated as the master will allow others to access its own virtual IP address.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Preemption	Enable or disable preemption for the VRRP interface. When enabled, preemption will decide if the master will retake authority or not after being unavailable.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Preempt Delay (if Preemption is Enabled)	Specify the preemption delay in seconds to use for the VRRP interface. The preempt delay is the amount of time the master will wait before retaking authority back in order to prevent the master from acting before the network connection is ready.	0-300 sec	120
Advertisement Interval	Specify the advertisement interval in milliseconds for the VRRP interface. This determines the interval for the master sending packets to all slave devices to inform them who the master device is.	10-30000 ms	100

VRRP Tracking


Note

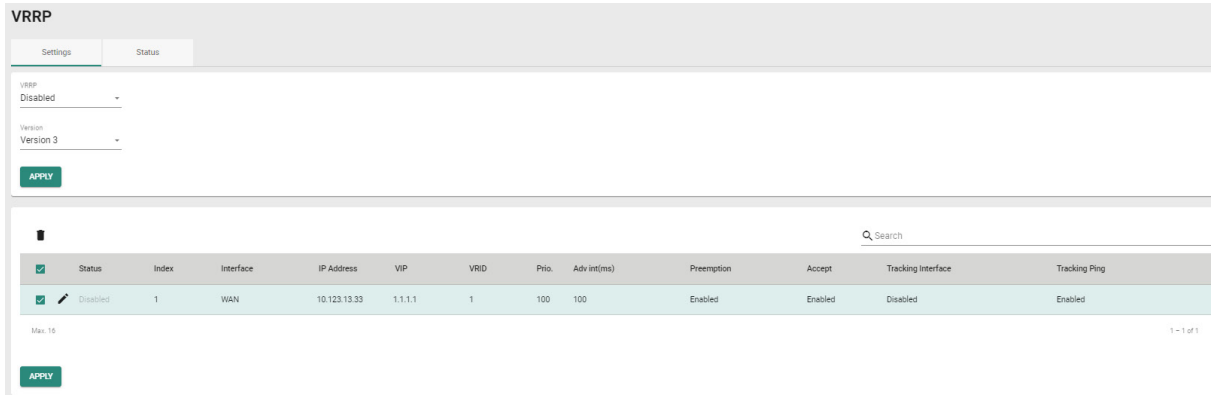
If either Native Interface Tracking or Object Ping Tracking determines a connection failure, the VRRP status will be switched to INIT mode.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Native Tracking Interface	Disable or specify which interface to use for Native Interface Tracking for the VRRP interface. When enabled, if all interfaces on the device are disconnected, it will be considered to be a disconnection.	Disabled / Drop-down list of interfaces	Disabled
Target IP	Specify the target IP to ping to verify if the connection to the destination is working. Leaving this field empty or entering 0.0.0.0 will disable object ping tracking for the VRRP interface. <div><h3> Note</h3><p>Moxa devices will decide which interface/source IP to use for pinging the target IP based on the routing table.</p></div>	Valid IP address	N/A
Interval	Specify the interval in seconds the device will use for pinging the target IP.	1-100 sec	1
Timeout	Specify the timeout duration in seconds the device will wait for a response before timing out.	1-100 sec	3
Success Count	Specify the success count, which indicates how many responses the device must receive to consider the connection as working.	1-100	3
Failure Count	Specify the failure count, which indicates how many times the target IP fails to respond before the device considers the connection as not working.	1-100	3

Delete Virtual Router

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 3 Redundancy](#) > [VRRP - Settings](#)

You can delete VRRP interfaces by using the checkboxes to select the interfaces you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



VRRP - Status

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP - Status

This page lets you see the status of your device's VRRP interfaces.



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Status	Shows the status of the VRRP interface.
---------------	---

Index	Shows the index number used to identify the VRRP interface.
--------------	---

Interface	Shows which network interface is used for the VRRP interface.
------------------	---

VRID	Shows the virtual router ID for the VRRP interface, which is used to assign the virtual router to a VRRP group.
-------------	---

State	Shows the state of the VRRP interface.
--------------	--

Init State: This is the initial state when a virtual router starts up.

Master State: The virtual router is acting as a master, and is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address and acting as the default gateway for the devices in the network.

Backup State: The virtual router is in the backup state, and waiting to take over the master role if the current master fails.

Master Address	Shows IP address of the current master for the VRRP interface.
-----------------------	--

WAN Redundancy

Menu Path: Redundancy > WAN Redundancy

This section lets you configure the WAN Redundancy features of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

Note

Please note that settings and available options will vary depending on the product model.

WAN Redundancy - Settings

Menu Path: Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > WAN Redundancy - Settings

This page lets you configure the WAN Redundancy settings for your device.

WAN Redundancy

Settings Status

WAN Redundancy Mode *
Disabled

WAN Switching Mode *
Failback

Ping Check
Disabled



Ping Interval * Ping Success Retry Times * Ping Failure Retry Times * Ping Timeout *

5 3 3 5

1 - 3600 sec. 1 - 10 times 1 - 10 times 1 - 10 sec.

APPLY

WAN Backup Priority

Priority	Interface	WAN Redundancy	Host IP Address
 1	Ethernet WAN 1	Enabled	0.0.0.0
 2	Ethernet WAN 2	Disabled	0.0.0.0

WAN Redundancy Mode *
Disabled

WAN Switching Mode *
Failback

Ping Check
Disabled

Ping Interval * 5
1 - 3600 sec.

Ping Success Retry Times * 3
1 - 10 times

Ping Failure Retry Times * 3
1 - 10 times

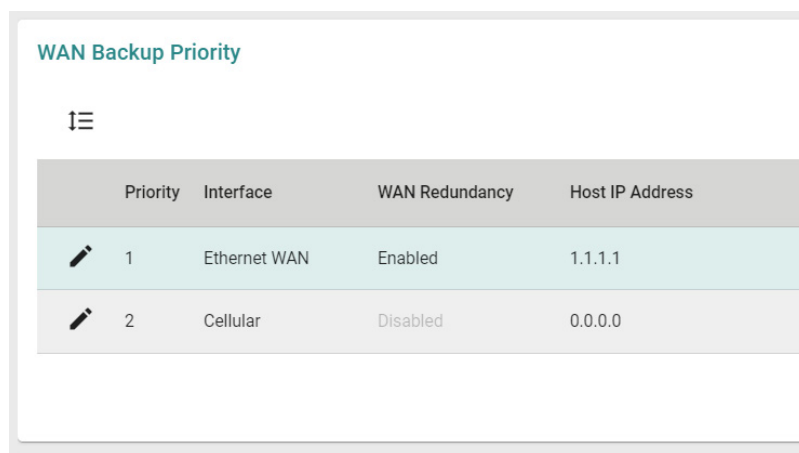
Ping Timeout * 5
1 - 10 sec.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
WAN Redundancy Mode	<p>Select the WAN Redundancy Mode.</p> <p>Disabled: Disable redundancy. If the connection on the WAN interface becomes unavailable, the connection will be lost.</p> <p>Backup: If the connection on the active WAN interface becomes unavailable, the system will automatically switch to the other WAN interface to recover the connection.</p>	Disabled / Backup	Disabled
WAN Switching Mode	<p>Select the WAN Switching Mode.</p> <p>Failover: The system will only switch to the backup WAN interface when the current WAN interface becomes unavailable.</p> <p>Failback: The system will switch to the backup WAN interface when the current WAN interface becomes unavailable. When the original higher priority WAN interface recovers, the system will switch back.</p>	Failover / Failback	Failback
Ping Check	Enable or disable ping checks to determine whether a connection is still alive.	Enabled/Disabled	Disabled
Ping Interval	Specify the interval in seconds at which the device will perform a connection alive check.	1 to 3600	5
Ping Failure Retry Times	Specify the number of times the device will ping the configured host IP through the active WAN interface. If the ping check consecutively fails for the specified number of retries, the device will consider the WAN interface unavailable and will switch to the backup WAN interface. The host IP is configured per WAN interface.	1 to 10	3
Ping Success Retry Times	Specify the number of times the device will ping the configured host IP through the higher priority WAN interface in Failback mode. If the ping check consecutively succeeds for the specified number of retries, the device will consider the WAN interface recovered and will switch back to that WAN interface. The host IP is configured per WAN interface.	1 to 10	3

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Ping Timeout	Specify the timeout duration in seconds the device will wait for a response before timing out.	1 to 10	5
---------------------	--	---------	---



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Priority	Shows the WAN Backup Priority.
Interface	Shows the interface of WAN Backup Priority.
WAN Redundancy	Shows the status of WAN Redundancy.
Host IP Address	Shows the Host IP Address.

WAN Redundancy - Edit WAN Backup Priority

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [WAN Redundancy](#) > [Settings](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Redundancy > WAN Redundancy > Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the WAN Redundancy settings for an interface. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Cellular Interface Settings

WAN Redundancy *

Disabled ▼ i

Host IP Address

0.0.0.0

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
WAN Redundancy	Enable or disable using WAN Redundancy for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Host IP Address	Specify the IP address for performing the connection alive check.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

WAN Redundancy - Status

Menu Path: [Redundancy](#) > [Layer 3 Redundancy](#) > [WAN Redundancy - Status](#)

This page lets you see the status of your device's WAN Redundancy.

WAN Redundancy

Settings **Status**

Priority	Interface	WAN Redundancy
● 1	Ethernet WAN	Enabled
● 2	Cellular (Disabled)	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
Light	Green: the WAN interface is in use. Gray: the WAN interface is not in use.
Priority	Shows the priority of WAN Redundancy.
Interface	Shows the interface for WAN Redundancy.
WAN Redundancy	Shows the status of WAN Redundancy.

Network Service

Menu Path: Network Service

The Network Service settings area lets you configure the main system settings for your device.

This settings area includes these sections:

- DHCP Server
- Dynamic DNS
- DNS Server

Network Service - User Privileges

Privileges to Network Service settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
DHCP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Dynamic DNS	R/W	R/W	R
DNS Server	R/W	R/W	R

DHCP Server

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server

This page lets you manage the DHCP server settings of your device.

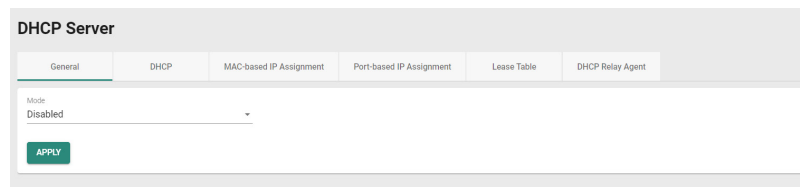
This page includes these tabs:

- General
- DHCP
- MAC-based IP Assignment
- Port-based IP Assignment
- Lease Table
- DHCP Relay Agent

DHCP Server - General

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - General

This page lets you enable the DHCP server feature of your device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	Select the DHCP Server Mode. Each mode has its own configuration settings.	Disabled / DHCP / MAC-based assignment / Port-based IP assignment	Disabled

DHCP

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP

This page lets you set up your device's DHCP server settings to automatically assign an IP address from a user-configured IP address pool to connected Ethernet devices.

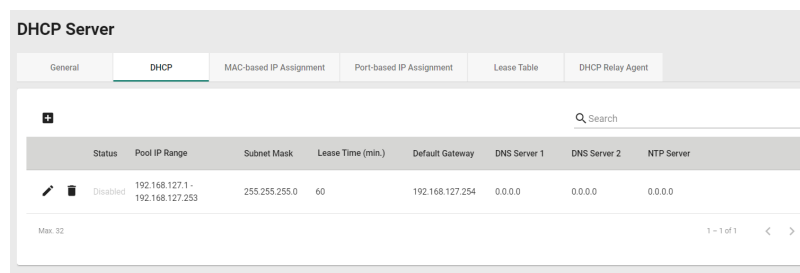
Note



The DHCP Server is only available for LAN interfaces. The DHCP pool's Starting/Ending IP Address must be in the same LAN subnet.

Limitations

You can create up to 32 DHCP server pools.

DHCP Server Pools



Status	Pool IP Range	Subnet Mask	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server
  Disabled	192.168.127.1 - 192.168.127.253	255.255.255.0	60	192.168.127.254	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

UI Setting

Description

- Status** Shows the status of the DHCP server pool.
- Pool IP Range** Shows the IP range of the pool.
- Subnet Mask** Shows the subnet mask to use for DHCP clients in the pool.
- Lease Time** Shows the lease time to use for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server for the pool.
- DNS Server 1** Shows the IP address to use for the first DNS server for DHCP clients in the pool.
- DNS Server 2** Shows the IP address to use for the second DNS server for DHCP clients in the pool.
- NTP Server** Shows the IP address to use for the NTP server for DHCP clients in the pool.

DHCP - Create DHCP Server Pool

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new DHCP server pool. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create DHCP Server Pool

Status *
 Enabled ▼

Starting IP Address * Subnet Mask * ▼

Ending IP Address *

Default Gateway

Lease Time *
 1440
 5 - 527039 min.

DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2

NTP Server


CANCEL CREATE

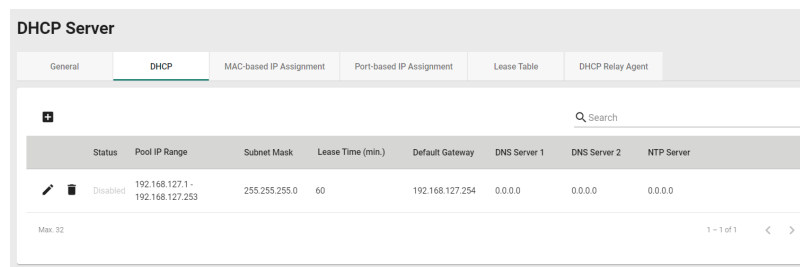
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable DHCP server functionality.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Starting IP Address	Specify the starting IP address of the DHCP IP pool.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for DHCP clients in the pool.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Ending IP Address	Specify the ending IP address of the DHCP IP pool.	Valid IP address	N/A



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway to use for DHCP clients in the pool.	Valid IP address	N/A
Lease Time	Specify the lease time to use for IP addresses assigned to DHCP clients in the pool.	5 - 527039 minutes	1440
DNS Server 1	Specify the IP address to use for the first DNS server for DHCP clients in the pool.	Valid IP address	N/A
DNS Server 2	Specify the IP address to use for the second DNS server for DHCP clients in the pool.	Valid IP address	N/A
NTP Server	Specify the IP address to use for the NTP server for DHCP clients in the pool.	Valid IP address	N/A

DHCP - Delete DHCP Server Pool

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP

You can delete a DHCP server pool by clicking the **Delete** () icon for the pool.



DHCP Server							
General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP Assignment	Lease Table	DHCP Relay Agent		
Status	Pool IP Range	Subnet Mask	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server
  Disabled	192.168.127.1 - 192.168.127.253	255.255.255.0	60	192.168.127.254	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment

This page lets you manage the DHCP server's MAC-based IP assignments.

Note

MAC-based IP assignment is a method of managing IP address allocation on a DHCP server by associating specific IP addresses with the unique MAC addresses of devices on a network. This approach allows network administrators to ensure that certain devices always receive the same IP address, regardless of their connection order or lease duration. By configuring the DHCP server with a table of MAC addresses and their corresponding IP addresses, administrators can have greater control over IP address allocation and enhance network security and management.

🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 256 MAC-based IP assignments.

DHCP Server									
General	DHCP	MAC-based IP Assignment	Port-based IP Assignment	Lease Table	DHCP Relay Agent				
Status	Name	IP Address	Subnet Mask	MAC Address	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	UserManualCASEtest	192.168.127.101	255.255.255.0	00:09:ad:00:aa:01	1440	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

UI Setting

Description

Status	Shows the status of the MAC-based IP assignment.
Name	Shows the hostname for the device.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the device.
Subnet Mask	Shows the subnet mask of the device.
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address of the device.
Default Gateway	Shows the default gateway of the device.
Lease Time	Shows the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server.
DNS Server 1	Shows the IP address for the first DNS server.
DNS Server 2	Shows the IP address for the second DNS server.
NTP Server	Shows the IP address for the NTP server.

MAC-based IP Assignment - Create Entry

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment

Clicking the **Add** (➕) icon on the **Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a new MAC-based IP assignment. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new assignment.

Create Entry

Status

Name * 0 / 63

IP Address * Subnet Mask *

MAC Address *

Default Gateway

Lease Time * 1440
5 - 99999 min.

DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2

NTP Server

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this MAC-based IP assignment.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Name	Enter a hostname for the IP assignment.	Max. 63 characters	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for the IP assignment.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
MAC Address	Specify the MAC address that this IP assignment will apply to.	Valid MAC address	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
Lease Time	Specify the lease time for for the IP assignment.	5 - 99999 minutes	1440
DNS Server 1	Specify the primary DNS server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
DNS Server 2	Specify the secondary DNS server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
NTP Server	Specify the NTP server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A

MAC-based IP Assignment - Edit Entry

Menu Path: [Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an assignment on the **Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing IP assignment. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Entry Settings

Status
 Disabled ▼

Name *
 ExistingAssignment
 18 / 63

IP Address * Subnet Mask *
 192.168.127.101 24 (255.255.255.0) ▼

MAC Address *
 00:00:00:00:00:00

Default Gateway
 0.0.0.0

Lease Time *
 1440
 5 - 527039 min.

DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2
 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

NTP Server
 0.0.0.0


CANCEL APPLY

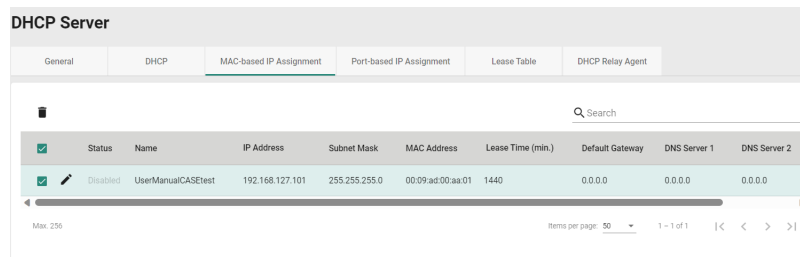
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this MAC-based IP assignment.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Name	Enter a hostname for the IP assignment.	Max. 63 characters	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for the IP assignment.	Valid subnet mask	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
MAC Address	Specify the MAC address that this IP assignment will apply to.	Valid MAC address	N/A
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
Lease Time	Specify the lease time for for the IP assignment.	5 - 99999 minutes	1440
DNS Server 1	Specify the primary DNS server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
DNS Server 2	Specify the secondary DNS server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A
NTP Server	Specify the NTP server for the IP assignment.	Valid IP address	N/A

MAC-based IP Assignment - Delete Entry

Menu Path: [Network Service > DHCP Server - MAC-based IP Assignment](#)

You can delete a MAC-based IP assignment by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



DHCP Server									
General									
DHCP									
MAC-based IP Assignment									
Port-based IP Assignment									
Lease Table									
DHCP Relay Agent									
Search									
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	IP Address	Subnet Mask	MAC Address	Lease Time (min.)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	UserManualCASEtest	192.168.127.101	255.255.255.0	00:09:ad:00:aa:01	1440	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment

Menu Path: [Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment](#)

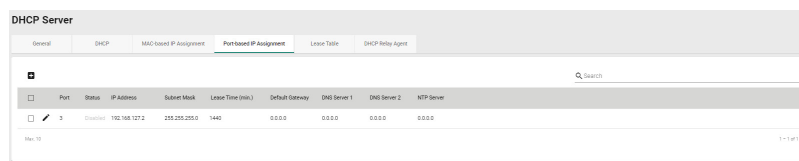
This page lets you manage port-based IP assignment for your device's DHCP server.

Note

Port-based IP assignment is a method of managing IP address allocation on a DHCP server by associating specific IP addresses with the physical ports on network equipment, such as switches or routers. This approach provides network administrators with the ability to assign predetermined IP addresses to devices based on the network port they are connected to.

Limitations


You can create up to 10 port-based IP assignments.



DHCP Server											
General		DHCP		MAC-based IP Assignment		Port-based IP Assignment		Lease Table		DHCP Relay Agent	
Port	Status	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Lease Time (min)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server			
3	Enabled	192.168.121.2	255.255.255.0	1440	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0			

Create Port-based IP Assignment

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new port-based IP assignment. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create Entry

Status

Port *

IP Address * Subnet Mask *

Default Gateway

Lease Time *
1440
5 - 99999 min.

DNS Server 1 DNS Server 2

NTP Server

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this port-based IP assignment.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Port	Select the physical port on the device to associate the IP with for this entry.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the connected device for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the connected device for this entry.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway of the connected device for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
Lease Time	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server for this entry.	5 - 99999 minutes	1440

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
DNS Server 1	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
DNS Server 2	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
NTP Server	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A

Edit Port-based IP Assignment

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an entry on the **Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing port-based IP assignment. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Entry Settings

Status
Disabled ▾

Port *
1/3 ▾

IP Address *
192.168.127.2

Subnet Mask *
24 (255.255.255.0) ▾

Default Gateway
0.0.0.0

Lease Time *
1440

5 - 527039 min.

DNS Server 1
0.0.0.0

DNS Server 2
0.0.0.0


NTP Server
0.0.0.0

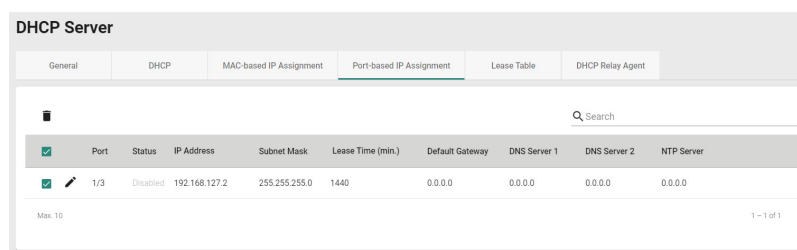
CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this port-based IP assignment.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Port	Select the physical port on the device to associate the IP with for this entry.	Drop-down list of ports	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the connected device for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask of the connected device for this entry.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Default Gateway	Specify the default gateway of the connected device for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
Lease Time	Specify the lease time for IP addresses assigned by the DHCP server for this entry.	5 - 99999 minutes	1440
DNS Server 1	Specify the IP address for the first DNS server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
DNS Server 2	Specify the IP address for the second DNS server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A
NTP Server	Specify the IP address for the NTP server for DHCP clients for this entry.	Valid IP address	N/A

Delete Port-based IP Assignment

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - Port-based IP Assignment

You can delete a port-based IP assignment by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



The screenshot shows the DHCP Server configuration interface. The 'Port-based IP Assignment' tab is selected. A table lists the assigned IP addresses with columns for Port, Status, IP Address, Subnet Mask, Lease Time (min), Default Gateway, DNS Server 1, DNS Server 2, and NTP Server. A search bar is located above the table. A checkbox is visible to the left of the table header.

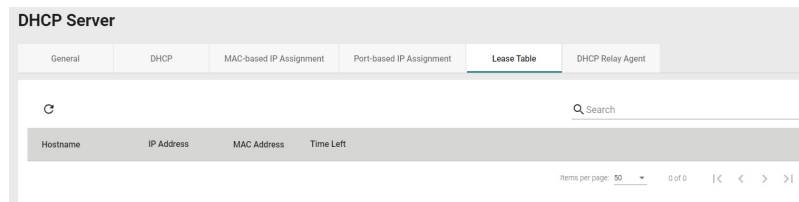
Port	Status	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Lease Time (min)	Default Gateway	DNS Server 1	DNS Server 2	NTP Server
1/3	Disabled	192.168.127.2	255.255.255.0	1440	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0

DHCP Server - Lease Table

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - Lease Table

This page lets you see an overview of the device's current DHCP clients.

Lease Table



UI Setting	Description
Hostname	Shows the hostname of the DHCP lease.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the DHCP lease.
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address of the DHCP lease.
Time Left	Shows the time left for the DHCP lease.

DHCP Relay Agent

Menu Path: Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP Relay Agent

This page allows you to configure the DHCP relay agent, including the settings for remote DHCP server(s) and option-82 related attributes.

DHCP Relay Agent Settings

Server IP Address

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Select a preconfigured network interface.	Drop-down menu of interfaces	None
DHCP Relay Server-1	Specify the IP address of the 1st DHCP server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
DHCP Relay Server-2	Specify the IP address of the 2nd DHCP server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
DHCP Relay Server-3	Specify the IP address of the 3rd DHCP server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
DHCP Relay Server-4	Specify the IP address of the 4th DHCP server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

DHCP Option 82

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enable Option 82	Enable or disable DHCP Option 82.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Type	Specify the type of DHCP Option 82 to use. Interface: Uses the router's interfaces as the remote ID sub. MAC: Uses the router's MAC addresses as the remote ID sub. Client-ID: Uses a combination of the router's MAC address and IP address as the remote ID sub. Other: Uses the user-designated ID sub.	Interface / MAC / Client-ID / Other	Interface
Interface	Select the interface to use for DHCP Option 82.	Drop-down menu of interfaces	N/A
Value	Shows the corresponding value of the selected Type . If Type is Other , specify the value to use.	0 to 32 characters	Depends on the selected Type
Display (View-only)	Shows the Value in hexadecimal.	N/A	N/A

DHCP Function Table

Port	Circuit-ID	Option 82
1/1	01000101	Disabled
1/2	01000102	Disabled
1/3	01000103	Disabled
1/4	01000104	Disabled
1/5	01000105	Disabled
1/6	01000106	Disabled
1/7	01000107	Disabled
1/8	01000208	Disabled
1/9	01000109	Disabled
1/10	0100010a	Disabled

UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows the number of the port the entry is for.
Circuit-ID	Shows the Circuit-ID of the port.
Option 82	Shows whether Option 82 is enabled or disabled for the port.

Dynamic DNS

Menu Path: Network Service > Dynamic DNS


This page lets you configure your device to use a free dynamic DNS service to enable you to access your device through a domain name rather than an IP. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.


Dynamic DNS

Service *
Disabled ▼

Service Name
.....

Username
.....
0 / 45

Password 
.....
0 / 45

Confirm Password 
.....
0 / 45

Domain Name
.....
0 / 45

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Service	Select a dynamic DNS service to use, or disable dynamic DNS.	Disabled / freedns.afraid.org / 3322.org / DynDns.org / NO-IP.com	Disabled
Service Name (View-only)	Shows the name of the selected dynamic DNS service.	freedns.afraid.org / www.3322.org / members.dyndns.org / dynupdate.no-ip.com	N/A
Username	Specify the username to connect to the dynamic DNS service.	1 to 45 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password to connect to the dynamic DNS service.	1 to 45 characters	N/A
Confirm Password	Confirm the password to connect to the dynamic DNS service.	1 to 45 characters	N/A
Domain Name	Specify the domain name to use to connect to your device through the dynamic DNS service.	1 to 45 characters	N/A

DNS Server

Menu Path: Network Service > DNS Server

This page lets you configure the DNS server settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- Global
- Settings
- Status

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

DNS Server - Global

Menu Path: Network Service > DNS Server - Global

This page lets you configure the DNS server related settings. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

DNS Server Settings

DNS Server

- Global
- Settings
- Status

DNS Server *
Disabled ▼

DNS Reverse Lookup *
Disabled ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
DNS Server	Enable or disable the DNS server for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
DNS Reverse Lookup	Enable or disable DNS reverse lookup for your device. DNS reverse lookup allows the router to identify the hostname (device name) associated with a known IP address on the network.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

DNS Server - Settings

Menu Path: [Network Service](#) > [DNS Server - Settings](#)

This page lets you configure the DNS server zone settings.

🔗 Limitations

Up to 16 DNS zones can be created.

🔒 Limitations

Up to 256 resource records can be created for each zone.

Zone Table

Zones provide a structured way to manage and organize DNS records for a domain. They allow administrators to group related records together and apply consistent configurations across the domain.

Index	Domain Name
ZONE-1	Test
ZONE-2	Test2

UI Setting

Description

Index

Shows the number of the zone the entry is for.

Domain Name

Shows the domain name of the zone.

Create a Zone

Menu Path: [Network Service > DNS Server - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Network Service > DNS Server - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a zone for the DNS server.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new zone.

Create a Zone

Index *
ZONE-1 ▼

Domain Name *
Test
4 / 63

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Select a zone to create.	Drop-down list of zones	N/A
Domain Name	Specify a domain name for the zone.	Up to 63 characters	N/A

DNS Table

Select a zone from the drop-down list to see its DNS table.

DNS Table for ZONE-1 ▼

+
Search

	Hostname	IP Address
<input type="checkbox"/>	Test	19.126.255.5

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
Hostname	Shows the hostname of the resource record.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the resource record.

Create a Resource Record

Menu Path: [Network Service](#) > [DNS Server - Settings](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon in a DNS table on the **Network Service > DNS Server - Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create resource records for the displayed zone.

Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the resource record for the displayed zone.

Note

Resource records cannot be created for a zone until the corresponding zone has been created.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Hostname	Specify the host name for the resource record.	1 to 63 characters	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address for the resource record.	Valid IP address	N/A

DNS Server - Status

Menu Path: [Network Service > DNS Server - Status](#)

This page lets you see the DNS server's overall status.

DNS Server Summary

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- DNS Server** Shows whether the DNS server is enabled for the device.
- DNS Reverse Lookup** Shows whether DNS reverse lookup is enabled for the device

Status - Zone Table

Index	Domain Name
ZONE-1	Test
ZONE-2	Test2

1 - 2 of 2

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- Index** Shows the index of the zone the entry is for.
- Domain Name** Shows the domain name of the zone.

Status - DNS Table

FQDN ↓	IP Address
Test.Test	19.126.255.5

1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- FQDN** Shows the full qualified domain name (FQDN) of the resource record, which is in the format "Hostname.Domain Name".
For example, if the hostname is "door1" and the domain name for the zone is "train1", the FQDN will be "door1.train1".

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

IP Address	Shows the IP address of the resource record.
-------------------	--

Routing

Menu Path: Routing

The Routing settings area lets you configure settings related to how your device routes network traffic.

This settings area includes these sections:

- Unicast Route
- Multicast Route
- Broadcast Forwarding

Routing - User Privileges

Privileges to Routing settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Unicast Routing			
Static Routes	R/W	R/W	R
RIP	R/W	R/W	R
OSPF	R/W	R/W	R
Routing Table	R	R	R
Multicast Route			
Multicast Route Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Static Multicast Route	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Multicast Forwarding Table	R	R	R
Broadcast Forwarding	R/W	R/W	R

Unicast Route

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#)

This section lets you manage unicast routes for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [Static Routes](#)
- [RIP](#)
- [OSPF](#)
- [Routing Table](#)

Static Routes

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [Static Routes](#)

This page lets you manage static routes for your device, which allows you to specify the next hop (or router) that the device will forward data to for a specific subnet. Static routes will be added to the routing table and stored on the device.

Limitations

You can create up to 512 static routes.


Static Route List

Static Routes						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	Destination Address	Netmask	Next Hop	Metric
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; align-items: center;"> Max. 512 Items per page: 50 0 of 0 < < > > </div>						

UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows the status of the static route.
Name	Shows the name of the static route.
Destination Address	Shows the destination IP address for the static route.
Netmask	Shows the subnet mask for the destination IP address.
Next Hop	Shows the next router on the path to the destination IP address.
Metric	Shows the metric value used to determine the priority of the static route. Lower values have higher priority.

Create New Static Route

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [Static Routes](#)

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > Static Routes** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new static route. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create new static route

Status *

Name * 0 / 10


Destination Address * Subnet Mask *

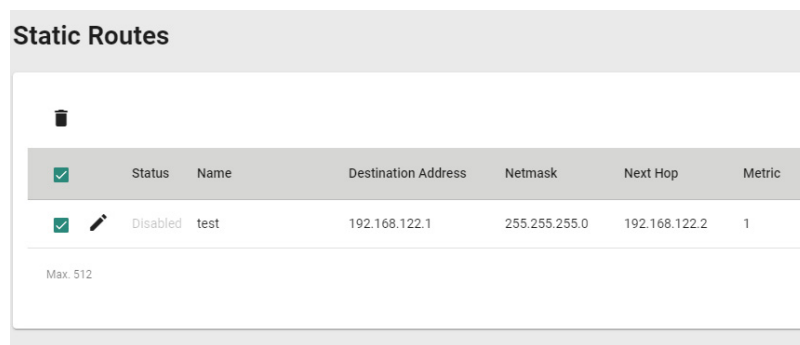
Next Hop * Metric * 1 - 254

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the static route.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Name	Specify a name for the static route.	Max. 10 characters	N/A
Destination Address	Specify the destination IP address for the static route.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Specify the subnet mask for the destination IP address.	Drop-down list of values	N/A
Next Hop	Specify the next router on the path to the destination IP.	Valid IP address	N/A
Metric	Specify the metric value to determine the priority of the static route. Lower values have higher priority.	1 to 254	N/A

Delete Static Route

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [Static Routes](#)

You can delete entries by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



Status	Name	Destination Address	Netmask	Next Hop	Metric
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	test	192.168.122.1	255.255.255.0	192.168.122.2	1

Max. 512

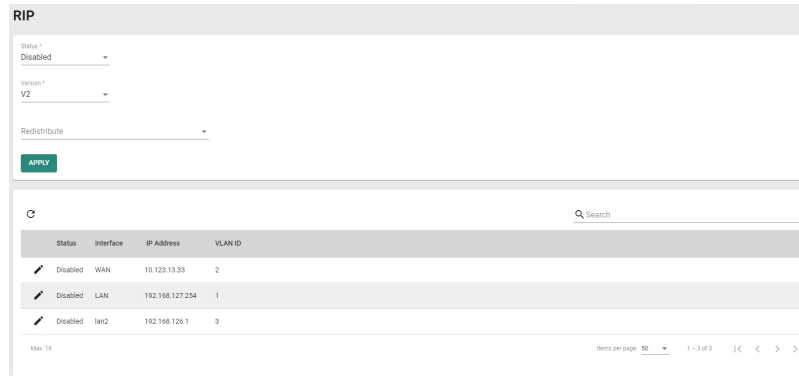
RIP

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [RIP](#)

This page lets you configure RIP (Routing Information Protocol), a distance-vector routing protocol that employs the hop count as a routing metric. RIP prevents routing

from looping by implementing a limit on the number of hops allowed in a path from the source to a destination. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

RIP Settings



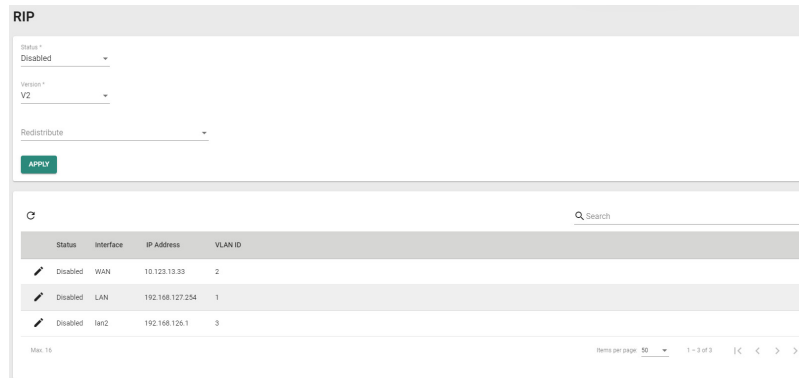
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable RIP protocol.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Version	Set the RIP protocol version: V1: RIP V1 uses classful routing. This means that network addresses are assigned to specific classes, and the subnet mask is determined by the class of the network address. V2: RIP V2 uses classless routing. This means that network addresses can be assigned in a more flexible way, and the subnet mask can be specified independently of the network address class.	V1 / V2	V2
Redistribute	Set which rules to enable for RIP redistribution. You can enable multiple redistribution rules. Connected: Entries learned from directly connected interfaces will be re-distributed. Static: Entries set in a static route will be re-distributed. OSPF: Entries learned from the OSPF will be re-distributed.	Connected / Static / OSPF	N/A
<p>Note</p> <p><i>Redistribute</i> in RIP refers to the process of importing routing information from other routing protocols into the RIP routing table, allowing for interconnectivity between different protocols and complex networks.</p>			

RIP Interface List

This list shows all of your device interfaces and the RIP settings applied to each one.

Note

Interfaces and their settings can be configured in Network Configuration > Network Interfaces. VLAN IDs can be configured in Network Configuration > Layer 2 Switching > VLAN.



UI Setting

Description

Status

Shows whether RIP is enabled or disabled for the interface.

Interface (View Only)

Shows the name of the interface.

IP Address (View Only)


Shows the IP address of the interface.

VLAN ID (View Only)

Shows the VLAN ID of the interface.

Edit RIP

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > RIP

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an interface on the **Routing > Unicast Route > RIP** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the RIP settings for the interface. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit RIP

Status *
Disabled ▼

Interface
WAN

IP Address
10.123.13.33

VLAN ID
2

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable RIP for the interface.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Interface (View Only)	Shows the name of the interface.	Interface name	N/A
IP Address (View Only)	Shows the IP address of the interface.	Interface IP address	N/A
VLAN ID (View Only)	Shows the VLAN ID of the interface.	Interface VLAN ID	N/A

OSPF

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#)

This section lets you configure OSPF (Open Shortest Path First) routing for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- [OSPF Settings](#)
- [OSPF Status](#)

OSPF Settings

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings

This page lets you configure OSPF settings for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- Area
- Interface
- Aggregation
- Virtual Link

OSPF Settings - General

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - General

This page lets you adjust the basic settings for OSPF. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

OSPF Settings

General Area Interface Aggregation Virtual Link

OSPF Settings *
Disabled

Router ID *
0.0.0.0

Current Router ID
0.0.0.0



Redistribute

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
OSPF Settings	Enable or disable OSPF for your device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Router ID	Specify the Router ID of your Moxa router.	Router ID	0.0.0.0

Note

The router ID, which must be established for every OSPF instance, should be written in the dot-decimal format of an IP address (e.g., 1.2.3.4) and does not need to be part of any routable subnet on the network, since it is an IP address.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Current Router ID (View-only)	Specify the current Router ID of your Moxa router. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>When the Router ID is set to 0.0.0.0, the Current Router ID will automatically use the highest interface IP address.</p> </div>	Current Router ID	0.0.0.0
Redistribute	Specify the OSPF redistribution method: Connected: Entries learned from the directly connected interfaces will be redistributed. Static: Entries set in a static route will be redistributed. RIP: Entries learned from RIP will be redistributed. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p> Note</p> <p><i>Redistributing</i> in OSPF refers to the process of importing routing information from other routing protocols—such as RIP, EIGRP, etc.—into the OSPF routing table.</p> </div>	Connected / Static / RIP	N/A

OSPF Settings - Area

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Area](#)

This page lets you define OSPF areas.

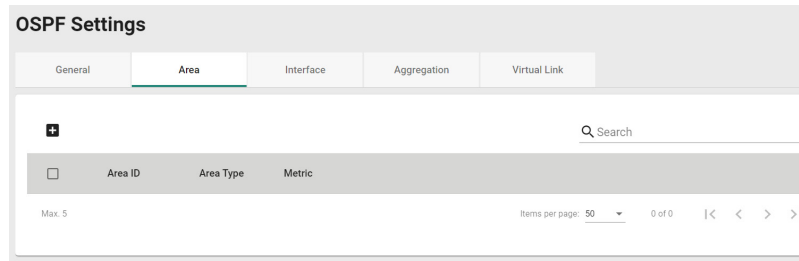
Note

Areas are used to divide a large network into smaller network areas. Each area maintains a separate link state database whose information may be summarized towards the rest of the network by the connecting router. Thus, the topology of an area is unknown outside of the area. This reduces the amount of routing traffic between parts of an autonomous system.

Limitations

You can create up to 5 OSPF areas.

OSPF Area List



UI Setting	Description
Area ID	Shows the area's ID.
Area Type	Shows the type of OSPF routing used for the area.
Metric (Only for Metric is Stub/NSSA)	Shows the metric value/cost for OSPF in the area.

Create Area

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new OSPF area. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new area.

Create Area

Area ID *

Area Type *

Normal ▼

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Area ID	Specify an ID for this OSPF area.	N/A	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Area Type	<p>Specify the type of OSPF routing to use for this area:</p> <p>Normal: A normal (or standard) area is an OSPF area that allows both intra-area and inter-area routing.</p> <p>Stub: A stub area is an OSPF area that does not allow external routes to be imported into the area.</p> <p>NSSA: An NSSA (Not-So-Stubby Area) is a special type of OSPF area that allows external routing information to be imported into the area, but does not allow the area to propagate that information to other areas.</p>	Normal / Stub / NSSA	Normal
Metric (if Metric is Stub or NSSA)	<p>Specify the metric value/cost to use for this area.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.</p> </div>	1 to 65535	1

Edit Area

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an OSPF area on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing OSPF area. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Area

Area ID *
0.0.0.0

Area Type *
Normal ▼

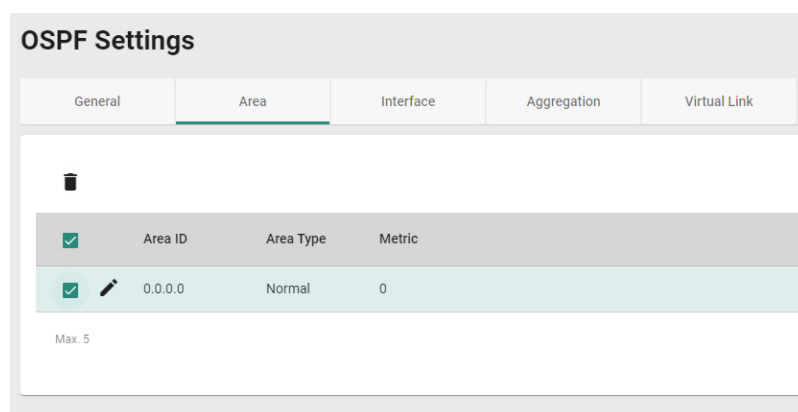
CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Area ID	Specify an ID for this OSPF area.	N/A	N/A
Area Type	Specify the type of OSPF routing to use for this area: Normal: A normal (or standard) area is an OSPF area that allows both intra-area and inter-area routing. Stub: A stub area is an OSPF area that does not allow external routes to be imported into the area. NSSA: An NSSA (Not-So-Stubby Area) is a special type of OSPF area that allows external routing information to be imported into the area, but does not allow the area to propagate that information to other areas.	Normal / Stub / NSSA	Normal
Metric (if Metric is Stub or NSSA)	Specify the metric value/cost to use for this area.	1 to 65535	1
<div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.</p> </div>			

Delete Area

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area

You can delete an OSPF area by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.



OSPF Settings - Interface

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface

This page lets you configure the OSPF settings for each of your interfaces. To manage your interfaces, refer to **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces**.

OSPF Settings										
General		Area		Interface		Aggregation		Virtual Link		
Interface	IP Address	Area ID	Hello Interval (sec.)	Dead Interval (sec.)	Role	Priority	Auth Type	MD5 Key ID	Metric	
<input type="checkbox"/> WAN	10.123.13.33	0.0.0.0	10	40	DR	1	MD5	12	1	

UI Setting	Description
Interface	Shows which interface this entry describes.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the interface.
Area ID	Shows the OSPF area ID used for the interface.
Hello Interval	Shows the hello message interval for the interface.
Dead Interval	Shows the dead interval for the interface.
Role	Shows the role of the interface.
Priority	Shows the priority of the interface.
Auth Type	Shows the authentication type used to authenticate OSPF neighbors.
MD5 Key ID (Only if Auth Type is MD5)	Shows the MD5 key ID used to authenticate OSPF neighbors.
Metric	Shows the metric value/cost to OSPF.

Note

Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.

OSPF Settings - Create Interface

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you select an interface and configure OSPF settings for it. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.

Note

You cannot create new interfaces in this dialog; you can only select existing interfaces. To create a new interface, refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces.

Create Interface

Interface *

Area ID *

Priority *
1

0 - 255

Hello Interval * Dead Interval *

10 40

1 - 65535 sec. 1 - 65535 sec.

Auth Type *
None

Metric *
1

1 - 65535



CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Specify which interface to assign to an OSPF area.	Dropdown of interfaces	N/A
Area ID	Specify an OSPF area ID to assign to the interface.	Dropdown of area IDs	N/A

Note

To manage OSPF areas, refer to Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Priority	Specify the priority of the interface.	0 to 255	1
Hello Interval	Set the hello message interval for the interface. The hello interval is the amount of time between sends of hello packets, which indicate that the device is still alive. The value of all hello intervals must be the same within a network.	1 to 65535 second(s)	10
Dead Interval	Set the dead interval for the interface. The dead interval is the amount of time a device will wait for a hello packet. If a hello packet is not received in this time, it will consider the other device to be dead or unavailable. By default, the dead interval is set to be four times the value of the hello interval.	1 to 65535 second(s)	40
Auth Type	Specify the authentication type to use when authenticating OSPF neighbors. None: No authentication method will be used for neighbor authentication. Simple: Neighbors will be authenticated using an auth key. MD5: Neighbors will be authenticated more securely by using an auth key and an MD5 key ID.	None / Simple / MD5	N/A
Auth Key (Only if Auth Type is Simple or MD5)	Specify the auth key to use for neighbor authentication. If the Auth Type is Simple, the auth key will be a pure-text password. If the Auth Type is MD5, the auth key will be an encrypted password.	1 to 8 characters	N/A
MD5 Key ID (Only if Auth Type is MD5)	Specify the MD5 key ID to use for neighbor authentication.  Note MD5 authentication method uses MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID.	1 to 255	1
Metric	Specify the metric value/cost for OSPF.  Note Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.	1 to 65535	1

OSPF Settings - Edit Interface

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface


Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit existing OSPF settings for an interface. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Specify which interface to assign to an OSPF area.	Dropdown of interfaces	N/A
Area ID	Specify an OSPF area ID to assign to the interface.	Dropdown of area IDs	N/A
<p>Note</p> <p>To manage OSPF areas, refer to Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Area.</p>			

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Priority	Specify the priority of the interface.	0 to 255	1
Hello Interval	Set the hello message interval for the interface. The hello interval is the amount of time between sends of hello packets, which indicate that the device is still alive. The value of all hello intervals must be the same within a network.	1 to 65535 second(s)	10
Dead Interval	Set the dead interval for the interface. The dead interval is the amount of time a device will wait for a hello packet. If a hello packet is not received in this time, it will consider the other device to be dead or unavailable. By default, the dead interval is set to be four times the value of the hello interval.	1 to 65535 second(s)	40
Auth Type	Specify the authentication type to use when authenticating OSPF neighbors. None: No authentication method will be used for neighbor authentication. Simple: Neighbors will be authenticated using an auth key. MD5: Neighbors will be authenticated more securely by using an auth key and an MD5 key ID.	None / Simple / MD5	N/A
Auth Key (Only if Auth Type is Simple or MD5)	Specify the auth key to use for neighbor authentication. If the Auth Type is Simple, the auth key will be a pure-text password. If the Auth Type is MD5, the auth key will be an encrypted password.	1 to 8 characters	N/A
MD5 Key ID (Only if Auth Type is MD5)	Specify the MD5 key ID to use for neighbor authentication.  Note MD5 authentication method uses MD5 to calculate a hash value from the contents of the OSPF packet and the authentication key. This hash value is transmitted in the packet, along with a key ID.	1 to 255	1
Metric	Specify the metric value/cost for OSPF.  Note Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.	1 to 65535	1

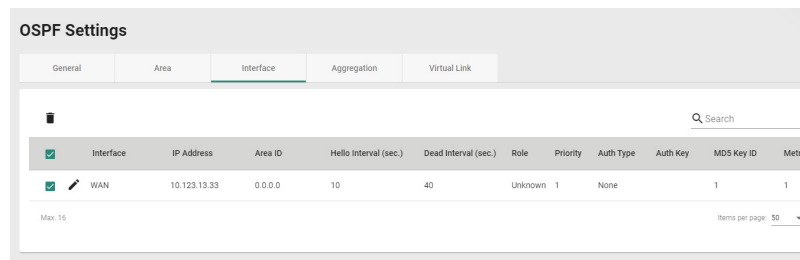
OSPF Settings - Delete Interface

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Interface

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.

Note

Please note that this will delete the OSPF settings for the interface, but it will not delete the interface itself.



The screenshot shows the 'OSPF Settings' page with the 'Interface' tab selected. A table lists OSPF interface settings. The first row is selected with a checkbox.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Interface	IP Address	Area ID	Hello Interval (sec.)	Dead Interval (sec.)	Role	Priority	Auth Type	Auth Key	MDS Key ID	Metric
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	WAN	10.123.13.33	0.0.0.0	10	40	Unknown	1	None		1	1

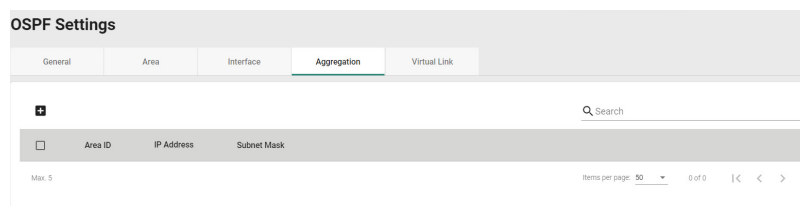
OSPF Settings - Aggregation

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation

This page lets you aggregate different OSPF areas into a single routing table entry.

Limitations

You can create up to 5 OSPF aggregations.



The screenshot shows the 'OSPF Settings' page with the 'Aggregation' tab selected. A table lists OSPF aggregation settings. The first row is not selected.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Area ID	IP Address	Subnet Mask
--------------------------	---------	------------	-------------

UI Setting

Description

Area ID

Shows the area ID.

UI Setting	Description
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the area.
Subnet Mask	Shows the network subnet mask.

Create an Aggregation

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Aggregation](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create an OSPF aggregation. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new aggregation.

Create Aggregation

Area ID *

IP Address * Subnet Mask *

[CANCEL](#) [CREATE](#)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Area ID	Select the area ID that you want to use for the aggregation.	Dropdown list of area IDs	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address to use for the area.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Select the network subnet mask to use for the area.	Dropdown list of subnet masks	N/A

Edit an Aggregation

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Aggregation](#)

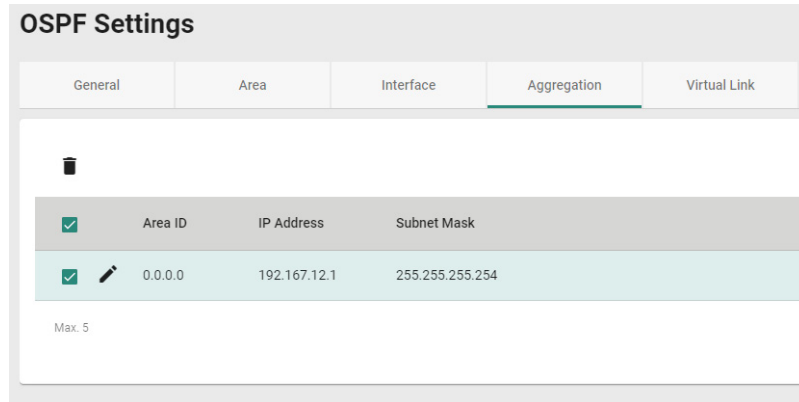
Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing aggregation. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Area ID	Select the area ID that you want to use for the aggregation.	Dropdown list of area IDs	N/A
IP Address	Specify the IP address to use for the area.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask	Select the network subnet mask to use for the area.	Dropdown list of subnet masks	N/A

Delete an Aggregation

Menu Path: [Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Settings - Aggregation](#)

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑) icon.



Virtual Link

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Settings - Virtual Link](#)

This page lets you configure virtual links, which can be used to connect areas in an OSPF autonomous system when physical connection to the backbone area is not possible.

Limitations

You can create up to 5 OSPF virtual links.

OSPF Status

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Status](#)

This page lets you view the OSPF routing status of your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Neighbor
- Database

Neighbor

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [OSPF](#) > [OSPF Status - Neighbor](#)

This page lets you see the status of OSPF neighbors. OSPF neighbors are devices that share their link-state information with other devices in the network.



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Neighbor ID	Shows the unique identifier for the OSPF neighbor.
--------------------	--

Priority	Shows priority value that the neighbor has assigned to itself.
-----------------	--

State	Shows the current state of the OSPF neighbor relationship: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Down: The initial state before any OSPF communication has occurred between two routers. • Init: The state where the local router has sent an OSPF Hello packet to a neighbor but has not yet received a response. • 2-way: The state where both routers have exchanged Hello packets and can become neighbors, but they have not yet established a bidirectional relationship. • Exstart: The state where the routers determine which one will be the master and which one will be the slave during the database exchange process. • Exchange: The state where the routers exchange link-state advertisement (LSA) headers and determine which LSAs need to be sent. • Loading: The state where the routers exchange LSAs to synchronize their link-state databases. • Full: The final state where the routers have a complete and accurate view of the network topology and are ready to forward traffic.
--------------	--

IP Address	Shows the IP address of the neighbor router's interface used for OSPF communication.
-------------------	--

Interface Name	Shows the name of the local interface used for OSPF communication with the neighbor.
-----------------------	--

Database

Menu Path: Routing > Unicast Route > OSPF > OSPF Status - Database

This page lets you see the list of link-state advertisements (LSAs) that describe the network topology, which is used to calculate the shortest path to a destination.

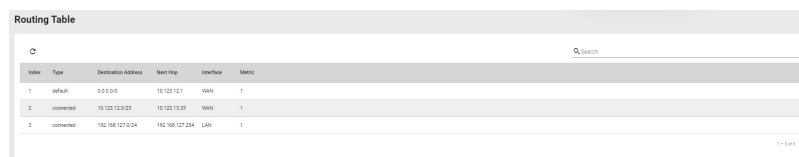


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
LSA Type	Shows the type of the LSA, which describes the contents of the OSPF LSA packet. Router LSA: Describes the links attached to a router and is flooded within the same area as the router. Network LSA: Describes the routers attached to a multi-access network. Summary LSA: Advertises reachability information between OSPF areas. AS External LSA: Advertises routes to networks outside the OSPF domain. NSSA External LSA: Similar to the Type 5 LSA, but used in a Not-So-Stubby Area (NSSA) to advertise external routes. Link-local LSA: Used to advertise IPv6 link-local addresses and is flooded throughout the same link-local scope.	N/A	N/A
Area	Identifies the area of the network to which the LSA belongs.	N/A	N/A
Link ID	Identifies the endpoint of the link described by the LSA.	N/A	N/A
ADV Router	Identifies the router that the LSA originated from.	N/A	N/A
Route	OSPF uses the information in the LSAs to calculate the shortest path to a destination.	N/A	N/A

Routing Table

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Unicast Route](#) > [Routing Table](#)

This page lets you see the current routing table for your device.



Index	Type	Destination Address	Next Hop	Interface	Metric
1	default	0.0.0.0	10.120.12.1	WAN	1
2	connected	10.120.12.0/23	10.120.12.20	WAN	1
3	connected	192.168.127.0/24	192.168.127.254	LAN	1

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the unique identifier for the routing table entry.

UI Setting	Description
Type	Shows the source type of the route.
Destination Address	Shows the address of the destination network for the route.
Next Hop	Shows the IP address of the next hop router or gateway that the packet should be forwarded to.
Interface	Shows the outgoing interface that should be used to reach the destination network.
Metric	Shows the metric value/cost of the route to the destination network.

 **Note**

Metrics are used to calculate the shortest path for data to travel through the network, and are determined by assigning cost values to the interfaces connecting to each router. The lower the cost value, the more the path will be preferred.

Multicast Route

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Multicast Route](#)

This section lets you configure multicast routing for your device.

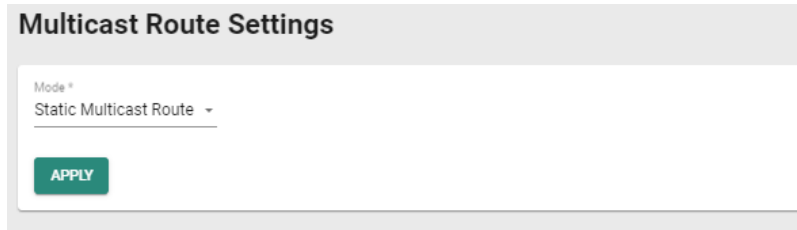
This section includes these pages:

- Multicast Route Settings
- Static Multicast Route
- Multicast Forwarding Table

Multicast Route Settings

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Multicast Route](#) > [Multicast Route Settings](#)

This page lets you enable or disable multicast routing. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	Enable or disable multicast routing.	Disabled / Static Multicast Route	Disabled

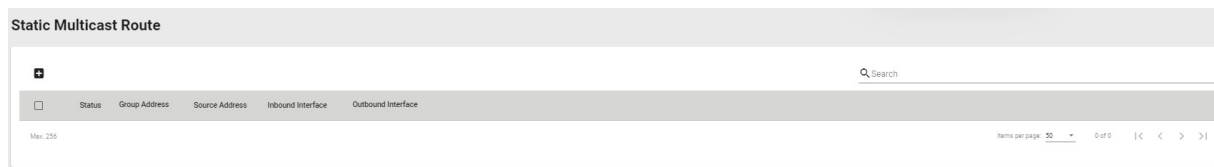
Static Multicast Route

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Multicast Route](#) > [Static Multicast Route](#)

This page lets you manage multicast routes for your device.

Limitations

You can create up to 256 static multicast routes.



UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows whether the static multicast route is enabled or disabled.
Group Address	Shows the group IP address for the route.
Source Address	Shows the source address for the route.
Inbound Interface	Shows the inbound interface for the route.
Outbound Interface	Shows the outbound interfaces for the route.

Create Static Multicast Route

Menu Path: Routing > Multicast Route > Static Multicast Route

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Routing > Multicast Route > Static Multicast Route** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a new static multicast route. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create Static Multicast Route

Status *
Enabled ▾

Group Address *

Source Address Type *
Specify Source ▾ Source Address *

Inbound Interface * ▾

Outbound Interface * ▾

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this route.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Group Address	Specify the group IP address for this route.	N/A	N/A
Source Address Type	Specify the type of source address to use for this route. Any: Allow any IP to be the source address. Specify Source: Use the specified Source Address .	Any / Specify Source	Any
Source Address (Only if Source Address Type is Specify Source)	Specify the source IP address to use for this route.	N/A	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will come from.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
Outbound Interface	Select which interfaces the broadcast packets will be routed to.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A

Edit Static Multicast Route

Menu Path: Routing > Multicast Route > Static Multicast Route

Clicking the **Edit** (↗) icon for an entry on the **Routing > Multicast Route > Static Multicast Route** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing static multicast route. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Static Multicast Route

Status *

Group Address *

Source Address Type *

Inbound Interface *

Outbound Interface *

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this route.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Group Address	Specify the group IP address for this route.	N/A	N/A
Source Address Type	Specify the type of source address to use for this route. Any: Allow any IP to be the source address. Specify Source: Use the specified Source Address .	Any / Specify Source	Any
Source Address (Only if Source Address Type is Specify Source)	Specify the source IP address to use for this route.	N/A	N/A
Inbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will come from.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
Outbound Interface	Select which interfaces the broadcast packets will be routed to.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A

Delete Static Multicast Route

Menu Path: Routing > Multicast Route > Static Multicast Route

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Group Address	Source Address	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	239.255.255.255	ANY	WAN	LAN

Max: 255 | Items per page: 50 | 1 - 1 of 1

Multicast Forwarding Table

Menu Path: Routing > Multicast Route > Multicast Forwarding Table

This page lets you see the multicast forwarding table for your device.

Index	Group Address	Source Address	Inbound Interface	Inbound Packets	Inbound Bytes	Outbound Interface(s)
0 of 0						

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the entry.
Group Address	Shows the group IP address of the entry.
Source Address	Shows the source address of the entry.
Inbound Interface	Shows the inbound interface of the entry.
Inbound Packets	Shows the number of inbound packets for the entry.
Inbound Bytes	Shows the size of the inbound payload (in bytes) for the entry.
Outbound Interface(s)	Shows the outbound interfaces of the entry.

Broadcast Forwarding

Menu Path: [Routing](#) > [Broadcast Forwarding](#)

This page lets you set up broadcast forwarding. Broadcast forwarding enables users to specify the interface and UDP ports that broadcast packets will use to pass through the router, allowing devices to be queried on the network, such as Modbus devices.

Limitations

You can create up to 32 broadcast forwarding entries.

Broadcast Forwarding Settings



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable broadcast forwarding.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled


Broadcast Forwarding List



UI Setting	Description
Inbound Interface	Shows which interface broadcast packets will come from.
Outbound Interface	Shows which interface broadcast packets will pass through.
UDP Port	Shows the UDP ports the device will listen to for broadcast packets.

Create Broadcast Forwarding


Menu Path: Routing > Broadcast Forwarding

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Routing > Broadcast Forwarding** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new broadcast forwarding rule. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

Create Broadcast Forwarding

Inbound Interface * ▼

Outbound Interface * ▼

UDP Port * 

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will come from.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Outbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will pass through.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
UDP Port	Specify which UDP ports the device will listen to for broadcast packets. You can enter up to 8 ports, separated by commas.	1 to 65535, up to 8 ports separated by commas	N/A

Edit Broadcast Forwarding

Menu Path: Routing > Broadcast Forwarding

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an entry on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing broadcast forwarding rule. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Broadcast Forwarding

Inbound Interface *

Outbound Interface *


UDP Port *
 i


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will come from.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A
Outbound Interface	Select which interface broadcast packets will pass through.	Drop-down list of interfaces	N/A


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
UDP Port	Specify which UDP ports the device will listen to for broadcast packets. You can enter up to 8 ports, separated by commas.	1 to 65535, up to 8 ports separated by commas	N/A

Delete Broadcast Forwarding

Menu Path: Routing > Broadcast Forwarding

You can delete an entry by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Inbound Interface	Outbound Interface	UDP Port
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 	LAN	WAN	1

Max. 32

NAT

Menu Path: NAT

This page allows you to manage your Network Address Translation (NAT) rules.

Note

NAT currently supports the following ALG protocols: FTP, TFTP, SNMP.

Limitations

You can create up to 512 NAT rules.

NAT - User Privileges

Privileges to NAT settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings**Admin****Supervisor****User****NAT**

R/W

R/W

R

NAT Rule List

Network Address Translate

Status	Description	Index	Mode	Protocol	Incoming Interface	Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)	Outgoing Interface	Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)	Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)
<input type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_001-454	1	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:45	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:80
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_7h40L_een4L_P0rN402	2	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:408	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:443
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_7h40L_een4L_P0rN403	3	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:316	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:80
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_0n401102_4543	4	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:310	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:443
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_0n401102_4543	5	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:1002	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:80
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_0n401102_4543	6	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:2002	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:443
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled NAT_0n401102_4543	7	NAT	TCP	WAN	Any Any	Dynamic:7010	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.225:443
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Disabled 1_n_NAT_4543	8	Advanced	OSPF-TCP	WAN	Any Any	10.123.12.225-10.123.12.225:Any	Any	Any Any	192.168.127.100-192.168.127.102:Any

1-8 of 8

Apply

UI Setting**Description****Status**

Shows whether the NAT rule is enabled or disabled.

Description

Shows the name of the NAT rule.

Index

Shows the index of the NAT rule.

Mode

Shows the NAT mode used by the rule.

Protocol

Shows the protocols included in the NAT rule.

Incoming Interface

Shows the incoming interface.

Src. IP:Port (Original Packet)

Shows the original source IP address and ports for incoming packets.

Dst. IP:Port (Original Packet)

Shows the original destination IP address and ports for incoming packets.

Outgoing Interface

Shows the outgoing interface.

Src. IP:Port (Translated Packet)

Shows the translated source IP address and ports.

Dst. IP:Port (Translated Packet)

Shows the translated destination IP address and ports.

Create Index

Menu Path: NAT

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **NAT** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new NAT rule. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new rule.

Available settings will change depending on what **Mode** is selected.

Create Index - 1-to-1 NAT

If **1-to-1** is selected for the **Mode**, these settings will appear. 1-to-1 NAT maps one public IP address to one private IP address.

Create Index 8

Enabled ▾

Description 0 / 128

Index *
8

1 - 512

Mode
1-to-1 ▾

Auto Create Source NAT
Disabled ▾ ⓘ

NAT Loopback
Disabled ▾

Double NAT
Disabled ▾

VRRP Binding
Disabled ▾

Original Packet (Condition)

Incoming Interface
LAN ▾

Destination IP Mapping Type
Single ▾

Destination IP *
0.0.0.0

Translated Packet (Action)

Destination IP Mapping Type
Single ▾

Destination IP *
0.0.0.0

CANCEL **APPLY**

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Description	Specify a name for this rule.	1 to 128 characters	N/A
Index	Specify the index of this rule.	1 to 512	N/A
Mode	Specify which NAT mode to use for this rule. 1-to-1: 1-to-1 NAT maps one public IP address to one private IP address. N-to-1: N-to-1 NAT maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address. PAT: Port Address Translation (PAT) maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address using different port numbers. Advance: Allows you to set up an advanced NAT rule.	1-to-1 / N-to-1 / PAT / Advance	1-to-1
Auto Create Source NAT	Enable or disable the Auto Create Source NAT feature. If this is disabled, 1-to-1 NAT will only perform DNAT.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
NAT Loopback	Enable or disable NAT Loopback. NAT loopback allows devices on a private network to access a server or service hosted on the same network using the public IP address of the network.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Double NAT	Enable or disable Double NAT. Double NAT enables you to use 1-to-1 rules to facilitate two-way communication.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
VRRP Binding	Select which VRRP index this rule should use, or disable VRRP binding. Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) Binding is a feature that allows the 1-to-1 NAT rule to be bound to a VRRP index. VRRP Binding is only supported in 1-to-1 NAT. If a VRRP index is selected, the 1-to-1 NAT rule is only valid when the system is the master. If no VRRP index is selected, the 1-to-1 NAT rule will be valid regardless of whether the system is the master or backup.	Disabled / VRRP Index No.	Disabled

Original Packet (Condition)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Incoming Interface	Select the interface to use for this rule.	Drop-down list of interfaces	LAN

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP Mapping Type	<p>Specify which destination IP addresses will be handled for incoming packets.</p> <p>Single: This rule will apply to a single destination IP for incoming packets.</p> <p>Range: This rule will apply to a range of destination IPs for incoming packets.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>With the 'Range' option, you have the capability to establish several 1-to-1 NAT mappings within a designated IP address range. It's essential to ensure that the 'Range' values in the Original Packet (Condition) align precisely with those in the Translated Packet (Action) for accurate Destination IP Mapping.</p> </div>	Single / Range	Single
Destination IP (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the destination IP this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: Start (Only for Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: End (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

Translated Packet (Action)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP Mapping Type	<p>Specify how to handle the destination IP address translation for the internal network.</p> <p>Single: Packets will be translated to a single IP address.</p> <p>Range: Packets will be translated to a range of IP addresses.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"><p>With the 'Range' option, you have the capability to establish several 1-to-1 NAT mappings within a designated IP address range. It's essential to ensure that the 'Range' values in the Original Packet (Condition) align precisely with those in the Translated Packet (Action) for accurate Destination IP Mapping.</p></div>	Single / Range	Single
Destination IP (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the destination IP to translate to on the internal network.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: Start (Only for Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination IP range to translate to on the internal network.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: End (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination IP range to translate to on the internal network.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

Create Index - N-to-1 NAT

If **N-to-1** is selected for the **Mode**, these settings will appear. N-to-1 NAT maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address.

Create Index 9

Status *
Enabled ▾

Description
_____ 0 / 128

Index *
9
1 - 128

Mode
N-to-1 ▾

Original Packet (Condition)
 Source IP: Start * Source IP: End *
 0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Translated Packet (Action)
 Outgoing Interface
 WAN ▾


CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Description	Specify a name for this rule.	1 to 128 characters	N/A
Index	Specify the index of this rule.	1 to 512	N/A
Mode	Specify which NAT mode to use for this rule. 1-to-1: 1-to-1 NAT maps one public IP address to one private IP address. N-to-1: N-to-1 NAT maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address. PAT: Port Address Translation (PAT) maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address using different port numbers. Advance: Allows you to set up an advanced NAT rule.	1-to-1 / N-to-1 / PAT / Advance	1-to-1

Original Packet (Condition)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Source IP: Start	Specify the starting IP address of the source IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Source IP: End	Specify the starting IP address of the source IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

Translated Packet (Action)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Outgoing Interface	Select the interface for the NAT rule.  Note The Outgoing Interface cannot be set to 'Any', as N-1 NAT requires a specific Outgoing Interface to be designated.	Drop-down list of interfaces	WAN

Create Index - PAT

If **PAT** is selected for the **Mode**, these settings will appear. Port Address Translation (PAT) maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address using different port numbers.

Create Index 9

Status *
Enabled ▾

Description
_____ 0 / 128

Index *
9
1 - 128

Mode
PAT ▾

Protocol
_____ ▾

NAT Loopback
Enabled ▾

Double NAT
Enabled ▾

Original Packet (Condition)

Incoming Interface
WAN ▾

Destination Port *
0
1 - 65535

Translated Packet (Action)

Destination IP *
0.0.0.0

Destination Port *
0
1 - 65535

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Description	Specify a name for this rule.	1 to 128 characters	N/A
Index	Specify the index of this rule.	1 to 512	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mode	Specify which NAT mode to use for this rule. 1-to-1: 1-to-1 NAT maps one public IP address to one private IP address. N-to-1: N-to-1 NAT maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address. PAT: Port Address Translation (PAT) maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address using different port numbers. Advance: Allows you to set up an advanced NAT rule.	1-to-1 / N-to-1 / PAT / Advance	1-to-1
Protocol	Select which protocols this rule will include.	ICMP / TCP / UDP	N/A
NAT Loopback	Enable or disable NAT Loopback. NAT loopback allows devices on a private network to access a server or service hosted on the same network using the public IP address of the network.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Double NAT	Enable or disable Double NAT. Double NAT enables you to use 1-to-1 rules to facilitate two-way communication.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Original Packet (Condition)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Incoming Interface	Select the interface to use for this rule.	Drop-down list of interfaces	LAN
Destination Port	Specify the destination port this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	Any

Translated Packet (Action)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP	Specify the destination IP to translate to on the internal network.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination Port	Specify the port number to translate to on the internal network.	1 to 65535	0

Create Index - Advance

If **Advance** is selected for the **Mode**, these settings will appear. This mode allows you to set up an advanced NAT rule, which can provide you with more flexibility for NAT configuration.

Note

Please keep these in mind before setting up an advanced NAT rule:

- When using a Range, please ensure that the corresponding Range values are consistent.
- NAT Advance Mode only allows for a single range to be entered and does not support configuring multiple ranges in the same rule.
- Port settings can only be configured when the Protocol includes either TCP or UDP.
- If a Translated Destination IP is used, the Outgoing Interface cannot be configured.
- If the Translated Source IP is set to Dynamic, the Translated Source Port cannot be set.

Create Index 8

Status *
Enabled

Description 0 / 128

Index *
8

1 - 512

Mode
Advance

Protocol

Original Packet (Condition)

Incoming Interface
LAN

Source IP Mapping Type
Range

Source IP: Start * Source IP: End *
0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Source Port Mapping Type
Range

Source Port: Start * Source Port: End *
0 0

1 - 65535 1 - 65535

Destination IP Mapping Type
Range

Destination IP: Start * Destination IP: End *
0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Destination Port Mapping Type
Range

Destination Port: Start * Destination Port: End *
0 0

1 - 65535 1 - 65535

Translated Packet (Action)

Outgoing Interface
Any

Source IP Mapping Type
Range

Source IP: Start * Source IP: End *
0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Source Port Mapping Type
Range

Source Port: Start * Source Port: End *
0 0

1 - 65535 1 - 65535

Destination IP Mapping Type
Range

Destination IP: Start * Destination IP: End *
0.0.0.0 0.0.0.0

Destination Port Mapping Type
Range

Destination Port: Start * Destination Port: End *
0 0

1 - 65535 1 - 65535

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable this rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Description	Specify a name for this rule.	1 to 128 characters	N/A
Index	Specify the index of this rule.	1 to 512	N/A
Mode	Specify which NAT mode to use for this rule. 1-to-1: 1-to-1 NAT maps one public IP address to one private IP address. N-to-1: N-to-1 NAT maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address. PAT: Port Address Translation (PAT) maps multiple private IP addresses to one public IP address using different port numbers. Advance: Allows you to set up an advanced NAT rule.	1-to-1 / N-to-1 / PAT / Advance	1-to-1
Protocol	Select which protocols this rule will include.	ICMP / TCP / UDP	N/A

Original Packet (Condition)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Incoming Interface	Select the interface to use for this rule.	Drop-down list of interfaces	LAN
Source IP Mapping Type	Specify which source IP addresses will be handled for incoming packets. Any: This rule will apply to all source IPs. Single: This rule will apply to a single source IP for incoming packets. Range: This rule will apply to a range of source IPs for incoming packets. Subnet: This rule will apply to a source IP and subnet mask.	Any / Single / Range / Subnet	Any
Source IP (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Single or Subnet)	Specify the source IP this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Subnet Mask (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Subnet)	Specify the subnet this rule will apply to.	Valid subnet	24 (255.255.255.0)
Source IP: Start (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the source IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Source IP: End (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the source IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Source Port Mapping Type	Specify which source ports will be handled for incoming packets. Any: This rule will apply to all source ports. Single: This rule will apply to a single source port for incoming packets. Range: This rule will apply to a range of source ports for incoming packets.	Any / Single / Range	Any
Source Port (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the source port this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Source Port: Start (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the source port range this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Source Port: End (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the source port range this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Destination IP Mapping Type	Specify which destination IP addresses will be handled for incoming packets. Any: This rule will apply to all destination IPs. Single: This rule will apply to a single destination IP for incoming packets. Range: This rule will apply to a range of destination IPs for incoming packets. Subnet: This rule will apply to a destination IP and subnet mask.	Any / Single / Range / Subnet	Any

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Single or Subnet)	Specify the destination IP this rule will apply to. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If your host is directly connected to the device or connected through a L2 switch, and the original destination IP is in the hosts' subnet but different from the incoming interface IP, you may add the original destination IP as a secondary IP for the incoming interface so the device can receive and use NAT for traffic from the host.</p> <p>Refer to Network Configuration > Interface - Secondary IP for more information.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Subnet)	Specify the subnet this rule will apply to.	Valid subnet	24 (255.255.255.0)
Destination IP: Start (Only for Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: End (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination IP range this rule will apply to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination Port Mapping Type	Specify which destination ports will be handled for incoming packets. Any: This rule will apply to all destination ports. Single: This rule will apply to a single destination port for incoming packets. Range: This rule will apply to a range of destination ports for incoming packets.	Any / Single / Range	Any
Destination Port (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the destination port this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Destination Port: Start (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination port range this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP: End (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination port range this rule will apply to.	1 to 65535	N/A

Translated Packet (Action)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Outgoing Interface	Select the interface for the NAT rule.	Drop-down list of interfaces	Any
Source IP Mapping Type	Specify how to handle source IP translation for the internal network. Any: This rule will translate to all source IPs. Single: This rule will translate to a single source IP. Range: This rule will translate to a range of source IPs. Subnet: This rule will translate to a source IP and subnet mask. Dynamic:	Any / Single / Range / Subnet / Dynamic	Any
Source IP (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Single or Subnet)	Specify the source IP this rule will translate to. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If Source IP Mapping Type is Single, if the destination host for the desired traffic is directly connected to the device or connected through a L2 switch, and the translated source IP is in the hosts' subnet but different from the outgoing interface IP, you may add the translated source IP as a secondary IP for the outgoing interface so the device can receive and use NAT for traffic going to the destination host.</p> <p>Refer to Network Configuration > Interface - Secondary IP for more information.</p> </div>	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Subnet)	Specify the subnet this rule will translate to.	Valid subnet	24 (255.255.255.0)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Source IP: Start (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the source IP range this rule will translate to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Source IP: End (Only if Source IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the source IP range this rule will translate to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Source Port Mapping Type	Specify how to handle source port translation for the internal network. Any: This rule will translate to all source ports. Single: This rule will translate to a single source port. Range: This rule will translate to a range of source ports.	Any / Single / Range	Any
Source Port (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the source port this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Source Port: Start (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the source port range this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Source Port: End (Only if Source Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the source port range this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Destination IP Mapping Type	Specify how to handle destination IP address translation for the internal network. Any: This rule will translate to all destination IPs. Single: This rule will translate to a single destination IP. Range: This rule will translate to a range of destination IPs. Subnet: This rule will translate to a destination IP and subnet mask.	Any / Single / Range / Subnet	Any

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination IP (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Single or Subnet)	Specify the destination IP this rule will translate to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Subnet Mask (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Subnet)	Specify the subnet this rule will translate to.	Valid subnet	24 (255.255.255.0)
Destination IP: Start (Only for Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination IP range this rule will translate to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination IP: End (Only if Destination IP Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination IP range this rule will translate to.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Destination Port Mapping Type	Specify how to handle destination port translation for the internal network. Any: This rule will apply to all destination ports. Single: This rule will apply to a single destination port for incoming packets. Range: This rule will apply to a range of destination ports for incoming packets.	Any / Single / Range	Any
Destination Port (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Single)	Specify the destination port this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A
Destination Port: Start (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the start of the destination port range this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination Port: End (Only if Destination Port Mapping Type is Range)	Specify the end of the destination port range this rule will translate to.	1 to 65535	N/A

Object Management

Menu Path: Object Management

This page lets you use object-based firewall management to help protect your network on a granular level.

Object Management - User Privileges

Privileges to Object Management settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Object Management	R/W	R/W	R

You can create, modify, and edit the objects you need based on your security requirements. These objects are used when creating Layer 3-7 policies for the device's firewall.

In addition, objects allow for more efficient firewall rule management. A single object can be assigned to multiple rules and changes to the object will apply to all associated rules, removing the need to update individual policies one by one.

🔒 Limitations

You can create up to 512 objects.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Type	Details	References
<input type="checkbox"/>	MOXA_Test	IP Address and Subnet	10.0.0.1 - 10.0.0.10	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	MOXA_Test2	Industrial Application Service	DNP3	0
<input type="checkbox"/>	MOXA_Test3	Industrial Application Service	Modbus	0

Max: 512 Items per page: 50 1 - 3 of 3 |< < > >|

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| Name | Shows the name of the object. |
| Type | Shows the type of the object. |
| Details | Shows the settings for the object. These settings will vary depending on the object's Type . |
| References | Shows the number of times this object is referenced in firewall rules. |

Create Object

Menu Path: Object Management

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Object Management** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new object. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new object.

The available settings will vary depending on which **Object Type** is selected.

Create Object

Name *

0 / 32

Object Type *

CANCEL CREATE

Create Object - IP Address and Subnet

If **IP Address and Subnet** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name *
test_moxa
9 / 32

Object Type *
IP Address and Subnet

IP Type *

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type	<p>Select a type for the object.</p> <p>IP Address and Subnet: You can specify an IP address, a range of IP addresses, or a subnet.</p> <p>Network Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for common network services.</p> <p>Industrial Application Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for industrial communications and applications.</p> <p>User-defined Service: You can specify your own protocol and port combination.</p>	IP Address and Subnet / Network Service / Industrial Application Service / User-defined Service	N/A
IP Type	Select the type of IP address to use for the object.	Single IP / IP Range / Subnet	N/A
IP Address (If Single is selected for IP Type)	Specify the IP address to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
IP Address: Start (If IP Range is selected for IP Type)	Specify the start of the IP range to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address: End (If IP Range is selected for IP Type)	Specify the end of the IP range to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
Subnet (If Subnet is selected for IP Type)	Specify the IP address of the subnet to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
Subnet Mask (If Subnet is selected for IP Type)	Select the subnet mask to use for the object.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A

Create Object - Network Service

If **Network Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name *

0 / 32

Object Type

Network Service

Select Network Service(s)

- > Remote-Access
- > Remote-Desktop
- > Email
- > File-Transfer
- > Web-Access
- > Network-Service
- > Authentication
- > VOIP-and-Streaming
- > SQL-Server

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Object Type	<p>Select a type for the object.</p> <p>IP Address and Subnet: You can specify an IP address, a range of IP addresses, or a subnet.</p> <p>Network Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for common network services.</p> <p>Industrial Application Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for industrial communications and applications.</p> <p>User-defined Service: You can specify your own protocol and port combination.</p>	IP Address and Subnet / Network Service / Industrial Application Service / User-defined Service	N/A
Select Network Service(s)	Select a category of network services, or individual services to use for the object. You can select multiple options.	Remote-Access / Remote-Desktop / Email / File-Transfer / Web-Access / Network-Service / Authentication / VOIP-and-Streaming / SQL-Server	N/A
Remote-Access	This category includes protocols used for remote access to a device.	WINS (TCP 1512; UDP 1512) TELNET (TCP 23) SSH (TCP 22)	N/A
Remote-Desktop	This category includes protocols used by various remote desktop services.	PC-Anywhere (TCP 5631; UDP 5632) Chrome-Remote-Desktop (UDP 5222) AnyDesk (TCP 6568, 7070; UDP 50001 - 50003) Teamviewer (TCP 5938) RDP (TCP 3389) VNC (TCP 5900) X-WINDOW (TCP 6000 - 6063)	N/A
Email	This category includes protocols used for sending and receiving emails.	IMAP (TCP 143) IMAPS (TCP 993) POP3 (TCP 110) POP3S (TCP 995) SMTP (TCP 25) SMTPS (TCP 465)	N/A
File-Transfer	This category includes protocols used for different methods of file transfer.	FTP (TCP 21) FTPS (TCP 990) SFTP (TCP 115; UDP 115) TFTP (UDP 69) NFS (TCP 111, 2049; UDP 111, 2049) SAMBA (TCP 139) AFS3 (TCP 7000 - 7009; UDP 7000 - 7009) SMB (TCP 445)	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Web-Access	This category includes protocols used by web browsers.	HTTP (TCP 80) HTTPS (TCP 443)	N/A
Network-Service	This category includes protocols used by various network services.	BGP (TCP 179) DHCP (UDP 67) DHCP6 (UDP 546) DNS (TCP 53; UDP 53) NTP (TCP 123; UDP 123) ICMP-PING (ICMP Type Any Code Any) OSPF (IP Protocol 89) RIP (TCP 520) SNMP (TCP 161 - 162; UDP 161 - 162) SYSLOG (UDP 514)	N/A
Authentication	This category includes protocols used by authentication services.	LDAP (TCP 389; UDP 389) LDAPS (TCP 636; UDP 636) RADIUS (UDP 1812 - 1813) TACACS+ (TCP 49; UDP 49)	N/A
VOIP-and-Streaming	This category includes protocols used for VOIP calling and streaming video.	SIP (TCP 5060; UDP 5060) RSTP (TCP 554, 7070, 8554; UDP 554)	N/A
SQL-Server	This category includes protocols used for SQL servers.	MS-SQL (TCP 1433 - 1434) MYSQL (TCP 3306)	N/A

Create Object - Industrial Application Service

If **Industrial Application Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name *

0 / 32

Object Type

Industrial Application Service

Select Industrial Application Service(s)

- Modbus (TCP 502; UDP 502)
- DNP3 (TCP 20000)
- IEC-60870-5-104 (TCP 2404)
- IEC-61850-MMS (TCP 102)
- OPC-DA (TCP 135)
- OPC-UA (TCP 4840; UDP 4840)
- CIP-EtherNet/IP (TCP 44818; UDP 2222)
- Siemens-Step7 (TCP 102)
- Moxa-RealCOM (TCP 950 - 981)
- Moxa-MXview-Request (TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404)

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Object Type	<p>Select a type for the object.</p> <p>IP Address and Subnet: You can specify an IP address, a range of IP addresses, or a subnet.</p> <p>Network Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for common network services.</p> <p>Industrial Application Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for industrial communications and applications.</p> <p>User-defined Service: You can specify your own protocol and port combination.</p>	IP Address and Subnet / Network Service / Industrial Application Service / User-defined Service	N/A
Select Industrial Application Service(s)	Select a category of network services, or individual services to use for the object. You can select multiple options.	Modbus (TCP 502; UDP 502) DNP3 (TCP 20000) IEC-60870-5-104 (TCP 2404) IEC-61850-MMS (TCP 102) OPC-DA (TCP 135) OPC-UA (TCP 4840; UDP 4840) CIP-EtherNet/IP (TCP 44818; UDP 2222) Siemens-Step7 (TCP 102) Moxa-RealCOM (TCP 950 - 981) Moxa-MXview-Request (TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404)	N/A

Create Object - User-defined Service

If **User-defined Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name *
test_moxa
9 / 32

Object Type *
IP Address and Subnet

IP Type *

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type	Select a type for the object. IP Address and Subnet: You can specify an IP address, a range of IP addresses, or a subnet. Network Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for common network services. Industrial Application Service: You can select from a list of protocol and port combinations used for industrial communications and applications. User-defined Service: You can specify your own protocol and port combination.	IP Address and Subnet / Network Service / Industrial Application Service / User-defined Service	N/A
IP Protocol	Select the IP protocols to use for the object.	TCP / UDP / TCP and UDP / ICMP Custom IP Protocol	N/A
Service Port Type (If TCP, UDP, or TCP and UDP is selected for IP Protocol)	Select how to define ports for the object. Any: All ports will be included. Single TCP and UDP Port: Specify a single port to include. TCP and UDP Port Range: Specify a range of ports to include.	Any / Single TCP and UDP Port / TCP and UDP Port Range	

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Port (If Single TCP and UDP Port is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify a port to include.	1 to 65535	N/A
Port: Start (If TCP and UDP Port Range is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify the start of the port range to use for the object.	1 to 65535	N/A
Port: End (If TCP and UDP Port Range is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify the end of the port range to use for the object.	1 to 65535	N/A
ICMP Type (Decimal) (If ICMP is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the ICMP type in decimal form to use for the object. Leave this blank to allow all ICMP types to be included.	Blank, 0 to 255	N/A
ICMP Code (Decimal) (If ICMP is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the ICMP code in decimal form to use for the object. Leave this blank to allow all ICMP codes to be included.	Blank, 0 to 255	N/A
IP Protocol (Decimal) (If Custom IP Protocol is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the IP protocol in decimal form to use for the object.	0 to 255	N/A

Edit Object

Menu Path: Object Management

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an object on the **Object Management** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing object. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Available settings will vary depending on which **Object Type** the object uses.

Note

When editing an object, you cannot change its Object Type.

Edit Object - IP Address and Subnet

If **IP Address and Subnet** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Object". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Name ***: A text input field containing "test" with a character count "4 / 32" below it.
- Object Type**: A dropdown menu currently showing "IP Address and Subnet".
- IP Type ***: A dropdown menu currently showing "Single IP".
- IP Address ***: An empty text input field.
- At the bottom right, there are two buttons: "CANCEL" and "APPLY".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type (View-only)	Shows the type for the object. This setting cannot be changed when editing an object.	IP Address and Subnet	IP Address and Subnet
IP Type	Select the type of IP address to use for the object.	Single IP / IP Range / Subnet	N/A
IP Address (If Single is selected for IP Type)	Specify the IP address to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address: Start (If IP Range is selected for IP Type)	Specify the start of the IP range to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
IP Address: End (If IP Range is selected for IP Type)	Specify the end of the IP range to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
Subnet (If Subnet is selected for IP Type)	Specify the IP address of the subnet to use for the object.	Valid IP Address	N/A
Subnet Mask (If Subnet is selected for IP Type)	Select the subnet mask to use for the object.	Drop-down list of subnet masks	N/A

Edit Object - Network Service

If **Network Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name *

0 / 32

Object Type

Network Service

Select Network Service(s)

- > Remote-Access
- > Remote-Desktop
- > Email
- > File-Transfer
- > Web-Access
- > Network-Service
- > Authentication
- > VOIP-and-Streaming
- > SQL-Server

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type (View-only)	Shows the type for the object. This setting cannot be changed when editing an object.	Network Service	Network Service
Select Network Service(s)	Select a category of network services, or individual services to use for the object. You can select multiple options.	Remote-Access / Remote-Desktop / Email / File-Transfer / Web-Access / Network-Service / Authentication / VOIP-and-Streaming / SQL-Server	N/A
Remote-Access	This category includes protocols used for remote access to a device.	WINS (TCP 1512; UDP 1512) TELNET (TCP 23) SSH (TCP 22)	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Remote-Desktop	This category includes protocols used by various remote desktop services.	PC-Anywhere (TCP 5631; UDP 5632) Chrome-Remote-Desktop (UDP 5222) AnyDesk (TCP 6568, 7070; UDP 50001 - 50003) Teamviewer (TCP 5938) RDP (TCP 3389) VNC (TCP 5900) X-WINDOW (TCP 6000 - 6063)	N/A
Email	This category includes protocols used for sending and receiving emails.	IMAP (TCP 143) IMAPS (TCP 993) POP3 (TCP 110) POP3S (TCP 995) SMTP (TCP 25) SMTPS (TCP 465)	N/A
File-Transfer	This category includes protocols used for different methods of file transfer.	FTP (TCP 21) FTPS (TCP 990) SFTP (TCP 115; UDP 115) TFTP (UDP 69) NFS (TCP 111, 2049; UDP 111, 2049) SAMBA (TCP 139) AFS3 (TCP 7000 - 7009; UDP 7000 - 7009) SMB (TCP 445)	N/A
Web-Access	This category includes protocols used by web browsers.	HTTP (TCP 80) HTTPS (TCP 443)	N/A
Network-Service	This category includes protocols used by various network services.	BGP (TCP 179) DHCP (UDP 67) DHCP6 (UDP 546) DNS (TCP 53; UDP 53) NTP (TCP 123; UDP 123) ICMP-PING (ICMP Type Any Code Any) OSPF (IP Protocol 89) RIP (TCP 520) SNMP (TCP 161 - 162; UDP 161 - 162) SYSLOG (UDP 514)	N/A
Authentication	This category includes protocols used by authentication services.	LDAP (TCP 389; UDP 389) LDAPS (TCP 636; UDP 636) RADIUS (UDP 1812 - 1813) TACACS+ (TCP 49; UDP 49)	N/A
VOIP-and-Streaming	This category includes protocols used for VOIP calling and streaming video.	SIP (TCP 5060; UDP 5060) RSTP (TCP 554, 7070, 8554; UDP 554)	N/A
SQL-Server	This category includes protocols used for SQL servers.	MS-SQL (TCP 1433 - 1434) MYSQL (TCP 3306)	N/A

Edit Object - Industrial Application Service

If **Industrial Application Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type (View-only)	Shows the type for the object. This setting cannot be changed when editing an object.	Industrial Application Service	Industrial Application Service

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Select Industrial Application Service(s)	Select a category of network services, or individual services to use for the object. You can select multiple options.	Modbus (TCP 502; UDP 502) DNP3 (TCP 20000) IEC-60870-5-104 (TCP 2404) IEC-61850-MMS (TCP 102) OPC-DA (TCP 135) OPC-UA (TCP 4840; UDP 4840) CIP-EtherNet/IP (TCP 44818; UDP 2222) Siemens-Step7 (TCP 102) Moxa-RealCOM (TCP 950 - 981) Moxa-MXview-Request (TCP 161, 162, 443, 4000; UDP 4000, 40404)	N/A

Edit Object - User-defined Service

If **User-defined Service** is selected for the **Object Type**, these settings will appear.

Edit Object

Name *
test-user
9 / 32

Object Type
User-defined Service ▼

IP Protocol *
TCP ▼

Service Port Type *
TCP and UDP Port R... ▼

Port: Start * Port: End *
1 - 65535 1 - 65535


CANCEL
APPLY

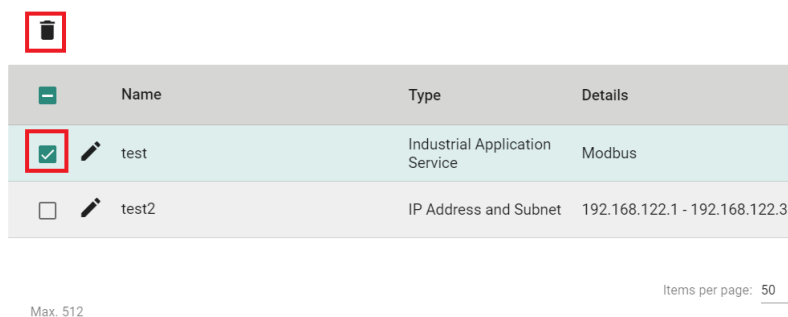
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Object Type (View-only)	Shows the type for the object. This setting cannot be changed when editing an object.	User-defined Service	User-defined Service
IP Protocol	Select the IP protocols to use for the object.	TCP / UDP / TCP and UDP / ICMP Custom IP Protocol	N/A
Service Port Type (If TCP, UDP, or TCP and UDP is selected for IP Protocol)	Select how to define ports for the object. Any: All ports will be included. Single TCP and UDP Port: Specify a single port to include. TCP and UDP Port Range: Specify a range of ports to include.	Any / Single TCP and UDP Port / TCP and UDP Port Range	
Port (If Single TCP and UDP Port is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify a port to include.	1 to 65535	N/A
Port: Start (If TCP and UDP Port Range is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify the start of the port range to use for the object.	1 to 65535	N/A
Port: End (If TCP and UDP Port Range is selected for Service Port Type)	Specify the end of the port range to use for the object.	1 to 65535	N/A
ICMP Type (Decimal) (If ICMP is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the ICMP type in decimal form to use for the object. Leave this blank to allow all ICMP types to be included.	Blank, 0 to 255	N/A
ICMP Code (Decimal) (If ICMP is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the ICMP code in decimal form to use for the object. Leave this blank to allow all ICMP codes to be included.	Blank, 0 to 255	N/A




UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Protocol (Decimal) (If Custom IP Protocol is selected for IP Protocol)	Specify the IP protocol in decimal form to use for the object.	0 to 255	N/A

Delete Object

Menu Path: Object Management

You can delete an object by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



	Name	Type	Details
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	 test	Industrial Application Service	Modbus
<input type="checkbox"/>	 test2	IP Address and Subnet	192.168.122.1 - 192.168.122.3

Max. 512 Items per page: 50

Firewall

Menu Path: Firewall

The Firewall settings area lets you configure settings related to your device's firewall.

This settings area includes these sections:

- Layer 2 Policy
- Layer 3-7 Policy
- Malformed Packets
- Session Control
- DoS Policy
- Advanced Protection

Network Configuration - User Privileges

Privileges to Firewall settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 - 7 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Malformed Packets	R/W	R/W	R
Session Control	R/W	R/W	R
DoS Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Advanced Protection			
Dashboard	R/W	R/W	-
Configuration	R/W	R/W	-
Protocol Filter Policy	R/W	R/W	-
ADP	R/W	R/W	-
IPS	R/W	R/W	-

Layer 2 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 2 Policy

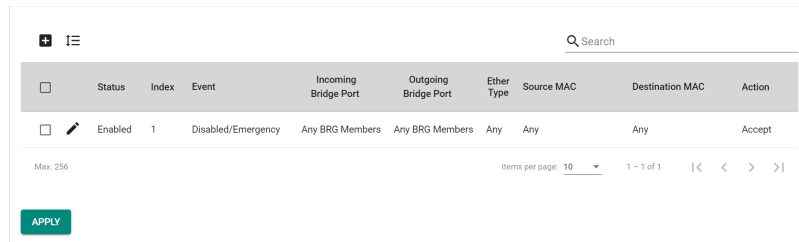
This page lets you configure advanced Layer 2 policies for your device's firewall. Layer 2 firewall policies can filter packets from bridge ports and have a higher priority than Layer 3 policies.

Note

Packets are checked by using the policy with the lowest index number first. If the packet matches the policy, the defined action will be taken and the remaining rules will not be run for the packet. If the packet does not match the policy, the next policy will be used.

Limitations

You can configure up to 256 Layer 2 policies.



The screenshot shows a table with the following columns: Status, Index, Event, Incoming Bridge Port, Outgoing Bridge Port, Ether Type, Source MAC, Destination MAC, and Action. The first row of data shows: Status: Enabled, Index: 1, Event: Disabled/Emergency, Incoming Bridge Port: Any BRG Members, Outgoing Bridge Port: Any BRG Members, Ether Type: Any, Source MAC: Any, Destination MAC: Any, Action: Accept. The table includes a search bar at the top right, a pagination control showing 'Items per page: 10' and '1 - 1 of 1', and an 'APPLY' button at the bottom left.

UI Setting

Description

Status	Shows whether the policy is enabled or disabled.
Index	Shows the index of the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.
Event	Shows whether logging is enabled or disabled for the event and the severity assigned to the event.
Incoming Bridge Port	Shows the incoming bridge port for the policy.
Outgoing Bridge Port	Shows the outgoing bridge port for the policy.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that the policy applies to.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC the policy applies to.
Destination MAC	Shows the destination MAC the policy applies to.
Action	Shows the action that will be taken for applicable traffic.

Add Layer 2 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 2 Policy

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Firewall > Layer 2 Policy** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new policy. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new policy.

Add Layer 2 Policy

Status *
Enabled

Index *
2

Log *
Enabled

Severity *
Severity *

Log Destination
Log Destination

Incoming Bridge Port *
Any

Outgoing Bridge Port *
Any

EtherType Options *
Any

Action *
Accept

Source MAC Type *
Any

Destination MAC Type *
Any

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 256	Last used index plus 1
Log	Enable or disable firewall event logging for this policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log Destination	<p>Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.</p> <p>Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information.</p> <p>Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.</p>	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A
Incoming Bridge Port	Select the incoming bridge port for this policy.	Any	Any
Outgoing Bridge Port	Select the outgoing bridge port for this policy.	Any	Any
EtherType Options	Select the Layer 2 EtherType protocol that this policy should apply to. You can select a type from the drop-down list, or you can select Manual to specify one manually. Refer to Appendix > EtherTypes for Layer 2 for more information about common EtherTypes.	Any / Manual / IPv4 / X25 / ARP / Frame Relay ARP / G8BPQ AX.25 Ethernet Packet / DEC Assigned proto / DEC DNA Dump/Load / DEC DNA Remote Console / DEC DNA Routing / DEC LAT / DEC Diagnostics / DEC Customer use / DEC Systems Comms Arch / Trans Ether Bridging / Raw Frame Relay / Appletalk AARP / Appletalk / 802.1Q Virtual LAN tagged frame / Novell IPX / NetBEUI / IP version 6 / PPP / MultiProtocol over ATM / PPPoE discovery messages / PPPoE session messages / Frame-based ATM Transport over Ethernet / Loopback	Any
Manual (if EtherType Options is anything other than Any)	<p>If EtherType Options is set to Manual, enter the EtherType value in hexadecimal this policy should apply to.</p> <p>If EtherType Options is set to a predefined EtherType, its value will be shown here and cannot be changed.</p>	Valid EtherType hex code	N/A, EtherType value for the selected EtherType

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the policy. Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.	Accept / Drop	Accept
Source MAC Type	Select which source MAC addresses to check with this policy. Any: The firewall will check packets coming from all source MAC addresses. Single: The firewall will only check packets coming from a specified source MAC address.	Any / Single	Any
Destination MAC Type	Select which destination MAC addresses to check with this policy. Any: The firewall will check packets going to all destination MAC addresses. Single: The firewall will only check packets going to a specific destination MAC address.	Any / Single	Any

Edit Layer 2 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 2 Policy

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a policy on the **Firewall > Layer 2 Policy** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing policy. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Layer 2 Policy

Status *
Enabled

Index *
1

1 - 1

Log *
Disabled

Severity *
Emergency

Log Destination

Incoming Bridge Port *
Any

Outgoing Bridge Port *
Any

EtherType Options *
IPv4

EtherType Value (Hexadecimal)
0x0800

Action *
Accept

Source MAC Type *
Any

Destination MAC Type *
Any

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 256	Last used index plus 1
Log	Enable or disable firewall event logging for this policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A

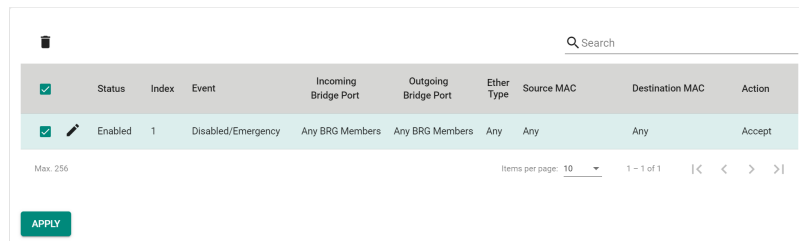
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log Destination	<p>Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.</p> <p>Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information.</p> <p>Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.</p>	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A
Incoming Bridge Port	Select the incoming bridge port for this policy.	Any	Any
Outgoing Bridge Port	Select the outgoing bridge port for this policy.	Any	Any
EtherType Options	Select the Layer 2 EtherType protocol that this policy should apply to. You can select a type from the drop-down list, or you can select Manual to specify one manually. Refer to Appendix > EtherTypes for Layer 2 for more information about common EtherTypes.	Any / Manual / IPv4 / X25 / ARP / Frame Relay ARP / G8BPQ AX.25 Ethernet Packet / DEC Assigned proto / DEC DNA Dump/Load / DEC DNA Remote Console / DEC DNA Routing / DEC LAT / DEC Diagnostics / DEC Customer use / DEC Systems Comms Arch / Trans Ether Bridging / Raw Frame Relay / Appletalk AARP / Appletalk / 802.1Q Virtual LAN tagged frame / Novell IPX / NetBEUI / IP version 6 / PPP / MultiProtocol over ATM / PPPoE discovery messages / PPPoE session messages / Frame-based ATM Transport over Ethernet / Loopback	Any
Manual (if EtherType Options is anything other than Any)	<p>If EtherType Options is set to Manual, enter the EtherType value in hexadecimal this policy should apply to.</p> <p>If EtherType Options is set to a predefined EtherType, its value will be shown here and cannot be changed.</p>	Valid EtherType hex code	N/A, EtherType value for the selected EtherType

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the policy. Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.	Accept / Drop	Accept
Source MAC Type	Select which source MAC addresses to check with this policy. Any: The firewall will check packets coming from all source MAC addresses. Single: The firewall will only check packets coming from a specified source MAC address.	Any / Single	Any
Destination MAC Type	Select which destination MAC addresses to check with this policy. Any: The firewall will check packets going to all destination MAC addresses. Single: The firewall will only check packets going to a specific destination MAC address.	Any / Single	Any

Delete Layer 2 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 2 Policy

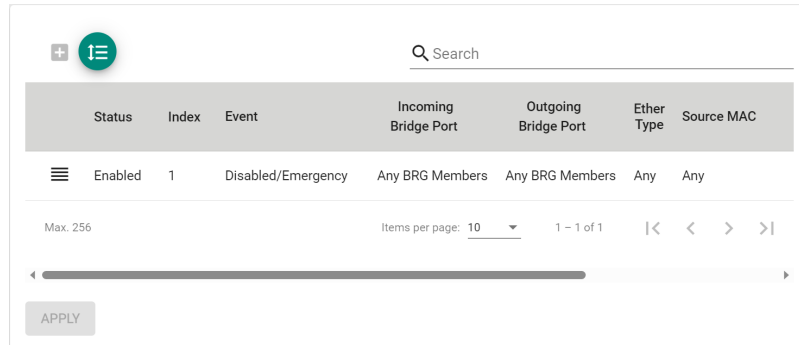
You can delete a policy by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.



Reorder Layer 2 Policies

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 2 Policy

You can reorder policies by clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (↑≡) icon, moving the entries into the order you want, then clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (↑≡) icon again. Reordering policies affects the order used to process the policies.



The screenshot shows a web interface for policy configuration. At the top left is a green circular icon with a plus sign and a list icon. To its right is a search bar labeled 'Search'. Below these is a table with the following columns: Status, Index, Event, Incoming Bridge Port, Outgoing Bridge Port, Ether Type, and Source MAC. The first row of data shows: Enabled, 1, Disabled/Emergency, Any BRG Members, Any BRG Members, Any, Any. Below the table, there is a pagination section with 'Max. 256', 'Items per page: 10', and '1 - 1 of 1'. There are also navigation arrows and a horizontal scrollbar. At the bottom left of the interface is a button labeled 'APPLY'.

Layer 3-7 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy

This page lets you configure Layer 3-7 policies to secure and control network traffic. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

Packets are checked by using the policy with the lowest index number first. If the packet matches the policy, the defined action will be taken and the remaining rules will not be run for the packet. If the packet does not match the policy, the next policy will be used.

Limitations

You can configure up to 1024 Layer 3-7 policies.

Layer 3-7 Policy Settings

Global Policy Settings

Status: Disabled Default Action: Allow All

Global Policy Event Settings

Log: Enabled

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable global policy enforcement. The global policy allows you to set a Default Action for traffic that doesn't match any of the configured firewall rules.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Default Action	Select what the default action should be for traffic that doesn't match any of the configured firewall rules. Allow All: Allow all network traffic that does not match any rule. Deny All: Block all network traffic that does not match any rule.	Allow All / Deny All	Deny All
Log	Enable or disable global policy event logging. This will allow event logging for actions taken due to the global policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

Layer 3-7 Policy List

Search

<input type="checkbox"/>	Index	Status	Name	Event	Incoming Interface	Outgoing Interface	Filter Mode	Source Address	Source Port	Destination Address	Destination Port or Protocol	Action	Description
Max: 1024 Items per page: 50 0 of 0													


APPLY

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.
Status	Shows whether the policy is enabled or disabled.
Name	Shows the name of the policy.
Event	Shows whether logging is enabled or disabled for the event and the severity assigned to the event.

UI Setting	Description
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for the policy.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the outgoing interface for the policy.
Filter Mode	Shows the filter mode used for the policy.
Source Address	Shows the source IP addresses the policy applies to.
Source Port	Shows the source ports the policy applies to.
Destination Address	Shows the destination IP addresses the policy applies to.
Destination Port or Protocol	Shows the destination ports or protocols the policy applies to.
Action	Shows the action that will be taken for applicable traffic.
Description	Shows the description of the policy.

Create Layer 3-7 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new policy. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new policy.

Create Layer 3-7 Policy

Index *
1

1 - 1024

Status *
Enabled

Name *
0 / 32

Description
0 / 128

Log *
Disabled

Severity *
Warning

Log Destination
Local Storage

Incoming Interface *
Any

Outgoing Interface *
Any

Action *
Allow

Filter Mode *
IP and Port Filtering

Source IP Address *
Any

Source Port *
Any



Destination IP Address *
Any

Destination Port or Protocol *
Any

CANCEL

CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 1024	Last used index plus 1
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Specify a name for the policy.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Description	Specify a description for the policy.	0 to 128 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log	Enable or disable firewall event logging for this policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to Appendix > Severity for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A
Log Destination	Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options. Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information. Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information. Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A
Incoming Interface	Select the incoming interface for this policy. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.</p> </div>	Any / Drop-down list of interfaces	Any
Outgoing Interface	Select the outgoing interface for this policy. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.</p> </div>	Any / Drop-down list of interfaces	Any
Action	Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the policy. Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.	Accept / Drop	Accept

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Filter Mode	Select the filter mode to use for packet filtering. IP and Port Filtering: The policy will filter based on IP address and port. IP and Source MAC Binding: The policy will filter based on IP address and will also check the source MAC address. Source MAC Filtering: The policy will filter based on source MAC address.	IP and Port Filtering / IP and Source MAC Binding / Source MAC Filtering	IP and Port Filtering
Source IP Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering or IP and Source MAC Binding)	Select the source IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all source IP addresses, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	Any
Source Port (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	Select the source ports this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all source ports, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new User-defined Service object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of port-based User-defined Service objects	Any
Source MAC Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Source MAC Binding or Source MAC Filtering)	Specify the source MAC address this policy will apply to.	Valid MAC address	N/A
Destination IP Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	Select the destination IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check all traffic going to any destination IP address, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	Any
Destination Port or Protocol (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	Select the destination ports or protocol this policy will apply to. Select Any to check all traffic going to any destination port or protocol, or select a pre-defined service or object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new Network Service, Industrial Application Service, or User-defined Service object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of Network Service, Industrial Application Service, and port-based User-defined Service objects	Any

Edit Layer 3-7 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a policy on the **Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing policy. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Layer 3-7 Policy

Index *
1
1 - 1024

Status *
Enabled

Name *
TestPolicy
10 / 32

Description
0 / 128

Log *
Disabled

Severity *
Warning

Log Destination
Local Storage

Incoming Interface *
Any

Outgoing Interface *
Any

Action *
Allow

Filter Mode *
IP and Port Filtering

Source IP Address *
Any

Source Port *
Any

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 1024	Last used index plus 1
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Specify a name for the policy.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Description	Specify a description for the policy.	0 to 128 characters	N/A
Log	Enable or disable firewall event logging for this policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to Appendix > Severity for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A
Log Destination	Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options. Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information. Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information. Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A
Incoming Interface	Select the incoming interface for this policy. Note Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.	Any / Drop-down list of interfaces	Any
Outgoing Interface	Select the outgoing interface for this policy. Note Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.	Any / Drop-down list of interfaces	Any

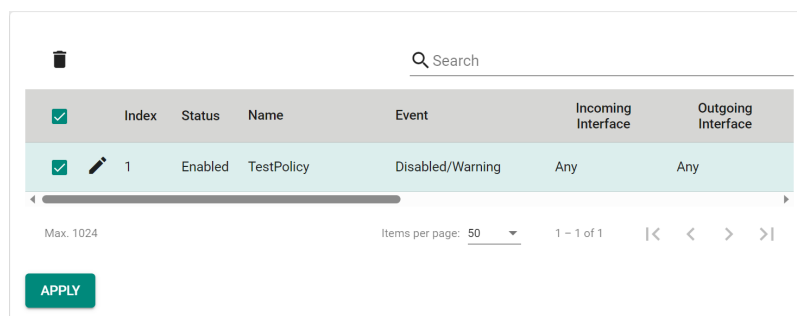
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	<p>Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy.</p> <p>Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the policy.</p> <p>Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.</p>	Accept / Drop	Accept
Filter Mode	<p>Select the filter mode to use for packet filtering.</p> <p>IP and Port Filtering: The policy will filter based on IP address and port.</p> <p>IP and Source MAC Binding: The policy will filter based on IP address and will also check the source MAC address.</p> <p>Source MAC Filtering: The policy will filter based on source MAC address.</p>	IP and Port Filtering / IP and Source MAC Binding / Source MAC Filtering	IP and Port Filtering
Source IP Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering or IP and Source MAC Binding)	<p>Select the source IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all source IP addresses, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object.</p> <p>Refer to Create Object for more information.</p>	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	Any
Source Port (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	<p>Select the source ports this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all source ports, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new User-defined Service object.</p> <p>Refer to Create Object for more information.</p>	Any / Drop-down list of port-based User-defined Service objects	Any
Source MAC Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Source MAC Binding or Source MAC Filtering)	<p>Specify the source MAC address this policy will apply to.</p>	Valid MAC address	N/A
Destination IP Address (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	<p>Select the destination IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check all traffic going to any destination IP address, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object.</p> <p>Refer to Create Object for more information.</p>	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	Any

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination Port or Protocol (if Filter Mode is IP and Port Filtering)	Select the destination ports or protocol this policy will apply to. Select Any to check all traffic going to any destination port or protocol, or select a pre-defined service or object. You can also click the Add (+) icon to create a new Network Service, Industrial Application Service, or User-defined Service object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of Network Service, Industrial Application Service, and port-based User-defined Service objects	Any

Delete Layer 3-7 Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy

You can delete a policy by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.



Reorder Layer 3-7 Policies

Menu Path: Firewall > Layer 3-7 Policy

You can reorder policies by clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (⌵) icon, moving the entries into the order you want, then clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (⌶) icon again.

Reordering policies affects the order used to process the policies.

Index	Status	Name	Event	Incoming Interface	Outgoing Interface	Filter
1	Enabled	Test	Disabled/Warning	Any	Any	IP and
2	Enabled	BasicFilter	Disabled/Warning	Any	Any	IP and

Max. 1024 Items per page: 50 1 - 2 of 2 << < > >>

APPLY

Malformed Packets

Menu Path: Firewall > Malformed Packets

This page lets you configure the Malformed Packets feature, which enables the device to record event logs with a user-specified severity whenever malformed packets are dropped by the system. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Malformed Packets

Status *
Disabled

Severity *
Emergency Log Destination

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable recording an event when malformed packets are dropped.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Emergency

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log Destination	<p>Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.</p> <p>Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information.</p> <p>Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.</p>	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A

Session Control

Menu Path: Firewall > Session Control

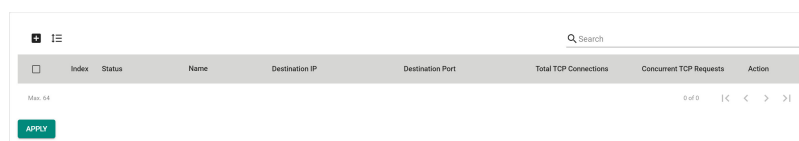
This page lets you configure session control policies to help protect backend hosts or services and avoid system abnormalities. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

If a TCP connection is successfully established, but no data is sent, the connection will be released after 8 seconds. If the interval between the last data transmission for the connection exceeds 300 seconds, the connection will also be released.

Limitations

You can configure up to 64 session control policies.



UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.
Status	Shows whether the policy is enabled or disabled.

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the policy.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP addresses the policy applies to.
Destination Port	Shows the destination ports the policy applies to.
Total TCP Connections	Shows the total number of TCP connections this policy allows.
Concurrent TCP Connections	Shows the number of concurrent TCP connections this policy allows.
Action	Shows the action that will be taken for applicable traffic.

Create Session Control Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Session Control

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Firewall > Session Control** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new policy. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new policy.

Note

IP Address and Port cannot both be set to Any.

Note

At least one TCP Connection Limitation must be defined.

Create Session Control Policy

Index *
 1
1 - 64

Status *
 Enabled

Name *
0 / 32

Severity *
 Warning

Log Destination
 Local Storage

Action *
 Drop

TCP Destination *

IP Address * +

Port * +

TCP Connection Limitation * i



Total TCP Connections
1 - 9000 connections

Concurrent TCP Reques...
1 - 512 connections/s

CANCEL


CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 64	Last used index plus 1
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Specify a name for the policy.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log Destination	<p>Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information.</p> <p>Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.</p> <p>Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.</p>	Syslog / Trap / Local Storage	N/A
Action	<p>Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy.</p> <p>Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the policy.</p> <p>Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.</p>	Monitor / Drop	Drop
IP Address	<p>Select the IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all IP addresses, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add () icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object.</p> <p>Refer to Create Object for more information.</p>	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	N/A
Port	<p>Select the ports this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all ports, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add () icon to create a new User-defined Service object.</p> <p>Refer to Create Object for more information.</p>	Any / Drop-down list of port-based User-defined Service objects	N/A
Total TCP Connection	Specify the total allowed number of TCP connections.	1 to 9000	N/A
Concurrent TCP Request	Specify the total allowed number of concurrent TCP requests.	1 to 512	N/A

Edit Session Control Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Session Control

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an policy on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing policy. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

IP Address and Port cannot both be set to Any.

Note

At least one TCP Connection Limitation must be defined.

Edit Session Control Policy

Index *
1
1 - 64

Status *
Enabled

Name *
Test
4 / 32

Severity *
Warning

Log Destination
Local Storage

Action *
Drop

TCP Destination *
IP Address *
test



Port *
Any

TCP Connection Limitation *
Total TCP Connections
50
1 - 9000 connections

Concurrent TCP Reques...
1 - 512 connections/s

CANCEL APPLY

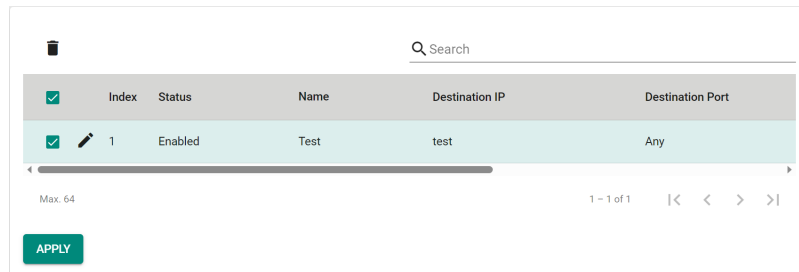
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Specify the index number for the policy. The index determines the order for processing policies.	1 to 64	Last used index plus 1

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Specify a name for the policy.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Severity	Select the severity level to assign events for this policy. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	N/A
Log Destination	Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options. Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information. Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information. Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.	Syslog / Trap / Local Storage	N/A
Action	Select the action the firewall should take for traffic that matches this policy. Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the policy. Drop: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy.	Monitor / Drop	Drop
IP Address	Select the IP addresses this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all IP addresses, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add () icon to create a new IP Address and Subnet object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of IP Address and Subnet objects	N/A
Port	Select the ports this policy will apply to. Select Any to check traffic from all ports, or select a pre-defined object. You can also click the Add () icon to create a new User-defined Service object. Refer to Create Object for more information.	Any / Drop-down list of port-based User-defined Service objects	N/A
Total TCP Connection	Specify the total allowed number of TCP connections.	1 to 9000	N/A
Concurrent TCP Request	Specify the total allowed number of concurrent TCP requests.	1 to 512	N/A

Delete Session Control Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Session Control

You can delete a policy by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.

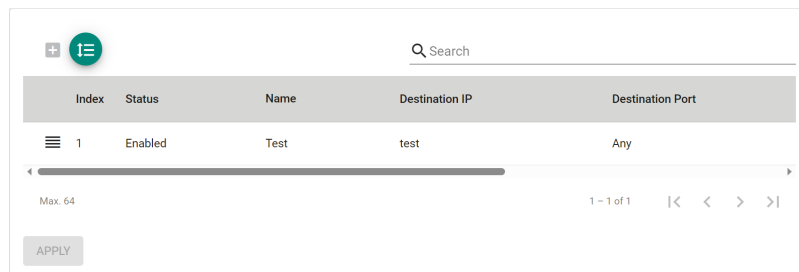


Reorder Session Control Policies

Menu Path: Firewall > Session Control

You can reorder policies by clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (⌄) icon, moving the entries into the order you want, then clicking the **Reorder Priorities** (⌄) icon again.

Reordering policies affects the order used to process the policies.



DoS Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > DoS Policy

This page lets you configure Denial of Service (DoS) protection features. You can configure different DoS functions for detecting abnormal packet formats or traffic flows, allowing your device to drop packets when it detects an abnormal packet format or identifies unusual traffic conditions.

DoS Log Settings

DoS Log Settings

Log * Severity *

Disabled Emergency Log Destination

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log	Enable or disable DoS event logs.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign to DoS-related events. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Emergency
Log Destination	Specify where to send firewall event logs. You can select multiple options. Syslog: Firewall event logs will be sent to a syslog server. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information. Trap: Firewall event notifications will be sent to a trap server. Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information. Local Storage: Firewall event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A

DoS Settings

DoS Settings

All

Session SYN Protection

TCP Sessions Without SYN i

Port Scan Protection

Null Scan

Xmas Scan

NMAP-Xmas Scan

SYN/FIN Scan

FIN Scan

NMAP-ID Scan

SYN/RST Scan

Flood Protection

ICMP-Flood

Limit

1000

1 - 4000 pkt/s

SYN-Flood

Limit

1000

1 - 4000 pkt/s

ARP-Flood

Limit

1000

1 - 2000 pkt/s

UDP-Flood

Limit

2000

1 - 8000 pkt/s

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
DoS Settings	Toggle all DoS protection methods on or off.	All	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Session SYN Protection	<p>Enable or disable session SYN protection methods.</p> <p>TCP Sessions Without SYN: When enabled, this function will verify the SYN state within the TCP flag when establishing TCP sessions.</p> <p>If the SYN tag is missing in the initial packet, the system will drop the packet and block the connection. Running TCP sessions will be re-established to perform the check.</p> <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p>⚠ Warning</p> <p>When NAT is enabled for asymmetric network architectures, it is strongly advised to keep TCP Sessions Without SYN disabled to avoid unexpected disconnections.</p> </div>	TCP Sessions Without SYN	Checked for all methods
Port Scan Protection	<p>Enable or disable port-scan protection methods.</p>	Null Scan / Xmas Scan / NMAP-Xmas Scan / SYN/FIN Scan / FIN Scan / NMAP-ID Scan / SYN/RST Scan	Enabled for all methods
Flood Protection	<p>Enable or disable flood protection methods. When enabling a protection method, specify the limit in packets/second that will trigger the corresponding flood protection.</p> <div style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc;"> <p>✍ Note</p> <p>If Accept All LAN Port Connections is enabled in Trusted Access, Flood Protection will be disabled.</p> <p>Refer to Security > Device Security > Trusted Access for more information.</p> </div> <div style="background-color: #e0e0e0; padding: 10px; border: 1px solid #ccc; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>✍ Note</p> <p>For Flood Protection, each interface has an independent limit which does not affect the limits of other interfaces.</p> </div>	ICMP-Flood (1 to 4000) / SYN-Flood (1 to 4000) / ARP-Flood (1 to 2000) / UDP-Flood (1 to 8000)	<p>Enabled with Limit set to 1000 for ICMP-Flood, SYN-Flood, ARP-Flood</p> <p>Disabled with Limit set to 0 for UDP-Flood</p>

Advanced Protection

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection

This section lets you monitor and configure your device's advanced firewall features.

This section includes these pages:

- Dashboard
- Configuration
- Protocol Filter Policy
- ADP
- IPS

Dashboard

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Dashboard

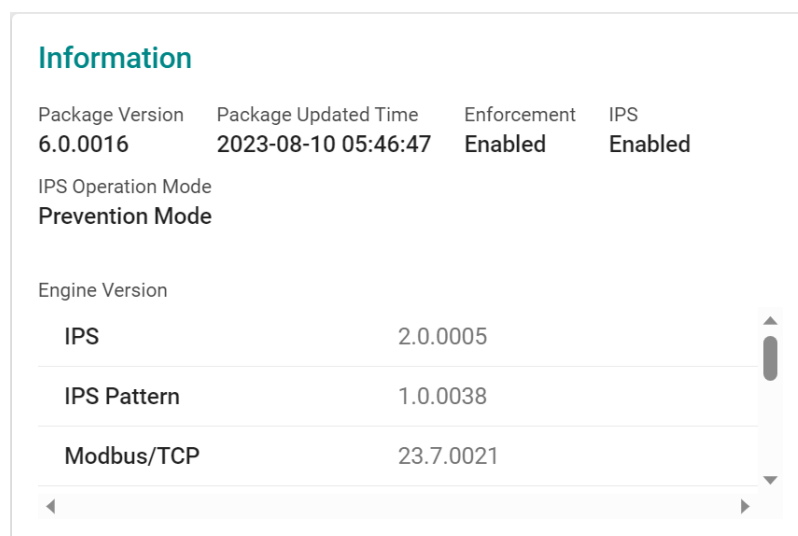
This page lets you see an overview of your firewall's advanced protection activity with real-time event counters.

Note

Please note that available status displays may vary depending on the product and model, and whether an IPS license is installed or not.

Information

This display shows the versions of the installed firewall engines and security packages currently installed on the device, as well as whether various functions are enabled.



Package Version	Package Updated Time	Enforcement	IPS
6.0.0016	2023-08-10 05:46:47	Enabled	Enabled
IPS Operation Mode			
Prevention Mode			
Engine Version			
IPS	2.0.0005		
IPS Pattern	1.0.0038		
Modbus/TCP	23.7.0021		

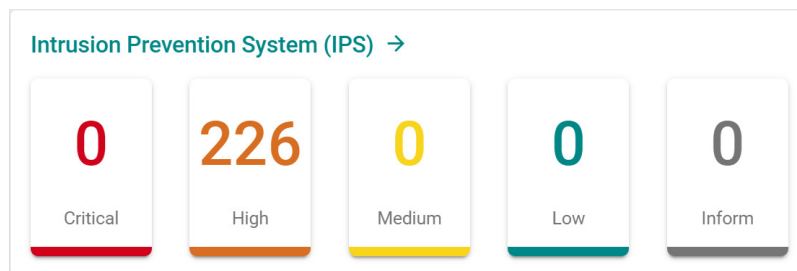
UI Setting	Description
Package Version	Shows the version of the current Network Security Package installed on the device.
Package Updated Time	Shows when the current Network Security Package was installed.
Enforcement	Shows whether Protocol Filtering is enabled.
IPS	Shows whether IPS is enabled.
IPS Operation Mode	Shows which operation mode IPS is using.
Engine Version	Shows the versions of the different engines being used.

Note

Starting from v9.0 of the Network Security Package, when the IPS license expires, existing IPS patterns can still be used for IPS protection. However, the IPS patterns will not be updated and will remain at their current versions when you update the Network Security Package.

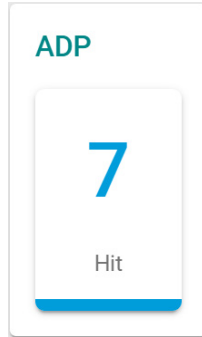
Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

This display shows the current number of Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) events. Clicking on an item will take you to a filtered view of the IPS event log. Refer to **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - Firewall Log** for more information.



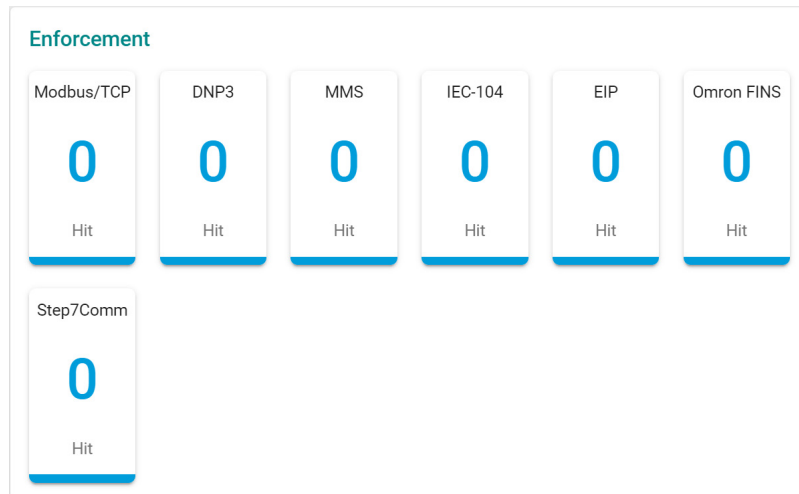
ADP

This display shows the current number of Anomaly Detection and Prevention (ADP) events. Clicking on an item will take you to the ADP event log. Refer to **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - Firewall Log** for more information.



Enforcement

This display shows the current number of industrial protocol events. Clicking on an item will take you to a filtered view of the Protocol Filter Policy event log. Refer to **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - Firewall Log** for more information.



Configuration

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration

This page lets you configure your application firewall's advanced protection settings.

This page includes these tabs:

- Global Settings
- Protocol Filter Object
- Protocol Filter Profile

Configuration - Global Settings

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Global Settings

This page lets you configure global settings for your application firewall's advanced protection features. You can also back up and restore your advanced protection settings on this page.

Backup/Restore

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Backup/Restore	Select which settings you want to back up or restore. If you want to back up your settings, click BACK UP . Configuration: Back up/restore all settings on the Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration page. Protocol Filter Policy: Back up/restore all policies on the Firewall > Advanced Protection > Protocol Filter Policy page. Debug Information: Back up debug information for your firewall's advanced protection features.	Configuration / Protocol Filter Policy / Debug Information	Configuration
Select File (if Backup/Restore is Configuration or Protocol Filter Policy)	If you want to restore settings, click this field and select the settings file from your local computer, then click RESTORE .	N/A	N/A

Global Settings

Note

Available settings will vary depending on your product model and whether an active IPS license is installed.

Global Settings

Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

IPS * IPS Operation Mode *

Enforcement

Enforcement * Action *

Modbus/TCP Firewall * Modbus/TCP ADP * Modbus/TCP Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

DNP3 Firewall * DNP3 ADP * DNP3 Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

MMS Firewall * MMS Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

IEC-104 Firewall * IEC-104 ADP * IEC-104 Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

EIP Firewall * EIP ADP * EIP Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Omron FINS Firewall * Omron FINS ADP * Omron FINS Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Step7Comm Firewall * Step7Comm ADP * Step7Comm Service Port *
1 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Troubleshooting

Debug Logging *

APPLY

Intrusion Prevention System (IPS)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IPS	Enable or disable intrusion prevention system (IPS) functionality.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
IPS Operation Mode	Select the IPS operation mode.	Prevention Mode / Detection Mode	Prevention Mode

Enforcement

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enforcement	Enable or disable protocol filtering.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Action	<p>Select the default action of the protocol filter when enforcement is enabled.</p> <p>The Event Log (Firewall Log) will display Policy ID '99999' when this default action is activated.</p> <p>Accept: The firewall will accept packets when no defined Protocol Filter Policy matches. With this setting, no logs are recorded.</p> <p>Monitor: The firewall will accept packets when no defined Protocol Filter Policy matches. With this setting, each packet of an identified application protocol will have a corresponding Event Log entry.</p> <p>Reset: The firewall will drop packets when no defined Protocol Filter Policy matches. With this setting, only the first packet of an identified application protocol will be recorded in Event Log.</p>	Accept / Monitor / Reset	Reset
Modbus/TCP Firewall	Enable or disable the Modbus/TCP protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Modbus/TCP ADP	Enable or disable ADP for Modbus/TCP traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Modbus/TCP Service Port	Specify the service port for Modbus/TCP traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	502
DNP3 Firewall	Enable or disable the DNP3 protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
DNP3 ADP	Enable or disable ADP for DNP3 traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
DNP3 Service Port	Specify the service port for DNP3 traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	20000
MMS Firewall	Enable or disable the MMS protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
MMS Service Port	Specify the service port for MMS traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	102
IEC-104 Firewall	Enable or disable the IEC-104 protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IEC-104 ADP	Enable or disable ADP for IEC-104 traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
IEC-104 Service Port	Specify the service port for IEC-104 traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	2404
GOOSE Firewall	Enable or disable the GOOSE protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
EIP Firewall	Enable or disable the EIP protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
EIP ADP	Enable or disable ADP for EIP traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
EIP Service Port	Specify the service port for EIP traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	44818
Omron FINS Firewall	Enable or disable the Omron FINS protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Omron FINS ADP	Enable or disable ADP for Omron FINS traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Omron FINS Service Port	Specify the service port for Omron FINS traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	9600
Step7Comm Firewall	Enable or disable the Step7Comm protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Step7Comm ADP	Enable or disable ADP for Step7Comm traffic.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Step7Comm Service Port	Specify the service port for Step7Comm traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	102
TRDP Firewall	Enable or disable the TRDP protocol filter engine.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
TRDP Service Port	Specify the service port for TRDP traffic. You can specify multiple ports by separating them with a comma.	1 to 65535	17224, 17225

Troubleshooting

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Debug Logging	Enable or disable debug logging for troubleshooting.	Enables / Disabled	Disabled

Protocol Filter Object

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Object











This page lets you create and manage protocol filter objects, which can simplify creation and maintenance of protocol filter policies.

Note

Available protocols may vary across different product models and versions.

Limitations

You can create up to 64 protocol filter objects.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Protocol Filter Object	Category	Protocol Filter Profile
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Modbus_readwrite_test	Modbus/TCP	ReadWrite
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Modbus_Read_Only	Modbus/TCP	ReadOnly
<input type="checkbox"/>	 MOXA_test	Modbus/TCP	ReadOnly
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Modbus_Manual	Modbus/TCP	Manual
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Modbus_customized	Modbus/TCP	Manual
<input type="checkbox"/>	 test	Modbus/TCP	Manual
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Modbus_write	Modbus/TCP	WriteOnly
<input type="checkbox"/>	 EIP_Test	EIP	JasonTest
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Omron_Test	Omron FINS	Manual
<input type="checkbox"/>	 FINSTest	Step7Comm	Manual

Max. 64 1 - 10 of 10 < >

UI Setting

Description

Protocol Filter Object

Shows the name of the object

Category

Shows the protocol category of the object.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Protocol Filter Profile	Shows which protocol filter profile the object uses.
--------------------------------	--

Protocol Filter Object - Create Object

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Object


Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Object** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a protocol filter object. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new object.

Create Object - Modbus/TCP

If **Modbus/TCP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
-------------	--------------------------------	--------------------	-----

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	<p>Select a protocol for this object.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Slave ID	<p>Specify the Modbus slave ID. Leave this field blank to represent any ID.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>The Slave ID is used to identify Modbus devices. This ID can be used to communicate via devices such as bridges and gateways which use a single IP address to support multiple independent end units.</p> </div>	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	Any
Protocol Filter Profile	<p>Select preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object.</p> <p>Read Only: Use a set of commonly used function codes associated with read-only access.</p> <p>Write Only: Use a set of commonly used function codes associated with write-only access.</p> <p>Read/Write: Use a set of commonly used function codes associated with read/write access.</p> <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Read Only / Write Only / Read/Write / Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
Function Code	<p>Shows which function codes will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile.</p> <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select which function codes to use for this object. You can select multiple options.</p>	Drop-down list of function codes	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
PLC Address Base 1 (if only one Function Code is selected)	Select whether the PLC's starting address should start from 0x00 or 0x01. This should be set based on your PLCs to ensure DPI filters the correct addresses and values. Enabled: The PLC's starting address starts at 0x01. Disabled: The PLC's starting address starts at 0x00.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Filter Type (if only one Function Code is selected)	Select the filter type to use. None: Filter traffic by specified function codes. Address Range: Filter traffic by specified PLC register addresses. Data Value: Filter the traffic by specified data values in the registers.	None / Address Range / Data Value	None
Address Range (if Filter Type is Address Range)	Define the address range to use for the filter. You can enter the address range in decimal or hexadecimal format.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	N/A
Start Address (if Filter Type is Data Value)	Specify the starting address for the PLC register address. You can enter the address in decimal or hexadecimal format.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	N/A
Value (if Filter Type is Data Value)	Specify a data value to filter for. You can enter up to 16 bits (2 bytes) of binary data for the data value.	0 to 1111111111111111 (binary data)	N/A

Create Object - DNP3

If **DNP3** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
DNP3 ▼

Protocol Filter Profile *
Manual ▼

Source Address
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

Destination Address
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

Application Function Code * ▼

Group
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

Variation
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
Source Address	Shows the source address to check for in DNP3 packets, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, specify the source address to check for in DNP3 packets.</p>	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination Address	Shows the destination address to check for in DNP3 packets, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the destination address to check for in DNP3 packets.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Application Function Code	Shows which function code will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , select which function code to use for this object.	Drop-down list of function codes	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Group	Shows the group to use to classify types within a message, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the function code to use for this object.	0 to 255 or 0x00 to 0xFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Variation	Shows the variation to use for encoding formats, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the variation to use for this object.	0 to 255 or 0x00 to 0xFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

Create Object - MMS

If **MMS** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="border: 1px solid gray; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.	Identify Service / Read Service / Write Service / Report Service / File Operation Service / Journal Service / Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
Device	Specify a device name for the object.		N/A
Item ID	Specify an item ID for the object.		N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Command Type	<p>Shows which MMS command type will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile.</p> <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select the command type to use for the object.</p> <p>Refer to MMS Command Types for an overview of all command types.</p>	Drop-down list of MMS command types	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Service	<p>Shows which service will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile.</p> <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select the service to use for the object.</p>	Any / Confirmed Request / Confirmed Response / Unconfirmed	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Service Operation	<p>Shows which service operations will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile.</p> <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select the service operations to use for the object. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Refer to MMS Service Operation List for an overview of all service operations.</p>	Drop-down list of service operations	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
MMS Data Type	<p>Specify which MMS data types to use for the object. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>For each service operation, specify the values to use. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.</p>	Drop-down list of MMS data types 0 to 65535	N/A

Create Object - IEC-104

If **IEC-104** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
IEC-104 ▼

Protocol Filter Profile *
Manual ▼

Cause of Transmission * ▼

Type Identification * ▼

Originator Address
 0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

Common Address
 0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Identify Service / Read Service / Write Service / Report Service / File Operation Service / Journal Service / Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Cause of Transmission	Shows which IEC-104 cause of transmission code will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , select the cause to use for the object. Refer to the IEC-104 Cause of Transmission List for an overview of the different codes and corresponding descriptions.	Drop-down list of IEC-104 cause of transmission codes	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Type Identification	Shows which IEC-104 type identification code will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , select the type to use for the object. Refer to the IEC-104 Type Identification List for an overview of the different codes and corresponding descriptions.	Drop-down list of IEC-104 type identification codes	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Originator Address	Shows which originator address will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the address to use for the object.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Common Address	Shows which common address will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the address to use for the object.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

Create Object - EIP

If **EIP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
EIP ▼

Protocol Filter Profile *
Manual ▼

Command Code
0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Type ID
0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Device Type
0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Vendor ID
0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Command Code	Shows the EIP command codes that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the command codes to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Type ID	Shows the type IDs that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the type IDs to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Device Type	Shows the device types that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the device types to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Vendor ID	Specify the vendor IDs to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A

Create Object - Omron FINS

If **Omron FINS** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object.	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
	<p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p>		
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
TCP Command	Shows the TCP command codes that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the command codes to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 4294967295	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Command Code	Shows the command codes that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the command codes to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Error Code	Shows the error codes that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the error codes to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Client Node Address	Specify the client node addresses to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 4294967295	N/A
Server Node Address	Specify the server node addresses to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 4294967295	N/A
File Position	Specify the file positions to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A
File Position Begin Address	Specify the file position begin addresses to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A
Begin Address	Specify the begin addresses to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A
Record Begin Address	Specify the record begin addresses to use for this object. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A

Create Object - Step7Comm

If **Step7Comm** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
Step7Comm ▼

Protocol Filter Profile *
Manual ▼

ROSCTR
USER DATA ▼

Function Group
0 - 15 or 0x0 - 0xF

Sub-function
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
ROSCTR	Shows the ROSCTR control that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, specify the ROSCTR control to use for this object.</p>	ANY / JOB / USER DATA	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Function (if ROSCTR is JOB)	Shows the function code that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the function code to use for this object.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Function Group (if ROSCTR is USER DATA)	Shows the function group that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the function group to use for this object.	0 to 15 / 0x0 to 0xF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Sub-function (if ROSCTR is USER DATA)	Shows the sub-function group that will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile , specify the sub-function code to use for this object.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

Create Object - TRDP

If **TRDP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Object

Name * 0 / 64


Category *
TRDP ▼

Protocol Filter Profile
Manual ▼

Message Type * ▼

Communication Iden... ▼

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to TRDP Protocol Filter Profiles for more information on TRDP presets.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A
Message Type	Shows which message types will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select which message types to use for this object. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Refer to TRDP Message Types for more information.</p>	Drop-down list of message types	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile
Communication Identifier	Shows which communication identifiers will be used for the object, based on the selected Protocol Filter Profile . <p>If Manual is selected for the Protocol Filter Profile, select which communication identifiers to use for this object. You can select multiple options. The last option in the list lets you add your own communication identifiers. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.</p> <p>Refer to IEC 61375-2-3 Communication Identifiers for more information.</p>	Drop-down list of communication identifiers 1 to 4294967295	Depends on the selected Protocol Filter Profile

Create Object - OPC UA

If **OPC UA** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object.	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
	<p>Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p>		
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A

Create Object - MELSEC

If **MELSEC** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object. Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. <p>Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object.</p> <p>Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.</p>	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A

Create Object - Step7Plus

If **Step7Plus** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the object. Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	1 to 64 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	Select a protocol for this object. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Protocol Filter Profile	Select a preset protocol filter profile or a user-configured protocol filter profile to use for this protocol filter object. Manual: Manually enter the settings for this object. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile for more information on creating protocol filter profiles.	Drop-down list of related protocol filter profiles / Manual	N/A

Protocol Filter Profile

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile







This page lets you create and manage protocol filter profiles to simplify maintaining protocol-related settings. Protocol filter profiles can be used when creating protocol filter objects, and a single profile can be used in multiple protocol filter objects.

Note

Available protocols may vary across different product models and versions.

Limitations

You can create up to 50 protocol filter profiles.

		Q Search
<input type="checkbox"/>	Protocol Filter Profile	Category
<input type="checkbox"/>	 readcoilstest	Modbus/TCP
<input type="checkbox"/>	 ddd	Modbus/TCP
<input type="checkbox"/>	 EIPTest	EIP
<input type="checkbox"/>	 DNP3Test	DNP3
<input type="checkbox"/>	 TestOmron	Omron FINS
<input type="checkbox"/>	 TestMMS	MMS

Max. 50 1 - 6 of 6 < >

UI Setting	Description
Protocol Filter Profile	Shows the name of the profile.
Category	Shows the protocol category of the profile.

Protocol Filter Profile - Create Profile

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Profile** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a protocol filter profile. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new profile.

Create Profile - Modbus/TCP

If **Modbus/TCP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name *

0 / 64

Category *

Function Code *

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Function Code	Select which function codes to use for this profile. You can select multiple options.	Drop-down list of function codes	N/A

Create Profile - DNP3

If **DNP3** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name *

 0 / 64

Category *
 DNP3 ▼

Source Address

 0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

Destination Address

 0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

Application Function Code * ▼

Group

 0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

Variation

 0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile.	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>		
Source Address	Specify the source address to check for in DNP3 packets.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination Address	Specify the destination address to check for in DNP3 packets.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	N/A
Application Function Code	Select which function code to use for this profile.	Drop-down list of function codes	N/A
Group	Specify the function code to use for this profile.	0 to 255 or 0x00 to 0xFF	N/A
Variation	Specify the variation to use for this profile.	0 to 255 or 0x00 to 0xFF	N/A

Create Profile - MMS

If **MMS** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
MMS ▼


Common Type * ▼

Service * ▼

Service Operation * ▼

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Command Type	Select the command type to use for the profile. Refer to MMS Command Types for an overview of all command types.	Drop-down list of MMS command types	N/A
Service	Select the service to use for the profile.	Any / Confirmed Request / Confirmed Response / Unconfirmed	N/A
Service Operation	Select the service operations to use for the profile. You can select multiple options. Refer to MMS Service Operation List for an overview of all service operations.	Drop-down list of service operations	N/A

Create Profile - IEC-104

If **IEC-104** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name * 0 / 64

Category *
IEC-104 ▼

Cause of Transmission * ▼

Type Identification * ▼

Originator Address
0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

Common Address
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Cause of Transmission	Select the IEC-104 cause of transmission code to use for the profile. <p>Refer to the IEC-104 Cause of Transmission List for an overview of the different codes and corresponding descriptions.</p>	Drop-down list of IEC-104 cause of transmission codes	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Type Identification	Select the IEC-104 type identification code to use for the profile. Refer to the IEC-104 Type Identification List for an overview of the different codes and corresponding descriptions.	Drop-down list of IEC-104 type identification codes	N/A
Originator Address	Specify the originator address to use for the profile.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	N/A
Common Address	Specify the common address to use for the profile.	0 to 65535 / 0x0000 to 0xFFFF	N/A

Create Profile - EIP

If **EIP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name *

0 / 64

Category *
EIP ▼

Command Code

0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Type ID

0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Device Type

0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Command Code	Specify the command codes to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	N/A
Type ID	Specify the type IDs to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	N/A
Device Type	Specify the device types to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 - 65535	N/A

Create Profile - Omron FINS

If **Omron FINS** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name * 0 / 64

Category
 Omron FINS ▼


TCP Command
 0 - 4294967295, allow comma(,)

Command Code
 0 - 65535, allow comma(,)

Error Code
 0 - 4294967295, allow comma(,)

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
TCP Command	Specify the TCP command codes to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 4294967295	N/A
Command Code	Specify the command codes to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A
Error Code	Specify the error codes to use for this profile. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.	0 to 65535	N/A

Create Profile - Step7Comm

If **Step7Comm** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name *

0 / 64

Category *

ROSCTR

Function Group

0 - 15 or 0x0 - 0xF

Sub-function

0 - 255 or 0x00 - 0xFF

CANCEL
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
ROSCTR	Specify the ROSCTR control to use for this profile.	ANY / JOB / USER DATA	N/A
Function (if ROSCTR is JOB)	Specify the function code to use for this profile.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Function Group (if ROSCTR is USER DATA)	Specify the function group to use for this profile.	0 to 15 / 0x0 to 0xF	N/A
Sub-function (if ROSCTR is USER DATA)	Specify the sub-function code to use for this profile.	0 to 255 / 0x00 to 0xFF	N/A

Create Profile - TRDP

If **TRDP** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Create Profile

Name *

0 / 64


Category *

Message Type *

Communication Iden...

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 64 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Category	<p>Select a protocol for this profile.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Message Type	<p>Select which message types to use for this profile. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Refer to TRDP Message Types for more information.</p>	Drop-down list of message types	N/A
Communication Identifier	<p>Select which communication identifiers to use for this profile. You can select multiple options. The last option in the list lets you add your own communication identifier. You can specify multiple values by separating them with a comma.</p> <p>Refer to IEC 61375-2-3 Communication Identifiers for more information.</p>	Drop-down list of communication identifiers 1 to 4294967295	N/A

Create Profile - OPC UA

If **OPC UA** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Edit Profile

Name *

OPC-UA

6 / 32

Category *

OPC UA ▼

Service ID

0 - 4294967295 or 0x00000000
- 0xFFFFFFFF

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile.	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
<p>Note</p> <p>Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p>			
Service ID	Specify an OPC UA Service ID for this profile.	0-4294967295 or 0x00000000 - 0xFFFFFFFF	N/A

Create Profile - MELSEC

If **MELSEC** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Edit Profile

Name *
 MELSEC_Test
 11 / 32

Category *
 MELSEC ▼

Command
 0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

SUB-Command
 0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
Command	Specify a command for this profile.	0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF	N/A
SUB-Command	Specify a sub-command for this profile.	0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF	N/A

Create Profile - Step7Plus

If **Step7Plus** is selected for the **Category**, these settings will appear.

Edit Profile

Name *
Step7Plus
9 / 32

Category *
Step7Plus ▼

Function
0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the profile.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Category	Select a protocol for this profile.	Modbus/TCP / DNP3 / MMS / IEC-104 / EIP / Omron FINS / Step7Comm / TRDP / OPC UA / MELSEC / Step7Plus	N/A
	Note Available settings will vary depending on your product model.		
Function	Specify a Step7Plus function code for this profile.	0 - 65535 or 0x0000 - 0xFFFF	N/A

Protocol Filter Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Protocol Filter Policy

This page lets you manage your application firewall's protocol filtering policies, which allow you to inspect industrial protocol packets. This allows you to control protocol traffic based on the configured protocol filter policies and Anomaly Detection and Protection (ADP) settings.

Refer to **ADP** for more information.

Note

Before creating protocol filter policies, you will need to set up protocol filter objects to define what application protocols your policies will apply to.

Refer to Firewall > Configuration - Protocol Filter Object for more information.

Limitations

You can create up to 200 protocol filter policies.


Index	Policy Name	Status	Protocol Filter Object	From Interface	To Interface	Source IP	Destination IP	Protocol	Command Type	Application Protocol	Action
1	Modbus_reject	Enabled	Modbus_Read_Only	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	Modbus/TCP	Accept
2	Modbus_write	Enabled	Modbus_write	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	Modbus/TCP	Reset
3	Modbus_test	Disabled	Modbus_readwrite_test	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	Modbus/TCP	Accept
4	EIPTestPolicy	Enabled	EIP_Test	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	EIP	Reset
5	ddd	Disabled	Modbus_Manual	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	Modbus/TCP	Accept
6	MOXA_test_test	Disabled	MOXA_test	Any	Any	Any	Any	Any	Master Query	Modbus/TCP	Accept

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the policy.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the policy.
Status	Shows whether the policy is enabled or disabled.
Protocol Filter Object	Shows the protocol filter object used for the policy.
From Interface	Shows the From Interface for the policy.
To Interface	Shows the To Interface for the policy.
Source IP	Shows the source IP addresses for the policy.

UI Setting	Description
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP addresses for the policy.
Protocol	Shows the protocols for the policy.
Command Type	Shows the packet transmission direction for this policy.
Application Protocol	Shows the industrial protocol for this policy.
Action	Shows the action the firewall will take for packets that match the policy.

Add Policy

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > Protocol Filter Policy

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > Protocol Filter Policy** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new protocol filter policy. Click **APPLY** to save your changes and add the new policy.

Add Policy

Index *

1 - 200

Policy Name *

0 / 64

Status *

From Interface *

To Interface *

Source IP *

Destination IP *

Protocol *


Command Type *


Application Protocol *

Action *

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Index	Specify the index of the policy.	1-200	1
Policy Name	Specify a name for the policy.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Status	Enable or disable the policy.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
From Interface	Select the From Interface for the policy.	Any / Drop-down of interfaces	Any
<p> Note</p> <p>Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.</p>			

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
To Interface	Select the To Interface for the policy. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Note</p> <p>Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.</p> </div>	Any / Drop-down of interfaces	Any
Source IP	Select how the policy will check the packet's source IP address. Any: The policy will check all source IP addresses in the packet. Single: The policy will only check for the specified source IP address in the packet. Range: The policy will check all source IP addresses in the packet within the specified IP range. Subnet: The policy will check for source IP addresses in the packet that are within the specified subnet mask.	Any / Single / Range / Subnet	Any
Destination IP	To decide how the policy will check the packet's destination IP address. Any: The policy will check all destination IP addresses in the packet. Single: The policy will only check for the specified destination IP address in the packet. Range: The policy will check all destination IP addresses in the packet within the specified IP range. Subnet: The policy will check for destination IP addresses in the packet that are within the specified subnet mask.	Any / Single / Range / Subne	Any
Protocol	Select the protocol for this policy.	Any / TCP / UDP	Any
Command Type	Select the packet transmission direction for this policy.	Master Query / Slave Response	Master Query
Application Protocol	Select the protocol filter object to use to define the application protocol for this policy. Refer to Firewall > Advanced Protection > Configuration - Protocol Filter Object for more information.	Custom object	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	<p>Select the action to take for packets that match the policy.</p> <p>Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the policy.</p> <p>Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the policy. With this setting, each packet of an identified application protocol will have a corresponding Event Log entry.</p> <p>Reset: The firewall will drop packets that match the policy, and the session will be disconnected. With this setting, only the first packet of an identified application protocol will be recorded in Event Log.</p>	Accept / Monitor / Reset	Accept






ADP

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > ADP

This page lets you configure your device's Anomaly Detection and Protection (ADP) parameters.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

Q Search					
Index	Description	Category	Status	Action	
 1000000	Forbid multiple.	Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor	
 1000001	Specific layer 4 field of modbus request OR response is invalid.	Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor	
 1000002	Address of the data to be accessed is invalid.	Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor	
 1000003	Quantity of the data is invalid.	Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor	
 1000004	Data length indicated does not match the actual length.	Modbus/TCP	Enabled	Monitor	

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the ADP rule.
Description	Shows a description of the condition that will trigger the ADP rule.
Category	Shows the category of the ADP rule.

UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows whether the ADP rule is enabled or disabled.
Action	Shows the action the application firewall will take when the ADP rule is matched.

Edit ADP Rule Action

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > ADP

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for a rule on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an ADP rule. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit ADP Index 1000001 Rule Action

Description
Specific layer 4 field of modbus request OR response is invalid.

Status
Enabled ▼

Action *
Monitor ▼

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Description (View-only)	Shows a description of the condition that will trigger the ADP rule.	N/A	N/A
Status	Enable or disable the ADP rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Action	Select the action to take for packets that match the rule. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the rule. Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the rule and an event log will be recorded in Event Log - Firewall Log. Reset: The firewall will drop packets that match the rule, and the session will be disconnected.	Accept / Monitor / Reset	Monitor

IPS

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS

This page lets you configure the Intrusion Prevention System (IPS) feature, which helps protect against cyberthreats by performing pattern-based detection and blocking known attacks.

Note

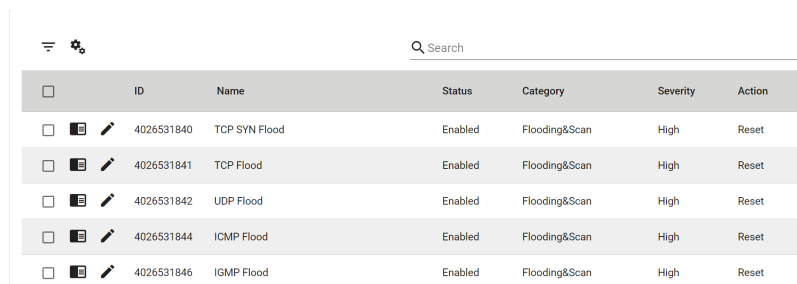
Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

Note

A separate IPS license is required to enable IPS functionality on the device.

Note

Starting from v9.0 of the Network Security Package, when the IPS license expires, existing IPS patterns can still be used for IPS protection. However, the IPS patterns will not be updated and will remain at their current versions when you update the Network Security Package.



The screenshot shows a web interface for configuring IPS rules. At the top, there are icons for a menu and settings, and a search bar. Below is a table with the following columns: ID, Name, Status, Category, Severity, and Action. The table contains five rows of rules, all with a status of 'Enabled' and a severity of 'High'.

ID	Name	Status	Category	Severity	Action
4026531840	TCP SYN Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
4026531841	TCP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
4026531842	UDP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
4026531844	ICMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset
4026531846	IGMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Reset

UI Setting

Description

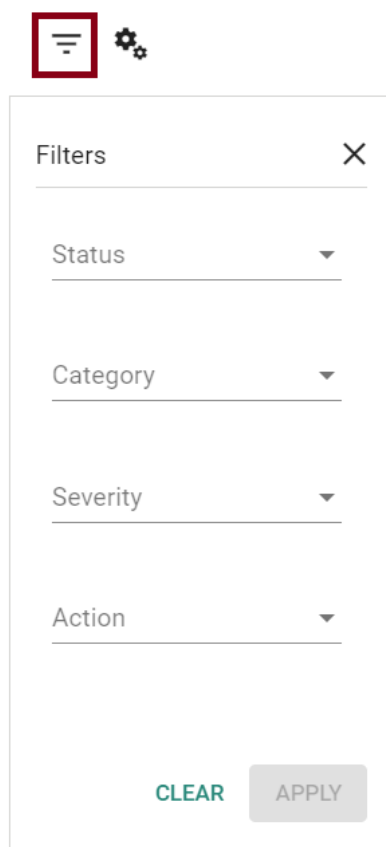
- ID** Shows the ID of the rule.
- Name** Shows the name of the rule.
- Status** Shows whether the rule is enabled or disabled.

UI Setting	Description
Category	Shows the category of the rule.
Severity	Shows the severity assigned to the rule.
Action	Shows the action that will be taken when the rule is triggered.

Filter IPS Rules

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS

Clicking the **Filter** (☰) icon on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you filter the IPS Rule List according to various criteria. Click **APPLY** to apply the filter, or click **CLEAR** to reset all filter criteria.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Filter for enabled or disabled rules.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Category	Filter for a specific rule category.	File vulnerabilities / Buffer Overflow / DoS attacks / Exploits / Malware traffic / Reconnaissance / Web threats / Flooding & Scan / Protocol Attack Protection / IP Spoofing	N/A
Severity	Filter for a specific severity level.	Information / Low / Medium / High / Critical	N/A
Action	Filter for a specific rule action.	Accept / Monitor / Reset	N/A

Quick Settings

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS

Clicking the **Settings** (⚙️) icon on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you quickly configure many rules at the same time. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Quick Settings

Source

All
 Filter Rule
 User Selected

Filters

Status ▼

Category ▼

Severity ▼

Action ▼

Rule Settings

Status * ▼

Action * ▼

CANCEL
APPLY

Source

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Source	<p>Select which rules to modify with the Rule Settings you specify.</p> <p>All: Modify all rules. This option will not be available if you selected rules in the IPS Rule List before opening this dialog.</p> <p>Filter Rule: Only modify rules that match the filter criteria you specify. This option will not be available if you selected rules in the IPS Rule List before opening this dialog.</p> <p>User Selected: Only modify the rules that you have selected using their checkboxes. This option is only available if you select rules in the IPS Rule List before opening this dialog.</p>	All / Filter Rule / User Selected	All

Filters

(if **Source** is **Filter Rule**)


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Filter for enabled or disabled rules.	Enabled / Disabled	N/A
Category	Filter for a specific rule category.	File vulnerabilities / Buffer Overflow / DoS attacks / Exploits / Malware traffic / Reconnaissance / Web threats / Flooding & Scan / Protocol Attack Protection / IP Spoofing	N/A
Severity	Filter for a specific severity level.	Information / Low / Medium / High / Critical	N/A
Action	Filter for a specific rule action.	Accept / Monitor / Reset	N/A

Rule Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the IPS rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Action	Select the action to take for packets that match the rule. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the rule. Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the rule. Reset: The firewall will drop packets that match the rule, and the session will be disconnected.	Accept / Monitor / Reset	Monitor

Detailed Information

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS

Clicking the **Detailed Information** () icon for a rule on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS** page will toggle display of a panel with detailed information about the rule.

Intrusion Prevention System

ID	Name	Status	Category	Severity	Action
4026531840	TCP SYN Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531841	TCP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531842	UDP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531844	ICMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531846	IGMP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531847	IP Flood	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	High	Res
4026531848	TCP Port Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Mo
4026531849	UDP Port Scan	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Mo
4026531850	IP Sweep	Enabled	Flooding&Scan	Medium	Mo

IPS Rule information

ICMP Flood

Category: Flooding&Scan

Severity: High

Impact: Denial of service

Reference: MISC:RFC 792

Description: An ICMP attack can come in many forms. There are 2 basic kinds, Flood and Nuke. An ICMP Flood is usually accomplished by broadcasting either a bunch of ICMP ping packets (Not to be confused with IRC pings, which have a similar purpose, but are handled differently) or UDP packets (which are used in software like PointCast). The idea is, to send excessive data to the system, so that it gets slowed down to the point of being disconnected from IRC due to a ping timeout.

Edit IPS Rule Action

Menu Path: Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for a rule on the **Firewall > Advanced Protection > IPS** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an IPS rule. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit IPS Rule Action

Name
TCP SYN Flood

Status *
Enabled

Action *
Reset

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name (View-only)	Shows the name of the IPS rule.	N/A	N/A
Status	Enable or disable the IPS rule.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	Select the action to take for packets that match the rule. Accept: The firewall will accept packets that match the rule. Monitor: The firewall will monitor packets that match the rule. Reset: The firewall will drop packets that match the rule, and the session will be disconnected.	Accept / Monitor / Reset	Monitor

VPN

Menu Path: VPN

The VPN settings area lets you configure settings related to your device's VPN functionality.

This settings area includes these sections:

- IPsec
- L2TP Server
- OpenVPN Client

VPN - User Privileges

Privileges to VPN settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
IPsec	R/W	R/W	R
L2TP Server	R/W	R/W	R
OpenVPN Client	R/W	R/W	-

IPSec

Menu Path: VPN > IPSec

This page lets you set up IPSec VPN tunnels for your device.

This page includes these tabs:

- Global Settings
- IPsec Settings
- IPsec Status

Global Settings

Menu Path: VPN > IPsec - Global Settings

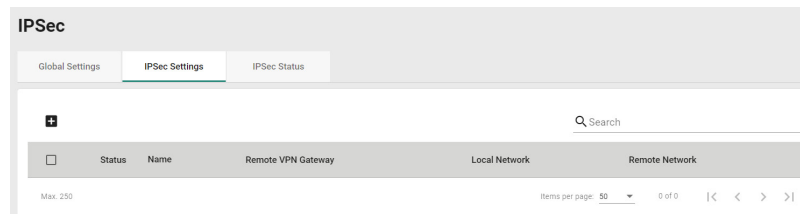
This page lets you configure global settings that affect all IPsec tunnels.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable all IPsec VPN services.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
IPsec NAT-T	Enable or disable IPsec NAT-T (NAT-Traversal). This option should be enabled if there is an external industrial secure router located between VPN tunnels.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
VPN Event Log	Enable or disable VPN event logging. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Log Destination	If VPN Event Log is enabled, select the VPN event log storage location.	Local Storage / Syslog / Trap	N/A

IPSec Settings

Menu Path: VPN > IPSec - IPSec Settings

This page lets you create and edit IPSec VPN tunnels for your device.



UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows whether the tunnel is enabled or disabled.
Name	Shows the name of the tunnel.
Remote VPN Gateway	Shows the IP address of the remote VPN gateway for the tunnel.
Local Network	Shows the tunnel's local network IP address.
Remote Network	Shows the tunnel's remote network IP address.

Create IPSec

Menu Path: VPN > IPSec - IPSec Settings

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **VPN > IPSec - IPSec Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new IPSec VPN tunnel. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new tunnel.

Create IPSec - Quick Settings

If **Quick Settings** is selected, these settings will appear.

Create IPSec

Settings

Quick Settings Advanced Settings

Tunnel Settings

Status *

Enabled 0 / 31

VPN Connection *

Site to Site

Remote Network List

Required

Max. 10

0 of 0

|< < > >|

Security Settings

Simple Standard Strong Extra

Authentication Mode *

Pre-shared Key 0 / 64



CANCEL

CREATE

Tunnel Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the tunnel.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Enter a name for this tunnel. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note Names must start with a character that is not a number.</p> </div>	Max. 31 characters	N/A
VPN Connection	Select the type of VPN connection to use for this rule. Site to Site: The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed. Site to Site(Any): The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is fixed for the Local subnet.	Site to Site / Site to Site(Any)	Site to Site
Remote VPN Gateway	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway. If VPN Connection is set to Site to Site(Any) , this does not need to be set.	Valid IP address	N/A

Remote Network List

You can configure multiple remote networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

Limitations

You can add up to 10 remote networks for an IPSec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Remote Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the remote network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Security Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Security Strength	Select the security strength for the tunnel. Different settings will change the Encryption Algorithm and Hash Algorithm used, which can be viewed in Advanced Settings .	Simple / Standard / Strong / Extra	Strong

Note

When creating an IPsec connection, it is highly recommended to use similar levels of algorithms between IPsec devices.

The different security levels use the following settings:

Key Exchange 1

Type	Simple	Standard	Strong	Extra
Encryption Algorithm	DES	3DES	AES-256	AES-256-GCM
Hash Algorithm	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256	N/A
PRF	N/A	N/A	N/A	PRFSHA512
DH Group	DH1	DH2	DH14	DH31

Key Exchange 2

Type	Simple	Standard	Strong	Extra
Encryption Algorithm	DES	3DES	AES-256	AES-256-GCM
Hash	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256	N/A
PRF	N/A	N/A	N/A	prfsha512

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Mode	<p>Select the authentication mode to use for the tunnel.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>Note</p> <p>You must have certificates already imported to select X.509 or X.509 With CA. Refer to Certificate Management for more information.</p> </div> <p>Pre-Shared Key: Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.</p> <p>X.509: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page.</p> <p>X.509 With CA: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using both certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page and a CA certificate imported on the Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate page.</p>	Pre-Shared Key / X.509 / X.509 With CA	Pre-Shared Key
Pre-Shared Key	Specify a pre-shared key to use to authenticate the IPsec VPN connection.	0 to 64 characters	N/A

Create IPsec - Advanced Settings

If **Advanced Settings** is selected, these settings will appear.

Create IPsec

Settings

Quick Settings Advanced Settings

Tunnel Settings

Status *
 0 / 31

L2TP Tunnel *

VPN Connection *

Local Network List

Local Network *	Netmask *
<input type="checkbox"/> 192.168.127.254	<input type="text" value="24 (255.255.255.0)"/>

Max. 10 1 - 1 of 1

Remote Network List

Required

Max. 10 0 of 0

Identity Type *
 0 / 31

Key Exchange (Phase 1)



IKE Mode *

Tunnel Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the tunnel.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Enter a name for this tunnel.	Max. 31 characters	N/A
	<p>Note</p> <p>Names must start with a character that is not a number.</p>		
L2TP Tunnel	Enable or disable L2TP over IPsec.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VPN Connection	Select the type of VPN connection to use for this rule. Site to Site: The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed. Site to Site(Any): The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is fixed for the Local subnet.	Site to Site / Site to Site(Any)	Site to Site
Remote VPN Gateway	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway. If VPN Connection is set to Site to Site(Any) , this does not need to be set.	Valid IP address	N/A
Startup Mode	Select a startup mode for the tunnel. Start in Initial: The VPN tunnel will actively initiate the connection with the remote VPN gateway. Wait for Connecting: The VPN tunnel will wait for the remote VPN gateway to initiate the connection.	Start in Initial / Wait for Connecting	Start in Initial

Local Network List



You can configure multiple local networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

Limitations

You can add up to 10 local networks for an IPsec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Local Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the local VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the local network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Remote Network List

You can configure multiple remote networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

🔔 Limitations


You can add up to 10 remote networks for an IPSec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Remote Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the remote network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Identity

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Identity Type	Select an ID type to use to identify VPN tunnel connections. IP Address: Use an IP address. FQDN: Use a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN). Key ID: Use a user-defined key ID string. Auto(with Cisco): Use this when establishing connections to Cisco systems.	IP Address / FQDN / Key ID / Auto(with Cisco)	IP Address
Local ID (If Identity Type is IP Address, FQDN, or Key ID)	Specify the local ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Local ID must be identical to the Remote ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Remote ID (If Identity Type is IP Address, FQDN, or Key ID)	Specify the remote ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Remote ID must be identical to the Local ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A

Key Exchange (Phase 1)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IKE Mode	<p>Select the IKE mode to use for authentication.</p> <p>Main: Both the remote and local VPN gateway will negotiate which encryption/hash algorithm and DH groups can be used for this VPN tunnel. Both VPN gateways must use the same algorithm to communicate.</p> <p>Aggressive: The remote and local VPN gateways will not negotiate the algorithm and will only use the user-defined configuration.</p>	Main / Aggressive	Main
IKE Version	<p>Select which version of IKE to use.</p> <p>IKE1: Use IKE Version 1 protocol.</p> <p>IKE2: Use IKE Version 2 protocol.</p>	IKE1 / IKE2	IKE2
Authentication Mode	<p>Select the authentication mode to use for the tunnel.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p> Note</p> <p>You must have certificates already imported to select X.509 or X.509 With CA. Refer to Certificate Management for more information.</p> </div> <p>Pre-Shared Key: Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.</p> <p>X.509: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page.</p> <p>X.509 With CA: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using both certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page and a CA certificate imported on the Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate page.</p>	Pre-Shared Key / X.509 / X.509 With CA	Pre-Shared Key

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Pre-Shared Key	Specify a pre-shared key to use to authenticate the IPsec VPN connection.	0 to 64 characters	
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to use for key exchange.	DES / 3DES / AES-128 / AES-192 / AES-256 / AES-256-GCM	AES-256
Hash Algorithm (If Encryption Algorithm is not AES-256-GCM)	Select the hash algorithm to use for key exchange.	MD5 / SHA-1 / SHA-256 / SHA-512	SHA-256
PRF (If Encryption Algorithm is AES-256-GCM)	Select the PRF algorithm for AES-256-GCM.	PRFSHA256 / PRFSHA384 / PRFSHA512	PRFSHA256
DH Group	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the key exchange group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 1(modp768) / DH 2(modp1024) / DH 5(modp1536) / DH 14(modp2048) / DH15(modp3072) / DH16(modp4096) / DH17(modp6144) / DH18(modp8192) / DH22(modp1024s160) / DH23(modp2048s224) / DH24(modp2048s256) / DH31(curve25519)	DH 14(modp2048)
IKE Lifetime	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for IKE SA.	30 to 43200	43200

Data Exchange (Phase 2)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to use for data exchange.	DES / 3DES / AES-128 / AES-192 / AES-256 / AES-256-GCM	AES-256
Hash Algorithm (If Encryption Algorithm is not AES-256-GCM)	Select the hash algorithm to use for data exchange.	MD5 / SHA-1 / SHA-256 / SHA-512	SHA-256

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
PRF (If Encryption Algorithm is AES-256-GCM)	Select the PRF algorithm for AES-256-GCM.	PRFSHA256 / PRFSHA384 / PRFSHA512	PRFSHA256
Perfect Forward Secrecy	Enable or disable Perfect Forward Secrecy. When enabled, different security keys are used for different IPsec phases in order to enhance security.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
DH Group (If Perfect Forward Secrecy is Enabled)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 1(modp768) / DH 2(modp1024) / DH 5(modp1536) / DH 14(modp2048) /DH15 (modp3072) / DH16 (modp4096) / DH17 (modp6144) / DH18 (modp8192) / DH22 (modp1024s160) / DH23 (modp2048s224) / DH24 (modp2048s256) / DH31 (curve25519)	DH 14 (modp2048)
SA Lifetime	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for Phase 2 IKE SA.	30 to 43200	43200

Dead Peer Detection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	Specify the action the system should take when a dead peer is detected. Hold: Maintain the VPN tunnel. Restart: Reconnect the VPN tunnel. Clear: Clear the VPN tunnel. Disabled: Disable Dead Peer Detection.	Hold / Restart / Clear / Disabled	Restart
Retry Interval	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which Dead Peer Detection messages are sent.	0 to 3600	30
Confidence Interval	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the system will check to see if the connection is alive or not.	0 to 3600	120

Edit IPsec

Menu Path: VPN > IPsec - IPsec Settings

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an entry on the **VPN > IPSec - IPSec Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit an existing IPSec VPN tunnel. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit IPSec - Quick Settings



If **Quick Settings** is selected, these settings will appear.

Tunnel Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the tunnel.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Enter a name for this tunnel.	Max. 31 characters	N/A
	<p>Note Names must start with a character that is not a number.</p>		

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VPN Connection	Select the type of VPN connection to use for this rule. Site to Site: The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed. Site to Site(Any): The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is fixed for the Local subnet.	Site to Site / Site to Site(Any)	Site to Site
Remote VPN Gateway	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway. If VPN Connection is set to Site to Site(Any) , this does not need to be set.	Valid IP address	N/A

Remote Network List

You can configure multiple remote networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

Limitations

You can add up to 10 remote networks for an IPSec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Remote Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the remote network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Security Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Security Strength	Select the security strength for the tunnel. Different settings will change the Encryption Algorithm and Hash Algorithm used, which can be viewed in Advanced Settings .	Simple / Standard / Strong / Extra	Strong

Note

When creating an IPsec connection, it is highly recommended to use similar levels of algorithms between IPsec devices.

The different security levels use the following settings:

Key Exchange 1

Type	Simple	Standard	Strong	Extra
Encryption Algorithm	DES	3DES	AES-256	AES-256-GCM
Hash Algorithm	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256	N/A
PRF	N/A	N/A	N/A	PRFSHA512
DH Group	DH1	DH2	DH14	DH31

Key Exchange 2

Type	Simple	Standard	Strong	Extra
Encryption Algorithm	DES	3DES	AES-256	AES-256-GCM
Hash	MD5	SHA-1	SHA-256	N/A
PRF	N/A	N/A	N/A	prfsha512

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Mode	<p>Select the authentication mode to use for the tunnel.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 5px 0;"> <p>Note</p> <p>You must have certificates already imported to select X.509 or X.509 With CA. Refer to Certificate Management for more information.</p> </div> <p>Pre-Shared Key: Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.</p> <p>X.509: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page.</p> <p>X.509 With CA: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using both certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page and a CA certificate imported on the Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate page.</p>	Pre-Shared Key / X.509 / X.509 With CA	Pre-Shared Key
Pre-Shared Key	Specify a pre-shared key to use to authenticate the IPsec VPN connection.	0 to 64 characters	N/A

Edit IPsec - Advanced Settings

If **Advanced Settings** is selected, these settings will appear.

Edit IPsec

Settings

Quick Settings
 Advanced Settings

Tunnel Settings

Status * Name *

Enabled test1

5 / 31

L2TP Tunnel *

Disabled

VPN Connection * Remote VPN Gateway * Startup Mode *

Site to Site 10.1.1.2 Start in initial

Local Network List

+

Local Network * Netmask *

192.168.127.254 24 (255.255.255.0)

Max. 10 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|

Remote Network List

+

Remote Network * Netmask *

192.168.127.1 24 (255.255.255.0)

Max. 10 1 - 1 of 1 |< < > >|



CANCEL
APPLY

Tunnel Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the tunnel.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Name	Enter a name for this tunnel.	Max. 31 characters	N/A
	<p>✎ Note</p> <p>Names must start with a character that is not a number.</p>		
L2TP Tunnel	Enable or disable L2TP over IPsec.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
VPN Connection	Select the type of VPN connection to use for this rule. Site to Site: The VPN tunnel for the Local and Remote subnets is fixed. Site to Site(Any): The VPN tunnel for the Remote subnet area is dynamic and is fixed for the Local subnet.	Site to Site / Site to Site(Any)	Site to Site
Remote VPN Gateway	Specify the IP address of the remote VPN gateway. If VPN Connection is set to Site to Site(Any) , this does not need to be set.	Valid IP address	N/A
Startup Mode	Select a startup mode for the tunnel. Start in Initial: The VPN tunnel will actively initiate the connection with the remote VPN gateway. Wait for Connecting: The VPN tunnel will wait for the remote VPN gateway to initiate the connection.	Start in Initial / Wait for Connecting	Start in Initial

Local Network List



You can configure multiple local networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

Limitations

You can add up to 10 local networks for an IPsec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Local Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the local VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the local network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Remote Network List

You can configure multiple remote networks for the tunnel. Click the add icon () to add a new entry. Select an entry and click the delete icon () to delete it.

🔔 Limitations


You can add up to 10 remote networks for an IPSec VPN tunnel.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Remote Network	Specify the IP address and subnet mask of the remote VPN network.	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask to use for the remote network.	Drop-down list of netmasks	24 (255.255.255.0)

Identity

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Identity Type	Select an ID type to use to identify VPN tunnel connections. IP Address: Use an IP address. FQDN: Use a Fully Qualified Domain Name (FQDN). Key ID: Use a user-defined key ID string. Auto(with Cisco): Use this when establishing connections to Cisco systems.	IP Address / FQDN / Key ID / Auto(with Cisco)	IP Address
Local ID (If Identity Type is IP Address, FQDN, or Key ID)	Specify the local ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Local ID must be identical to the Remote ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A
Remote ID (If Identity Type is IP Address, FQDN, or Key ID)	Specify the remote ID for identifying the VPN tunnel connection. The Remote ID must be identical to the Local ID of the connected VPN gateway in order to successfully establish the VPN tunnel connection.	1 to 31 characters	N/A

Key Exchange (Phase 1)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IKE Mode	<p>Select the IKE mode to use for authentication.</p> <p>Main: Both the remote and local VPN gateway will negotiate which encryption/hash algorithm and DH groups can be used for this VPN tunnel. Both VPN gateways must use the same algorithm to communicate.</p> <p>Aggressive: The remote and local VPN gateways will not negotiate the algorithm and will only use the user-defined configuration.</p>	Main / Aggressive	Main
IKE Version	<p>Select which version of IKE to use.</p> <p>IKE1: Use IKE Version 1 protocol.</p> <p>IKE2: Use IKE Version 2 protocol.</p>	IKE1 / IKE2	IKE2
Authentication Mode	<p>Select the authentication mode to use for the tunnel.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p> Note</p> <p>You must have certificates already imported to select X.509 or X.509 With CA. Refer to Certificate Management for more information.</p> </div> <p>Pre-Shared Key: Pre-Shared Key is a user-defined authentication string used by two systems to establish an IPsec VPN connection.</p> <p>X.509: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page.</p> <p>X.509 With CA: The local and remote systems will authenticate the VPN connection using both certificates imported in advance by the user on the Certificate Management > Local Certificate page and a CA certificate imported on the Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate page.</p>	Pre-Shared Key / X.509 / X.509 With CA	Pre-Shared Key

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Pre-Shared Key	Specify a pre-shared key to use to authenticate the IPsec VPN connection.	0 to 64 characters	
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to use for key exchange.	DES / 3DES / AES-128 / AES-192 / AES-256 / AES-256-GCM	AES-256
Hash Algorithm (If Encryption Algorithm is not AES-256-GCM)	Select the hash algorithm to use for key exchange.	MD5 / SHA-1 / SHA-256 / SHA-512	SHA-256
PRF (If Encryption Algorithm is AES-256-GCM)	Select the PRF algorithm for AES-256-GCM.	PRFSHA256 / PRFSHA384 / PRFSHA512	PRFSHA256
DH Group	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the key exchange group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 1(modp768) / DH 2(modp1024) / DH 5(modp1536) / DH 14(modp2048) / DH15(modp3072) / DH16(modp4096) / DH17(modp6144) / DH18(modp8192) / DH22(modp1024s160) / DH23(modp2048s224) / DH24(modp2048s256) / DH31(curve25519)	DH 14(modp2048)
IKE Lifetime	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for IKE SA.	30 to 43200	43200

Data Exchange (Phase 2)

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Encryption Algorithm	Select the encryption algorithm to use for data exchange.	DES / 3DES / AES-128 / AES-192 / AES-256 / AES-256-GCM	AES-256
Hash Algorithm (If Encryption Algorithm is not AES-256-GCM)	Select the hash algorithm to use for data exchange.	MD5 / SHA-1 / SHA-256 / SHA-512	SHA-256


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
PRF (If Encryption Algorithm is AES-256-GCM)	Select the PRF algorithm for AES-256-GCM.	PRFSHA256 / PRFSHA384 / PRFSHA512	PRFSHA256
Perfect Forward Secrecy	Enable or disable Perfect Forward Secrecy. When enabled, different security keys are used for different IPsec phases in order to enhance security.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
DH Group (If Perfect Forward Secrecy is Enabled)	Select the Diffie-Hellman group. This is the Key Exchange group between the remote and VPN gateways.	DH 1(modp768) / DH 2(modp1024) / DH 5(modp1536) / DH 14(modp2048) /DH15 (modp3072) / DH16 (modp4096) / DH17 (modp6144) / DH18 (modp8192) / DH22 (modp1024s160) / DH23 (modp2048s224) / DH24 (modp2048s256) / DH31 (curve25519)	DH 14 (modp2048)
SA Lifetime	Specify the lifetime (in minutes) for Phase 2 IKE SA.	30 to 43200	43200

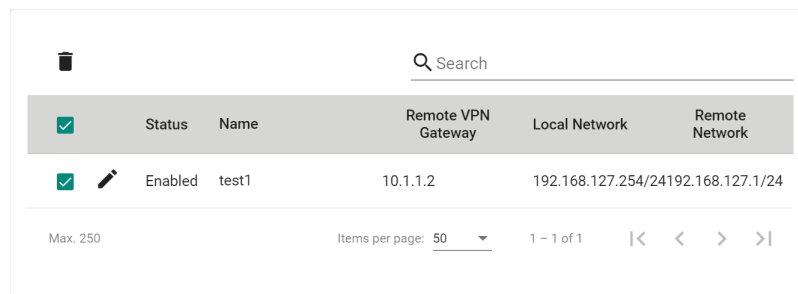
Dead Peer Detection

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Action	Specify the action the system should take when a dead peer is detected. Hold: Maintain the VPN tunnel. Restart: Reconnect the VPN tunnel. Clear: Clear the VPN tunnel. Disabled: Disable Dead Peer Detection.	Hold / Restart / Clear / Disabled	Restart
Retry Interval	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which Dead Peer Detection messages are sent.	0 to 3600	30
Confidence Interval	Specify the interval (in seconds) at which the system will check to see if the connection is alive or not.	0 to 3600	120

Delete IPsec

Menu Path: VPN > IPsec - IPsec Settings

You can delete tunnels by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.

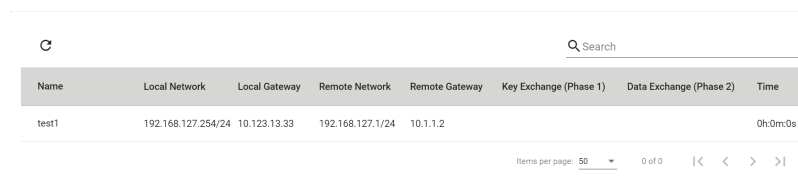


<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Name	Remote VPN Gateway	Local Network	Remote Network
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Enabled	test1	10.1.1.2	192.168.127.254/24	192.168.127.1/24

IPSec Status

Menu Path: VPN > IPSec - IPSec Status

This page lets you see the status of your IPSec VPN tunnels.



Name	Local Network	Local Gateway	Remote Network	Remote Gateway	Key Exchange (Phase 1)	Data Exchange (Phase 2)	Time
test1	192.168.127.254/24	10.123.13.33	192.168.127.1/24	10.1.1.2			0h:0m:0s

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the tunnel.
Local Network	Shows the local network address for the tunnel.
Local Gateway	Shows the local gateway address for the tunnel.
Remote Network	Shows the remote network address for the tunnel.
Remote Gateway	Shows the remote gateway address for the tunnel.
Key Exchange (Phase 1)	Shows the status of key exchange phase.
Data Exchange (Phase 2)	Shows the status of the data exchange phase.
Time	Shows how long the connection has been up.

L2TP Server

Menu Path: VPN > L2TP Server

This page lets you configure the L2TP server function of your device. L2TP is a popular choice for VPN applications with remote roaming users since an L2TP client is built into the Microsoft Windows operating system. Since L2TP does not provide any encryption, it is usually combined with IPsec to provide data encryption.

This page includes these tabs:

- Server Setting (WAN)
- User Name Settings

Server Setting (WAN)

Menu Path: VPN > L2TP Server - Server Setting (WAN)

This page lets you enable and configure the L2TP server function of your device.

L2TP Server

Server Setting (WAN) | User Name Settings

L2TP Server Mode *
Disabled

Local IP
0.0.0.0

Offered IP: Start
0.0.0.0

Offered IP: End
0.0.0.0

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
L2TP Server Mode	Enable or disable the L2TP server.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Local IP	Specify the IP address of the local subnet.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Offered IP: Start	Specify the starting IP address of the offered IP range used for L2TP clients.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
Offered IP: End	Specify the ending IP address of the offered IP range used for L2TP clients.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0

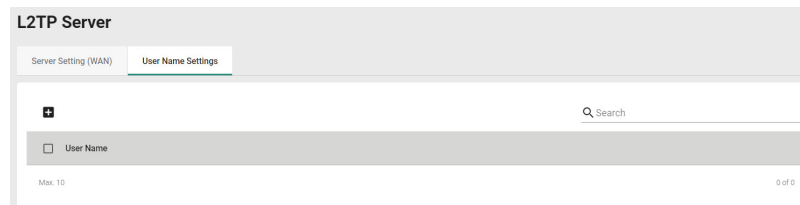
User Name Settings

Menu Path: VPN > L2TP Server - User Name Settings

This page lets you manage users that can connect to your device's L2TP server.

Limitations


You can add up to 10 users for the L2TP Server.



UI Setting	Description
User Name	Shows the name of the user account.

Create New Account for L2TP

Menu Path: VPN > L2TP Server - User Name Settings

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **VPN > L2TP Server - User Name Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new user account for the device's L2TP server. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create New Account for L2TP

Username *
0 / 32

New Password *
0 / 32

CANCEL

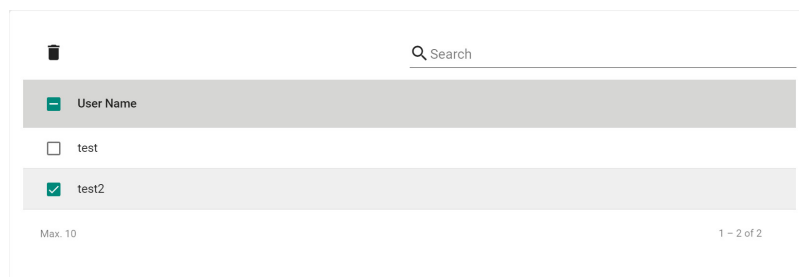
CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Username	Enter a username for the L2TP account.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
New Password	Enter a password for the L2TP account.	1 to 32 characters	N/A

Delete Account for L2TP

Menu Path: VPN > L2TP Server - User Name Settings

You can delete an account by using the checkboxes to select the accounts you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.




OpenVPN Client

Menu Path: VPN > OpenVPN Client

This page lets you manage the OpenVPN Client feature of your device.

Note

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.

 **Note**

For models with WAN redundancy, such as the EDR-G9004, running the OpenVPN client under WAN redundancy mode currently only supports failover, not failback. This means the device will not automatically switch back to the primary connection once it is restored.

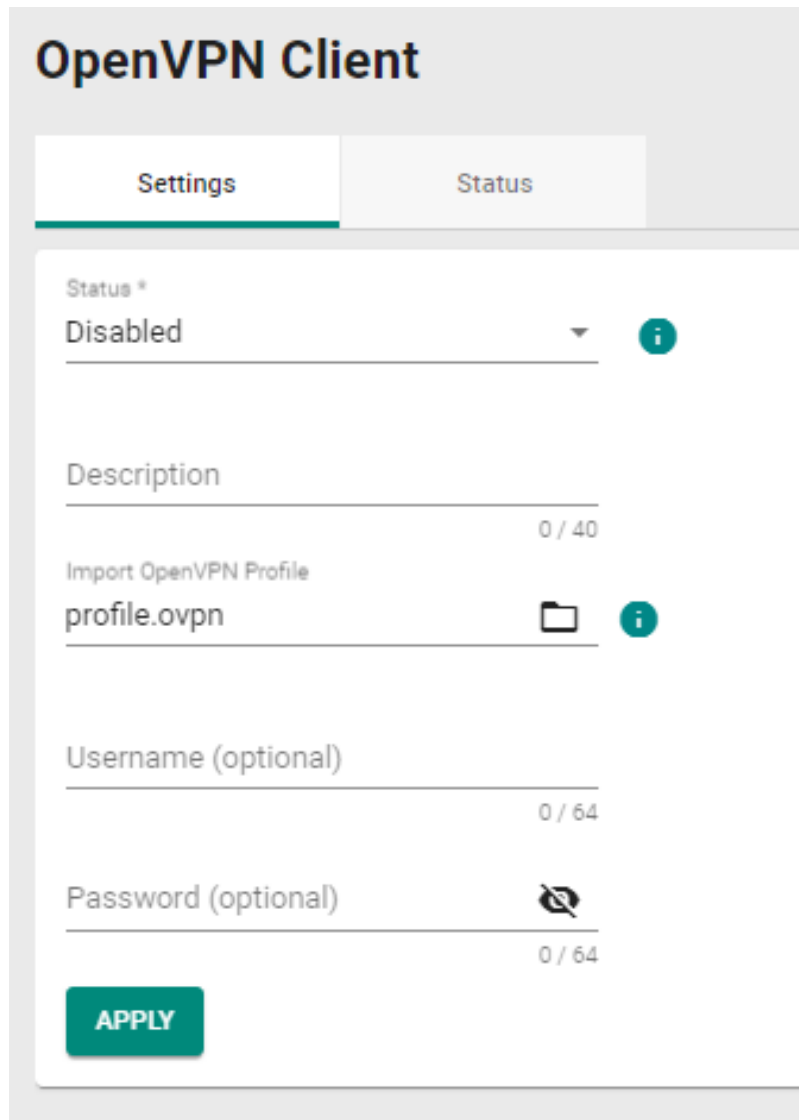
This page includes these tabs:

- Settings
- Status

OpenVPN Client - Settings

Menu Path: [VPN](#) > [OpenVPN Client - Settings](#)

This page lets you manage your OpenVPN Client settings.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or Disable OpenVPN Client. IPsec and OpenVPN cannot be enabled simultaneously.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Description	Specify the description for the OpenVPN Client connection.	0 to 40 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Import OpenVPN Profile	Import the .ovpn file for OpenVPN Client setup. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note Importing OpenVPN profiles is not supported in the CLI interface.</p> </div>	.ovpn files	N/A
Username (optional)	Specify the username.	0 to 64 characters	N/A
Password (optional)	Specify the password.	0 to 64 characters	N/A

OpenVPN Client - Status

Menu Path: VPN > OpenVPN Client - Status

This page lets you view the status of your OpenVPN Client connection.

Status	Description	OpenVPN Server	OpenVPN Client IP Address	Duration	Data Received / Sent	Last Connection
Disconnected	test			0h:0m:0s	0 Byte / 0 Byte	

UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows the status of the connection.
Description	Shows the description of the connection.
OpenVPN Server	Shows the OpenVPN Server IP Address.
OpenVPN Client IP Address	Shows the OpenVPN Client IP Address.
Duration	Shows the duration of OpenVPN connection.
Data Received / Sent	Shows the number of bytes received/sent through the OpenVPN tunnel.
Last Connection	Shows when the device was last connected to the OpenVPN server.

Certificate Management

Menu Path: Certificate Management

The Certificate Management settings area lets you manage X.509 digital certificates for your device. These certificates are commonly used for IPsec, OpenVPN, and HTTPS authentication. This device can act as a root CA (Certificate Authority) and issue a trusted root certificate. Alternatively, you can import certificates from other CAs.

Certificates are a time-based form of authentication. Before processing certificates, please ensure that your device is synced with the local device. For more information about syncing device time, please refer to System > Time.

This section includes these pages:

- Local Certificate
- Trusted CA Certificate
- Certificate Signing Request

⚠ Warning

For security reasons, if the device is deployed without a CA server environment, we strongly recommend using short lifetime certificates (e.g., 24 hours) to ensure system security.

✍ Note

Because the device's default signature certificates are manufactured without third-party signatures, there is a potential risk of man-in-the-middle attacks that impersonate services, with the client-side being unable to verify.

Therefore, we recommend that upon activating the device, you use the Certificate Management > Local Certificate feature to add or update the certificate to one that belongs to your company and that is issued by a recognized certification authority in order to ensure the security and trustworthiness of your network communications.

Certificate Management - User Privileges

Privileges to Certificate Management settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Local Certificate	R/W	-	-

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Trusted CA Certificate	R/W	-	-
Certificate Signing Request	R/W	-	-

Local Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Local Certificate

This page lets you import and manage X.509 digital certificates.

🔒 Limitations

You can import up to 10 local certificates.

Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	Key Length
Max. 10 0 of 0				

UI Setting	Description
Label	Shows the label identifying the certificate.
Issued To	Shows who the certificate was issued to.
Issued By	Shows who the certificate was issued by.
Expiration Date	Shows the expiration date of the certificate.
Key Length	Shows the key length of the certificate.

Generate Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Local Certificate

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Certificate Management > Local Certificate** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you import a certificate from your local computer. Click **UPGRADE** to save your changes and add the new certificate.

Generate Certificate

Import Identity Certifi... ▾

Label
0 / 30

Select Certificate * 

CANCEL

UPGRADE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Import Identity Certificate	<p>Select the type of certificate to import.</p> <p>Certificate: Used for certificates with a .crt file extension.</p> <p>Certificate From CSR: Used for certificates issued by another CA.</p> <p>Certificate From PKCS#12: Used for certificates with a .p12 file extension.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Before importing a certificate issued by another CA, you should import its related trusted CA certificate first on the Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate page. Otherwise, your device may not recognize the certificate and reject the connection.</p> </div>	Certificate / Certificate From CSR / Certificate From PKCS#12	N/A
Label	Enter a label to help identify the certificate. If this is empty, the file name of the certificate will be used.	1 to 30 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
CSR Common Name (if Import Identity Certificate is Certificate From CSR)	Select the CSR common name for the certificate. <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; background-color: #f9f9f9; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>CSRs must be created in advance on the Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate page to select them here.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of CSR names	N/A
Import Password (if Import Identity Certificate is Certificate From PKCS#12)	Enter the password for the certificate.	0 to 32 characters	N/A
Select Certificate	Click this field and select the certificate file from your computer.	Select a file from your computer	N/A

Delete Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Local Certificate

Local Certificate

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Label	Issued To	Issued By	Expiration Date	Key Length
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	10.123.13.33.crt	= TW, O = MAT, OU = MAT, CN = 10.123.13.33, emailAddress =	= JP, ST = JP, L = Okazaki, O = Mikawa, OU = JP, CN =	notBefore=Aug 18 06:21:00 2023 GMT,notAfter=Aug 17 06:21:00 2024 GMT	2048

Max. 10

You can delete certificates by using the checkboxes to select the certificates you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete ()** icon.

Note

You cannot delete a certificate if it is currently in use. If you would like to delete the item, you can go to SSL setting and change the certificate source to Auto Generate then unlock the certificate you'd like to change.

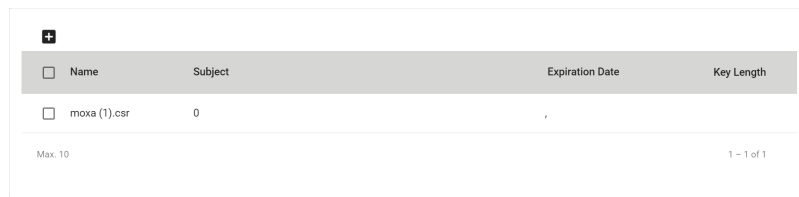
Trusted CA Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate

This page lets you import and manage trusted CA certificates.

Limitations

You can import up to 10 trusted CA certificates.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Subject	Expiration Date	Key Length
<input type="checkbox"/>	moxa (1).csr	0	.	

Max: 10 1 - 1 of 1

UI Setting

Description

Name

Shows the name of the certificate file.

Subject

Shows the subject from the certificate.

Expiration Date

Shows the expiration date of the certificate.

Key Length

Shows the key length of the certificate.

Generate CA Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you import a CA certificate from your local computer. Click **UPGRADE** to save your changes and add the new certificate.

Generate CA Certificate

Select CA Certificate *



CANCEL

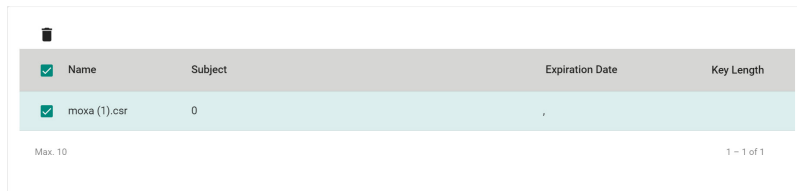
UPGRADE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Select Certificate	Click this field and select the certificate file from your computer.	Select a file from your computer	N/A

Delete CA Certificate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Trusted CA Certificate

You can delete certificates by using the checkboxes to select the certificates you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.



Certificate Signing Request

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request

This page lets you generate and manage key pairs and certificate signing requests (CSRs). Certificate signing requests are needed to apply for and import a digital identity certificate from a CA.

To get a certificate from a CA for connection purposes, you will need to:

1. Generate a key pair
2. Generate a CSR

This page includes these tabs:

- Key Pair Generate

- CSR Generate

Key Pair Generate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - Key Pair Generate

This page lets you generate and manage key pairs, which are used to generate CSRs.

🔒 Limitations

You can generate up to 10 key pairs.



UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the RSA key.
Key Pair Size	Shows the size used for the key pair.

Generate RSA Key

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - Key Pair Generate

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - Key Pair Generate** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you generate a new key pair to use when generating a CSR. Click **GENERATE** to save your changes and add the new key pair.

Generate RSA Key

Name *
0 / 30

Key Pair Size *
▼


CANCEL


GENERATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the RSA key.	1 to 30 characters	N/A
Key Pair Size	Select the key pair size to use.	1024 Bit / 2048 Bit	N/A

Delete RSA Key

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - Key Pair Generate

You can delete key pairs by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Key Pair Size
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	test1	1024
<input type="checkbox"/>	test2	2048

Max. 10 1 - 2 of 2

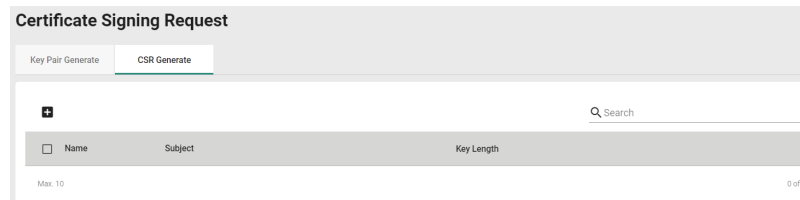
CSR Generate

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate

This page lets you generate and manage CSRs.

🔒 Limitations

You can generate up to 10 CSRs.



UI Setting

Description

Name

Shows the name of the CSR.

Subject

Shows the subject of the CSR.

Key Length

Shows the key length used by the CSR.

Generate Certificate Signing Request

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you generate a new CSR. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new CSR.

Generate Certificate Signing Request

Private Key *

Country Name (2 letter ... At least 2 characters 0 / 2

Locality Name * 0 / 16

Organization Name * 0 / 16

Organizational Unit Na... 0 / 16

Common Name * 0 / 16

Email Address * 0 / 64

Subject Alternative Na... 0 / 16

CANCEL

GENERATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Private Key	Select the key pair to use. To generate and manage key pairs, refer to Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - Key Pair Generate .	Drop-down list of key pairs	N/A
Country Name (2 letter code)	Specify the 2-letter country code for the CSR.	2 characters	N/A
Locality Name	Specify the locality name for the CSR.	1 to 16 characters	N/A
Organization Name	Specify the organization name for the CSR.	1 to 16 characters	N/A
Organization Unit Name	Specify the organization unit name for the CSR.	1 to 16 characters	N/A
Common Name	Specify the common name for the CSR.	1 to 16 characters	N/A
Email Address	Specify the email address for the CSR.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Subject Alternative Name	Specify the subject alternative name for the CSR.	1 to 16 characters	N/A

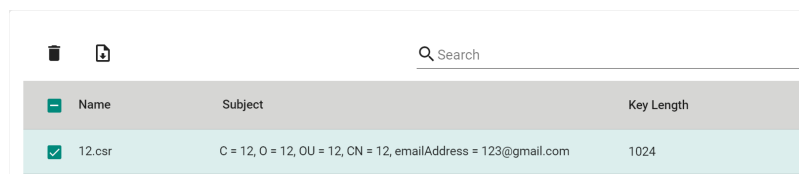
Export Certificate Signing Request

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate

You can export a CSR by using the checkboxes to select the entry you want to export, then clicking the **Export** (📄) icon.

Note

The export icon will only be available when a single entry is selected; it will not be available if multiple entries are selected.



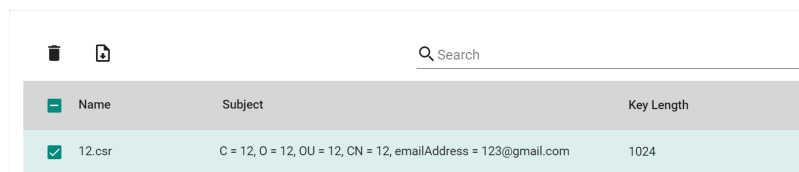
The screenshot shows a web interface for managing Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs). At the top, there are icons for a trash can and a document, and a search bar labeled "Search". Below this is a table with three columns: "Name", "Subject", and "Key Length". The table contains one row with the following data: "12.csr" in the Name column, "C = 12, O = 12, OU = 12, CN = 12, emailAddress = 123@gmail.com" in the Subject column, and "1024" in the Key Length column. A checkbox in the first column of this row is checked.

Name	Subject	Key Length
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12.csr	C = 12, O = 12, OU = 12, CN = 12, emailAddress = 123@gmail.com	1024

Delete Certificate Signing Request

Menu Path: Certificate Management > Certificate Signing Request - CSR Generate

You can delete CSRs by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** (🗑️) icon.



The screenshot shows a web interface for managing Certificate Signing Requests (CSRs). At the top, there are icons for a trash can and a document, and a search bar labeled "Search". Below this is a table with three columns: "Name", "Subject", and "Key Length". The table contains one row with the following data: "12.csr" in the Name column, "C = 12, O = 12, OU = 12, CN = 12, emailAddress = 123@gmail.com" in the Subject column, and "1024" in the Key Length column. A checkbox in the first column of this row is checked.

Name	Subject	Key Length
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 12.csr	C = 12, O = 12, OU = 12, CN = 12, emailAddress = 123@gmail.com	1024

Security

Menu Path: Security

The Security settings area lets you configure security settings to help you secure your device and your network.

This settings area includes these sections:

- Device Security
- Network Security
- Authentication

- MXview Alert Notification

Security - User Privileges

Privileges to Security settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Device Security			
Login Policy	R/W	R	R
Trusted Access	R/W	R/W	R
SSH & SSL	R/W	R/W	-
Network Security			
IEEE 802.1X	R/W	R/W	R
Authentication			
Login Authentication	R/W	-	-
RADIUS	R/W	-	-
TACACS+	R/W	-	-
MXview Alert Notification	R/W	R/W	R

Device Security

Menu Path: Security > Device Security

This section lets you configure security settings to protect your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Login Policy
- Trusted Access
- SSH & SSL

Login Policy

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > Login Policy

This page lets you configure the login policies for your device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Login Policy

Login Message
0 / 512

Login Authentication Failure Message
0 / 512

Login Failure Account Lockout
Disabled

Login Failure Retry Threshold *
5
1 - 10 times

Lockout Duration *
5
1 - 10 min.

Auto Logout After *
5
0 - 1440 min.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Login Message	Specify the welcome message to display when users log in to the device.	0 to 512 characters	N/A
Login Authentication Failure Message	Specify the message to display if the user fails to log in. <div style="background-color: #fff9c4; padding: 5px;"><p>Warning</p><p>The Login Authentication Failure Message should not include information about passwords or other sensitive information.</p></div>	0 to 512 characters	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Login Failure Account Lockout	Enable or disable the lockout function, which will temporarily prevent users from logging in for the Lockout Duration after the Login Failure Retry Threshold is exceeded. This can be useful for preventing brute force attacks.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Login Failure Retry Threshold	Specify the number of login retry attempts before the user is locked out for the Lockout Duration .	1 to 10	5
Lockout Duration	Specify the lockout duration (in minutes) during which a locked-out user will be unable to log in.	1 to 10	5
Auto Logout After	Specify the amount of time a user can be idle before they will be automatically logged out from the device.	1 to 1440	5

Trusted Access

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > Trusted Access

This page lets you limit access to the device to trusted IP addresses you specify. You can also limit access to the device to LAN connections only.

Limitations

You can create up to 10 trusted IP entries.

Trusted Access Settings

Warning

Depending on the features you enable, you may lose access to your device if the computer you are using to configure the device is not in the Trusted IP List or connected through a LAN connection.

Note

Trusted Access is restricted to the user interface, which includes the Web UI, CLI interface, and Moxa commands from software such as MXconfig and MXview.

Both the DNS Server and NTP Server are only accessible through LAN, VLAN, and Bridge interfaces. In other words, DNS clients and NTP clients cannot access the DNS or NTP service via WAN interfaces on the device.

Trusted IP List (Disabling this will allow all IP connections)

Disabled

Accept All LAN Port Connections

Enabled

Log

Disabled

Severity

Emergency

Log Destination

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Trusted IP List	Enable or disable the Trusted IP List. Enabled: Only IP addresses in the Trusted IP List can access the device. Disabled: Any IP address can access the device.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Accept All LAN Port Connections	Enable or disable accepting all connections from LAN connections. Enabled: The device can only be accessed through a LAN connection. Disabled: The device can be accessed through any connection.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Log	Enable or disable Trusted Access event logging.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Severity	Select the severity level to assign to Trusted Access events. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Emergency

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Log Destination	<p>Specify where to send Trusted Access event logs. You can select multiple options.</p> <p>Syslog: Event logs will be sent to a syslog server.</p> <p>Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Syslog for more information.</p> <p>Trap: Event notifications will be sent to a trap server.</p> <p>Refer to Diagnostics > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.</p> <p>Local Storage: Event logs will be stored on local storage and will show up in the device's Event Log.</p> <p>Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log for more information.</p>	Syslog / Trap / Local Storage	N/A

Trusted IP List

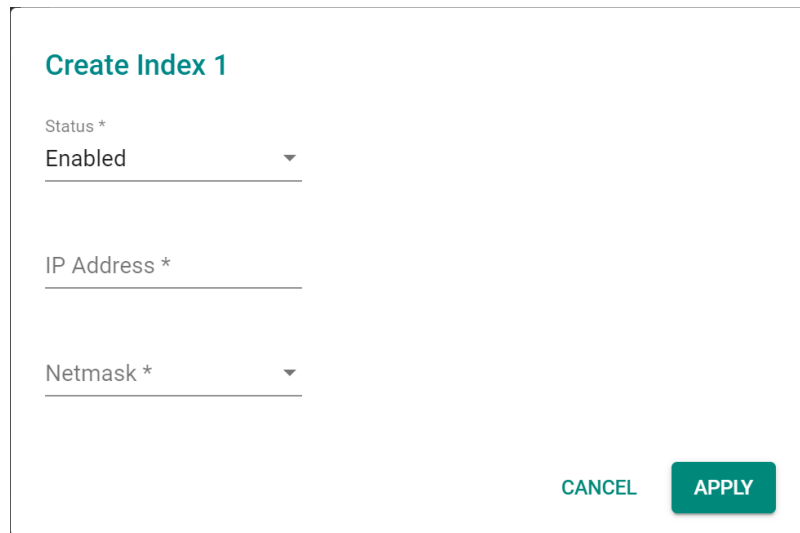
The screenshot displays a configuration window for the 'Trusted IP List'. At the top, there are icons for adding (+) and sorting (≡) entries, and a search bar labeled 'Search'. Below this is a table with the following headers: Index, Status, IP Address, and Netmask. The table is currently empty, with a 'Max. 10' limit indicator on the left and '0 of 0' entries on the right. An 'APPLY' button is located at the bottom left of the configuration area.

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the Trusted IP entry.
Status	Shows whether the Trusted IP entry is enabled or disabled.
IP Address	Shows the IP address of the Trusted IP entry.
Netmask	Shows the netmask of the Trusted IP entry.

Trusted Access - Create Index

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > Trusted Access

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Security > Device Security > Trusted Access** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add a trusted IP entry. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new entry.



Create Index 1

Status *
Enabled

IP Address *

Netmask *

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the Trusted IP entry.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
IP Address	Specify the IP address of the trusted host(s).	Valid IP address	N/A
Netmask	Select a netmask for the trusted host(s).	Drop-down list of netmasks	N/A

SSH & SSL

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL

This page lets you manage your SSH key and SSL certificate.

This page includes these tabs:

- SSH
- SSL

SSH

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL - SSH

This page lets you manage your device's SSH key.

This shows you when the current SSH key was created. Click **REGENERATE** to generate a new SSH key for your device.

▲ Warning

Regenerating the SSH key will restart the device's system services and will make the device temporarily unavailable.

Created on
Aug 10 07:23:59 2023 GMT
.....

Regenerate SSH Key

REGENERATE

SSL

Menu Path: Security > Device Security > SSH & SSL - SSL

This page lets you manage your device's SSL certificate. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

SSL Settings

Certificate Source *
Local Certificate Database ▾

Certificate File
10.123.13.33.crt ▾

Created on
Aug 18 06:21:00 2023 GMT
.....

Expiration Date
Aug 17 06:21:00 2024 GMT
.....

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Certificate Source	<p>Select the source for your device's SSL certificate.</p> <p>Auto Generate: Your device will generate a certificate automatically.</p> <p>Local Certificate Database: Your device will use an imported certificate from the Local Certificate database. You will only be able to select certificates from a CSR or PKCS#12 certificates.</p> <p>Refer to Certificate Management for more information.</p>	Auto Generate / Local Certificate Database	Auto Generate
Certificate File (if Certificate Source is Local Certificate Database)	Select the imported certificate file to use.	Drop-down list of applicable imported certificates	N/A
Created on (View-only)	Shows when the current certificate was created.	N/A	N/A
Expiration Date (View-only)	Shows when the current certificate will expire.	N/A	N/A

Network Security

Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Network Security](#)

This section lets you manage your device's network security features.

This section includes these pages:

- [IEEE 802.1X](#)

IEEE 802.1X

Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [IEEE 802.1X](#)

This page lets you manage your device's IEEE 802.1X authentication feature.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- IEEE 802.1X Status
- RADIUS

- Local Database

IEEE 802.1X - General

Menu Path: Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - General

This page lets you configure your device's IEEE 802.1X settings.

IEEE 802.1X Settings

Authentication Mode *
Local Database ▼

Authentication Retry *
Enabled ▼

Authentication Retry Interval *
3600

60 - 65535 sec.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Mode	Select the method of authentication to use. RADIUS: Use a RADIUS server for authentication. Local Database: Use the local database for authentication. RADIUS, Local: Use both a RADIUS server and the local database for authentication.	RADIUS / Local Database / RADIUS, Local	Local Database
Authentication Retry	Enable or disable reauthentication.	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled
Authentication Retry Interval	Specify the authentication retry interval in seconds.	60 to 65535	3600

IEEE 802.1X Port List

Port	Status
3	Disabled
4	Disabled
5	Disabled
6	Disabled
8	Disabled
G1	Disabled
G2	Disabled

UI Setting Description

Port Shows which port the entry is for.

Status Shows whether IEEE 802.1X port access control is enabled or disabled for the port.

IEEE 802.1X Status

Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [IEEE 802.1X - IEEE 802.1X Status](#)

This page lets you see the IEEE 802.1X status of your ports.

Port	Supplicant	User	Port Status
------	------------	------	-------------

UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows which port the entry is for.
Supplicant	Shows the MAC address of the device requesting access.
User	Shows the user's name.
Port Status	Shows the status of the 802.1X port. INITIALIZE: The device is rebooting, the supplicant is sending an EAPoL start packet, or the port link is down. CONNECTING: Communication is being established with a supplicant. DISCONNECTED: This state is entered from the CONNECTING state, the AUTHENTICATED state, and the ABORTING state if an explicit logoff request is received from the supplicant, and from the CONNECTING state if the number of allowed reauthentication attempts has been exceeded. AUTHENTICATING: The supplicant is being authenticated. AUTHENTICATED: The supplicant was successfully authenticated. ABORTING: The authentication procedure is being prematurely aborted due to receipt of a reauthentication request, an EAPoL-Start frame, an EAPoL-Logoff frame, or an authTimeout. HELD: Authentication of the supplicant was unsuccessful.

IEEE 802.1X - RADIUS

Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [IEEE 802.1X - RADIUS](#)

This page lets you specify a RADIUS server to use for IEEE 802.1X authentication. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

The system will use the primary RADIUS server by default. If the primary RADIUS server is unavailable, it will use the secondary RADIUS server.

Server Address 1	Port
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
0 / 64	1 - 65535
Shared Key	<input type="password" value=""/>
0 / 30	
Server Address 2	Port
<input type="text" value=""/>	<input type="text" value="1812"/>
0 / 64	1 - 65535
Shared Key	<input type="password" value=""/>
0 / 30	
<input type="button" value="APPLY"/>	

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Server Address 1	Specify the IP address or domain name for the primary RADIUS server.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
UDP Port	Specify the port number for the primary RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	1812
Shared Key	Specify the shared key for the primary RADIUS server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
Server Address 2	Specify the IP address or domain name for the secondary RADIUS server.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
UDP Port	Specify the port number for the secondary RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	1812
Shared Key	Specify the shared key for the secondary RADIUS server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A

Local Database

Menu Path: [Security](#) > [Network Security](#) > [IEEE 802.1X - Local Database](#)

This page lets you create local database user accounts to use with IEEE 802.1X authentication.



UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Username	Shows the username of the account.
-----------------	------------------------------------

Local Database - Create Account Settings

Menu Path: Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - Local Database

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Security > Network Security > IEEE 802.1X - Local Database** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new user account for IEEE 802.1X authentication. Click **APPLY** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create Account Settings

Username 0 / 32

Password *  0 / 64

Confirm Password *  0 / 64

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Username	Specify the username for this account.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password for this user account.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Password	Re-enter the password for this user account.	1 to 64 characters	N/A

Authentication

Menu Path: Security > Authentication

This section lets you manage login authentication for your device.

This section includes these pages:

- Login Authentication
- RADIUS
- TACACS+

Login Authentication

Menu Path: Security > Authentication > Login Authentication

This page lets you configure your device's login authentication settings. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Login Authentication

Authentication Protocol

Local

RADIUS

TACACS+

RADIUS, Local

TACACS+, Local

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Protocol	<p>Select the method of authentication to use.</p> <p>Local: Use the local database for authentication.</p> <p>RADIUS: Use a RADIUS server for authentication.</p> <p>TACACS+: Use a TACACS+ Server for authentication.</p> <p>RADIUS, Local: Use a RADIUS server for authentication first. If it fails, the device will use the local database for authentication.</p> <p>TACACS+, Local: Use a TACACS+ server for authentication first. If it fails, the device will use the local database for authentication.</p>	Local / RADIUS / TACACS+ / RADIUS, Local / TACACS+, Local	Local
<p>Warning</p> <p>If you configure the device to use a remote server such as RADIUS or TACACS+ but don't use a local database as a backup, you will be unable to log in through network services (HTTP/HTTPS/Telnet/SSH) if the device is unable to connect to the remote server for authentication. In such an event, the only way to access the device would be through the console port.</p>			

RADIUS

Menu Path: Security > Authentication > RADIUS

This page lets you specify a RADIUS server to use for login authentication. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Note

The system will use the primary RADIUS server by default. If the primary RADIUS server is unavailable, it will use the secondary RADIUS server.

Authentication Type *

EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2 ▾

Server Address 1 UDP Port
1812
0 / 63 1 - 65535

Shared Key 
0 / 64

Server Address 2 UDP Port
1812
0 / 63 1 - 65535

Shared Key 
0 / 64

APPLY





UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Authentication Type	Select the authentication method to use for the RADIUS servers.	PAP / CHAP / EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2	EAP-PEAP MSCHAPv2
Server Address 1	Specify the IP address or domain name for the primary RADIUS server.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
UDP Port	Specify the port number for the primary RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	1812
Shared Key	Specify the shared key for the primary RADIUS server.	0 to 64 characters	N/A
Server Address 2	Specify the IP address or domain name for the secondary RADIUS server.	Valid IP address or domain name	N/A
UDP Port	Specify the port number for the secondary RADIUS server.	1 to 65535	1812
Shared Key	Specify the shared key for the secondary RADIUS server.	0 to 64 characters	N/A

TACACS+

Menu Path: Security > Authentication > TACACS+

This page lets you set up TACACS+ protocol to authenticate remote users.

TACACS+ Server

Server IP Address 1	TCP Port *
0.0.0.0	49
	1 - 65535
Share Key	 
0 / 64	
Auth Type *	
CHAP	▼
Timeout *	
5	
5 - 180	sec.
Retry *	
1	
0 - 5	times
Server IP Address 2	TCP Port *
0.0.0.0	49
	1 - 65535
Share Key	 
0 / 64	
Auth Type *	
CHAP	▼
Timeout *	
5	
5 - 180	sec.
Retry *	
1	
0 - 5	times

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Server IP Address 1	Specify the IPv4 address of the primary TACACS+ server to use. Setting the address to 0.0.0.0 will disable use of a primary TACACS+ server. When authenticating a remote user, the device will try to authenticate them using the primary server specified by Server IP Address 1 . If the device fails to connect to the primary server, it will try to authenticate by using the secondary server specified by Server IP Address 2 .	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port to use for authentication requests to the primary TACACS+ server.	1 to 65535	49
Shared Key	Specify the shared encryption key for the primary TACACS+ server.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Auth Type	Specify which authentication type the primary TACACS+ server uses.	PAP, CHAP, ASCII	CHAP
Timeout	Specify the amount of time in seconds a client will wait for a response from the primary TACACS+ server before re-transmitting the request.	5 to 120 (sec)	5
Retry	Specify the number of times the device will try to contact the primary TACACS+ server.	0 to 5	1
Server IP Address2	Specify the IPv4 address of the secondary TACACS+ server to use. Setting the address to 0.0.0.0 will disable use of a secondary TACACS+ server.	Valid IP address	0.0.0.0
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port to use for authentication requests to the secondary TACACS+ server.	1 to 65535	49
Shared Key	Specify the shared encryption key for the secondary TACACS+ server.	1 to 64 characters	N/A
Auth Type	Specify which authentication type the secondary TACACS+ server uses.	PAP, CHAP, ASCII	CHAP
Time out	Specify the amount of time in seconds a client will wait for a response from the secondary TACACS+ server before re-transmitting the request.	5 to 120 (sec)	5
Retry	Specify the number of times the device will try to contact the secondary TACACS+ server.	0 to 5	1

MXview Alert Notification

Menu Path: Security > MXview Alert Notification

This page lets you configure device notifications for MXview.

This page includes these tabs:

- Security Notification Setting
- Security Status

Security Notification Setting

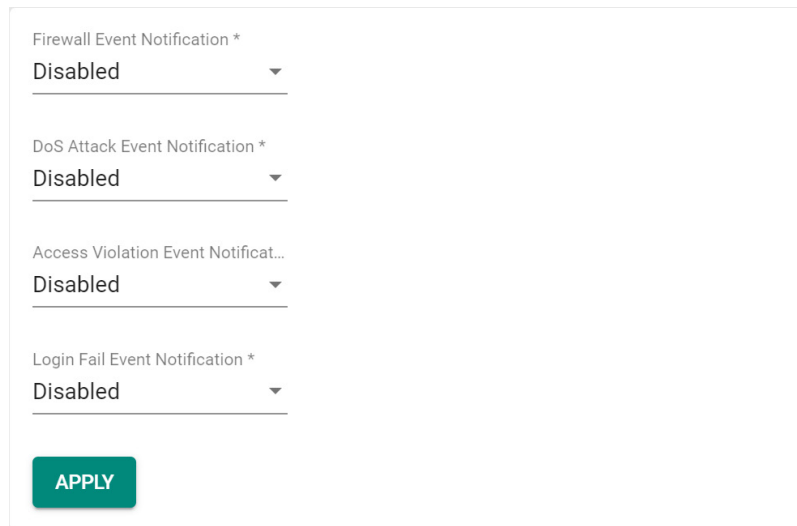
Menu Path: Security > MXview Alert Notification - Security Notification Setting

This page lets you configure your MXview security alert notification settings.

Note

Notifications are handled by the SNMP Trap function, which should be configured in advance. Refer to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform for more information.

In MXview, go to Preferences > Server > SNMP Trap Server and make sure the matching SNMP version is selected.



Firewall Event Notification *

Disabled

DoS Attack Event Notification *

Disabled





Access Violation Event Notificat...

Disabled

Login Fail Event Notification *

Disabled


APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Firewall Event Notification	<p>Enable or disable notifications for Firewall events.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>After enabling this, you will need to enable logging and select Trap as the log destination for each firewall policy and feature you want notifications for.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
DoS Attack Event Notification	<p>Enable or disable notifications for DoS attack events.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>After enabling this, you will need to go to Firewall > DoS Policy to enable logging and select Trap as the log destination to receive notifications.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Access Violation Event Notification	<p>Enable or disable notifications for Access Violation events.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>After enabling this, you will need to go to Security > Device Security > Trusted Access to enable logging and select Trap as the log destination to receive notifications.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Login Fail Event Notification	<p>Enable or disable notifications for Login Fail events.</p> <p> Note</p> <p>After enabling this, you will need to go to Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications to enable logging and select Trap as the log destination to receive notifications.</p>	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Security Status

Menu Path: Security > MXview Alert Notification - Security Status

This page lets you see the status of all MXview security event types.

Clicking the **Reset** () icon will clear the status of all events to default (**safe**).

Event	Status
Firewall	safe
DoS Attack	safe
Access Violation	safe
Login Fail	safe

Max. 10 Items per page: 50 1 - 4 of 4 << < > >>

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Event Shows the name of the event type. Event types shown will vary depending on the device model.

Note
The status of **Device Lockdown** can not be accessed in MXview One.

Status Shows the current status of the event type.
safe: No event of this type has been detected.
attacked: An event of this type was detected.

Diagnostics

Menu Path: Diagnostics

The Diagnostics settings area lets you keep track of system and network performance, check event logs, and check the status of the port connectors.

This settings area includes these sections:

- System Status
- Network Status
- Event Logs and Notifications
- Tools

Diagnostics - User Privileges

Privileges to Diagnostics settings are granted to the different authority levels as follows. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Status			
Utilization	R/W	R/W	R
Fiber Check	R/W	R/W	R
Network Status			
Network Statistics	R	R	R
LLDP	R/W	R/W	R
ARP Table	R	R	R
Event Log & Notifications			
Event Log	R/W	R/W	R
Event Notifications	R/W	R/W	R
Syslog	R/W	R	R
SNMP Trap/Inform	R/W	-	-
Email Settings	R/W	R	R
SMS Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Tools			
Port Mirroring	R/W	R/W	R
Ping	R/W	R/W	R
Diagnostic Support	R/W	R/W	R
NetFlow	R/W	R/W	R

System Status

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#)

This section lets you check on various system statuses.

This section includes these pages:

- Utilization
- Fiber Check

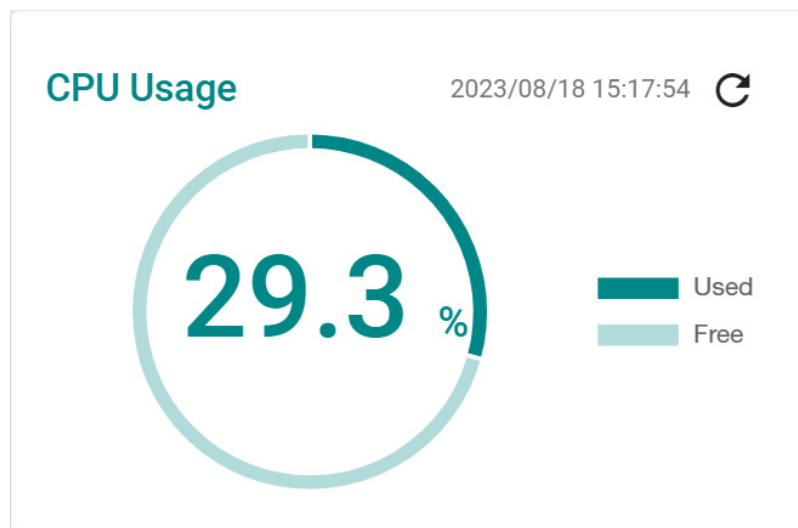
Utilization

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [System Status](#) > [Utilization](#)

This page lets you monitor current and historical system resource utilization.

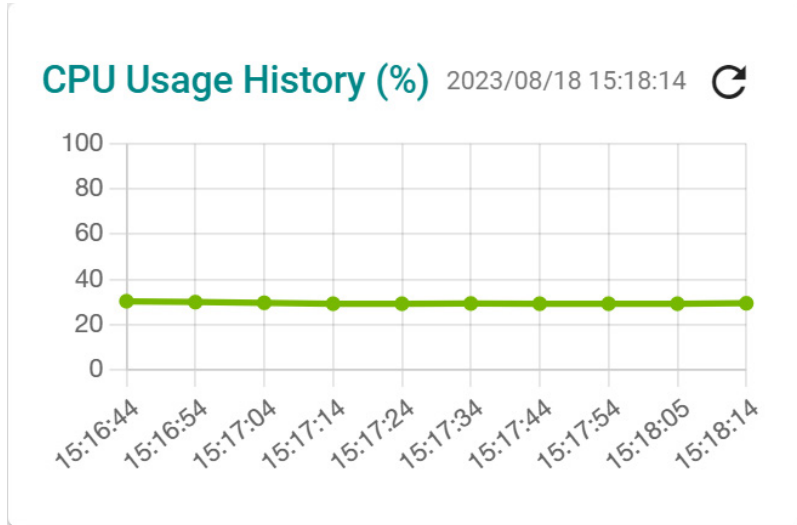
CPU Usage

This shows the current CPU usage of your device.



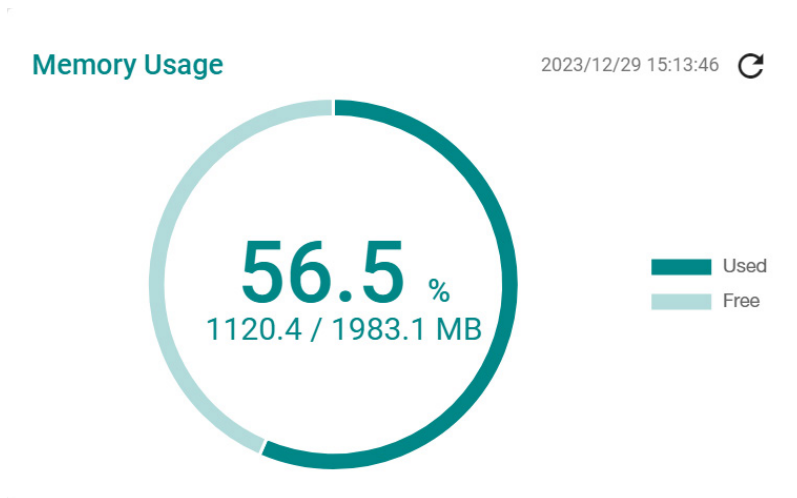
CPU Usage History

This shows the CPU usage of your device over time.



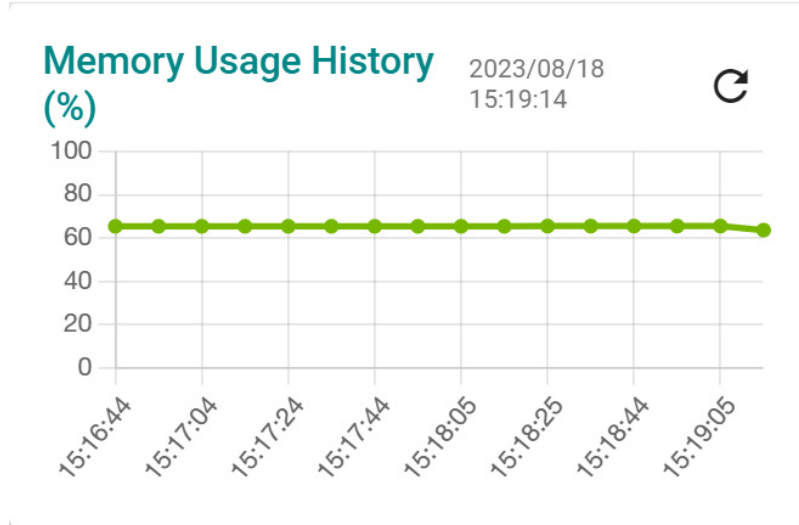
Memory Usage

This shows your device's current memory usage.



Memory Usage History

This shows your device's memory usage over time.



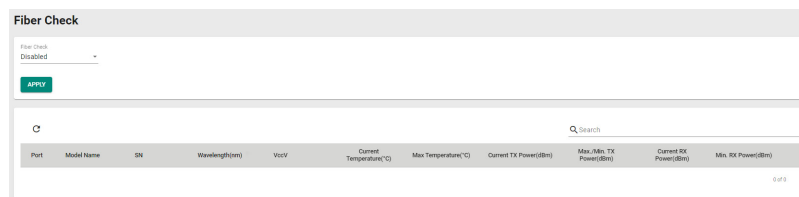
Fiber Check

Menu Path: Diagnostics > System Status > Fiber Check

This page lets you diagnose the link status of the device's fiber connectors, including SFP and fixed type (multi-mode SC/ST and single-mode SC) connectors. It lets you monitor the temperature, TX/RX power, and other parameters on fiber ports to determine if the ports are working properly.

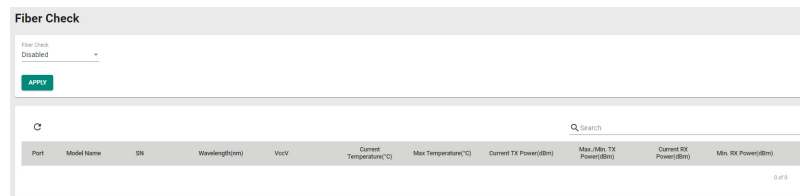
You can enable trap, email warning, and/or relay warning functions to receive an alarm or relay if one of the fiber ports exceeds the threshold for that port. Refer to **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications** for more information.

Fiber Check Settings



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Fiber Check	Enable or disable the fiber check feature.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

Fiber Check Status List



UI Setting	Description
Port	Shows the port number of the fiber connection.
Model Name	Shows the name of the related SFP module.
SN	Shows the serial number of the related SFP module.
Wavelength (nm)	Shows the wavelength of the fiber connection.
VccV	Shows the voltage supplied to the fiber connection.
Current Temperature (°C)	Shows the current temperature of the fiber connection.
Max. Temperature (°C)	Shows the maximum temperature the fiber connection supports.
Current TX Power(dBm)	Shows the current transmit signal strength for the fiber connection.
Max./Min. TX Power(dBm)	Shows the maximum and minimum transmit signal strength for the fiber connection.
Current RX Power(dBm)	Shows the current receive signal strength for the fiber connection.
Min. RX Power(dBm)	Shows the minimum receive signal strength for the fiber connection.

Network Status

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Network Status](#)

This section lets you check on the status of your device's network connections.

This section includes these pages:

- [Network Statistics](#)
- [LLDP](#)

- ARP Table

Network Statistics

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Network Status > Network Statistics

This page lets you see the real-time packet and bandwidth status for your device.

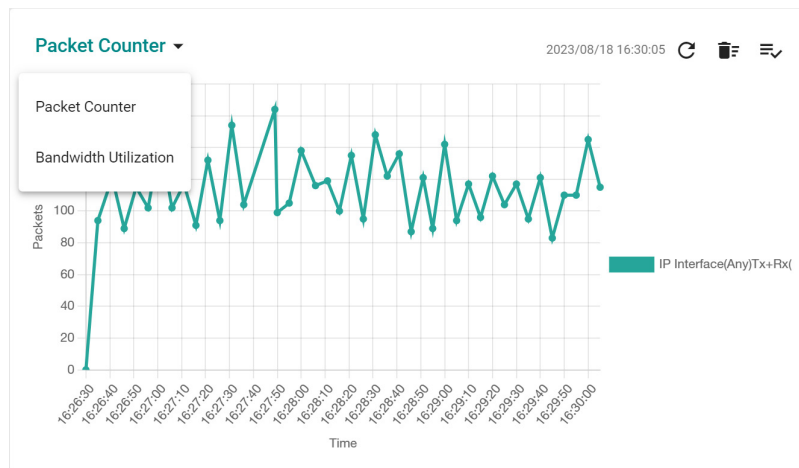
Network Status Display



This display lets you switch between **Packet Counter** and **Bandwidth Utilization** views by clicking on the drop-down menu.

- **Packet Counter:** This view shows how many packets are being handled over time. This view updates every 5 seconds.
- **Bandwidth Utilization:** This view shows bandwidth utilization over time. This view updates every 3 seconds.

Note

The default line shows activity for all IP interfaces for both Tx and Rx activity. You can add additional lines by clicking the Display Settings button.



UI Setting	Description
Refresh ()	Updates statistics immediately without waiting for the refresh interval.
Reset Statistics Graph ()	Clears the display and resets display settings back to defaults.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Display Settings (☰✓)	Opens Display Settings , which allows you to add lines based on user-defined criteria.
------------------------------	---

Display Settings

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Network Status > Network Statistics

Clicking the **Display Settings** (☰✓) icon on the **Diagnostics > Network Status > Network Statistics** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you define additional interfaces or ports to monitor. Click **ADD** to save your changes and add the new line.

Display Settings

Display Type *
IP Interface

Interface Selection *
Any

Sniffer Mode *
Tx+Rx

Package Type *
All Packets

CANCEL ADD

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Display Type	Select whether to monitor an IP interface or a port. Port: Monitor traffic for a specific port. IP Interface: Monitor traffic for a specific network interface.	Port / IP Interface	IP Interface

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface Selection (if Display Type is IP Interface)	Select which interface to monitor. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available interfaces will vary depending on your product model and configuration. Refer to Network Configuration > Network Interfaces for more information about managing your device's interfaces.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of interfaces	Any
Port Selection (if Display Type is Port)	Select which port to monitor. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>Available ports will vary depending on your product model.</p> </div>	Drop-down list of ports	All ports
Sniffer Mode	Select which type of traffic to monitor. Tx+Rx: Monitor both transmit and receive traffic. Tx: Only monitor transmit traffic. Rx: Only monitor receive traffic.	Tx+Rx / Tx / Rx	Tx+Rx
Package Type	Select which packet type to monitor. All Packets: Monitor all packet types. Unicast: Only monitor unicast packets. Broadcast: Only monitor broadcast packets. Multicast: Only monitor multicast packets. Error Packets: Only monitor error packets. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px;"> <p>Note</p> <p>If Display Type is IP Interface, only All Packets and Error Packets will be available.</p> </div>	All Packets / Unicast / Broadcast, Multicast / Error Packets	All Packets

Packet Interface Table

This table shows how many packets are being handled by each interface. Values are shown as *Total Packets + Packets in the past 5 seconds*.

Packet Interface Table i

🔍 Search

Interface	Tx	Tx Errors	Rx	Rx Errors
WAN	2390832 + 45	0 + 0	7825083 + 246	0 + 0
LAN	10 + 0	0 + 0	2 + 0	0 + 0
lan_test	0 + 0	0 + 0	0 + 0	0 + 0
BRG_LAN	0 + 0	0 + 0	0 + 0	0 + 0

1 - 4 of 4

LLDP Settings

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Network Status > LLDP

This page lets you configure Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP) settings.

LLDP Settings

LLDP

Settings
Status

LLDP

Enabled ▼

Transmit Interval

30

5 - 32768 sec.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
LLDP	Enable or disable Link Layer Discovery Protocol (LLDP).	Enabled / Disabled	Enabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Transmit Interval	Specify the interval in seconds at which LLDP messages are sent.	5 to 32768	30
--------------------------	--	------------	----

LLDP Ring Port Bypass
 Disabled

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

LLDP Ring Port Bypass	Enable or disable LLDP Ring Port Bypass	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
------------------------------	---	--------------------	----------

LLDP Status List

Port	Nbr. ID	Nbr. Port	Nbr. Port Description	Nbr. System
3	00:90:48:00:00:04	1	100TX	NUT Router
8	88:3a:30:31:ca:03	152	4/3	TRAFFIC-SIG-SW1(AA-01)

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Port	Shows the number of the port that connects to the neighbor device.
Nbr. ID	Shows the unique ID (typically the MAC address) that identifies the neighbor device.
Nbr. Port	Shows the port number of the connected neighbor device's interface that is used to connect to this device.
Nbr. Port Description	Shows the port description of the connected neighbor device's interface that is used to connect to this device.
Nbr. System	Shows the hostname of the neighbor device.

ARP Table

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Network Status > ARP Table

This page lets you see the device's Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table.

🔒 Limitations

The ARP table can show up to 1024 entries.

Index	MAC Address	IP Address	Interface
1	d0:67:26:a5:a3:f8	10.123.44.2	WAN
2	00:00:02:00:00:00	10.123.44.1	WAN
3	38:10:f0:d2:37:a0	10.123.44.3	WAN

UI Setting

Description

Index	Shows the index of the device entry.
MAC Address	Shows the MAC address of the device.
IP Address	Shows the IP address used for the device.
Interface	Shows the interface the device is connecting through.

Event Logs and Notifications

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications

This section lets you set up and view your device's event logs and notifications.

This section includes these pages:

- Event Log
- Event Notifications

- Syslog
- SNMP Trap/Inform
- Email Settings
- SMS Settings

Event Log

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Log](#)

This page lets you browse and export your device's various event logs to PDF, JSON, or Excel files.

Note

Browser extensions such as ad-blockers, uBlock Origin may interfere with file exports. If you encounter this issue, we strongly recommend using a recommended browser and disabling any plug-ins. Refer to [Using a Web Browser to Configure the Industrial Secure Router](#) for more information.

This page includes these tabs:

- System Log
- Firewall Log
- VPN Log
- Settings and Backup

Note

The timestamp on event logs will automatically synchronize with the NTP/SNTP server and applies to all new event logs. Refer to [System > Time > NTP/SNTP Server](#) for more details.

System Log

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Log - System Log](#)

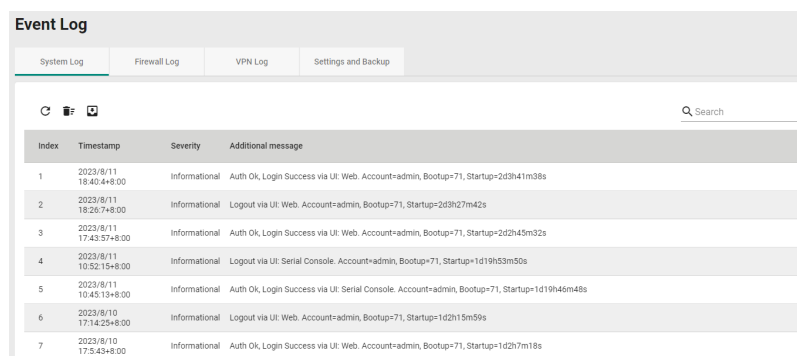
This page lets you view your device's system-related event logs.

🔔 Limitations

The system log can record up to 1000 events.

Actions

- Click the **Refresh icon** (🔄) to refresh the logs.
- Click the **Clear System Log icon** (🗑️) to delete all logs.
- Click the **Export icon** (📄) to export all logs to a file.



The screenshot shows the 'Event Log' interface with tabs for System Log, Firewall Log, VPN Log, and Settings and Backup. The System Log tab is active. At the top, there are icons for refresh, clear, and export, along with a search bar. Below is a table with columns for Index, Timestamp, Severity, and Additional message.

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Additional message
1	2023/8/11 18:40:4+8:00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via Ui: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d3h41m38s
2	2023/8/11 18:28:7+8:00	Informational	Logout via Ui: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d3h27m42s
3	2023/8/11 17:43:57+8:00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via Ui: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=2d2h45m32s
4	2023/8/11 10:52:15+8:00	Informational	Logout via Ui: Serial Console. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d19h53m50s
5	2023/8/11 10:45:13+8:00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via Ui: Serial Console. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d19h46m48s
6	2023/8/10 17:14:25+8:00	Informational	Logout via Ui: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d2h15m59s
7	2023/8/10 17:5:43+8:00	Informational	Auth Ok, Login Success via Ui: Web. Account=admin, Bootup=71, Startup=1d2h7m18s

UI Setting

Description

Index

Shows the index of the event.

Timestamp

Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.

Severity

Shows the severity categorization of the event.

Additional message

Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event. The username of the account will also be recorded for the following events: **Login Success, Login Fail, Configuration Change, User Logout.**

Firewall Log

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - Firewall Log

This page lets you view your device's firewall-related event logs.

🔔 Limitations

Each firewall log can record up to 1000 events.

You can switch between different firewall logs by clicking on the drop-down menu.

- Trusted Access
- Malformed Packets
- DoS Policy
- Layer 3-7 Policy
- Protocol Filter Policy
- ADP
- IPS
- Session Control
- Layer 2 Policy

Actions

- Click the **Refresh icon** (🔄) to refresh the logs.
- Click the **Clear System Log icon** (🗑️) to delete all logs.
- Click the **Export icon** (📄) to export all logs to a file.

Trusted Access

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source MAC	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	TCP Flags	ICMP Type	ICMP Code	Action	Additional message
-------	-----------	----------	------------	-------------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	--------	--------------------

UI Setting

Description

Index

Shows the index of the event.

Timestamp

Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.

UI Setting	Description
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event.
Additional message	Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event.

Malformed Packets

Malformed Packets

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source MAC	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	TCP Flags	ICMP Type	ICMP Code	Action	Additional message
1	2023/9/10 11:34:27+8:00	Emergency	2048	TCP	WAN	d0:67:26:a5:a3:f8	3.129.140.152	8883	--	10.123.13.33	46340	RST, ACK, URG	--	--	DROP	
2	2023/9/10 11:34:24+8:00	Emergency	2048	TCP	WAN	38:10c0:d2:37:a0	3.129.140.152	8883	--	10.123.13.33	46338	RST, ACK, URG	--	--	DROP	
3	2023/9/10 11:34:22+8:00	Emergency	2048	TCP	WAN	d0:67:26:a5:a3:f8	10.160.127.71	47893	--	10.123.13.33	80	RST, ACK, URG	--	--	DROP	

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Accept • Drop
Additional message	Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event.

DoS Policy

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
Subcategory	Shows the subcategory that applies to this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Null Scan • Xmas Scan • NMAP-Xmas Scan • SYN/FIN Scan • FIN Scan • NMAP-ID Scan • SYN/RST Scan • NEW-TCP-Without-SYN Scan • ICMP-Death • SYN-Flood • ARP-Flood • UDP-Flood
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.

UI Setting	Description
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event.
Additional message	Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event.

Layer 3-7 Policy

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Policy ID	Policy Name	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source MAC	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	TCP Flags	ICMP Type	ICMP Code	Action
-------	-----------	----------	-----------	-------------	------------	-------------	--------------------	------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------	--------

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Policy ID	Shows the ID of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.

UI Setting	Description
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow • Deny

Protocol Filter Policy

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Application Protocol	Policy ID	Policy Name	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	Action
-------	-----------	----------	----------------------	-----------	-------------	------------	-------------	--------------------	-----------	-------------	--------------------	----------------	------------------	--------

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.

UI Setting	Description
Application Protocol	Shows which application this event is related to.
Policy ID	Shows the ID of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherTypes for this traffic.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags for this traffic.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event.

ADP

Index	Timestamp	Application Protocol	Policy ID	Policy Name	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	Action
1	2022/10/6 16:01:19+08:00	IEC-104	1000002	The magic number is not 0x68.	2048	TCP	LAN	192.168.127.200	443	WAN	10.123.34.120	2404	Monitor
2	2022/10/6 16:01:19+08:00	IEC-104	1000002	The magic number is not 0x68.	2048	TCP	LAN	192.168.127.200	443	WAN	10.123.34.120	2404	Monitor

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Application Protocol	Shows the application protocol that applies to this event.
Policy ID	Shows the ID of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
Subcategory	Shows the subcategory that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Accept: The traffic will be allowed to pass through. • Reset: The traffic will not be allowed to pass through. • Monitor: The traffic will be allowed to pass through, but a log entry will be created for it.

IPS

Index	Timestamp	IPS Severity	IPS Category	Policy ID	Policy Name	Ether Type	IP Protocol	Incoming Interface	Source MAC	Source IP	Source Port	Outgoing Interface	Destination IP	Destination Port	TCP Flags	Action
1	2023/8/10 9:12:48.00	High	Exploits	1139266	DHCP-ISC DHCP Client Network Configuration Script Command Injection-2 (CVE-2011-0997)	2048	UDP	WAN	08:07:26:a5:a3:18	10.124.0.33	67	-	255.255.255.255	68	-	Reset

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
IPS Severity	Shows the IPS severity of the event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Information • Low • Medium • High • Critical
IPS Category	Shows the IPS category of the event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • File vulnerabilities • Buffer overflow • DoS attacks • Exploits • Malware traffic • Reconnaissance • Web threats • Flooding & scan • Protocol attack protection • IP spoofing
Policy ID	Shows the ID of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.

UI Setting	Description
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event.

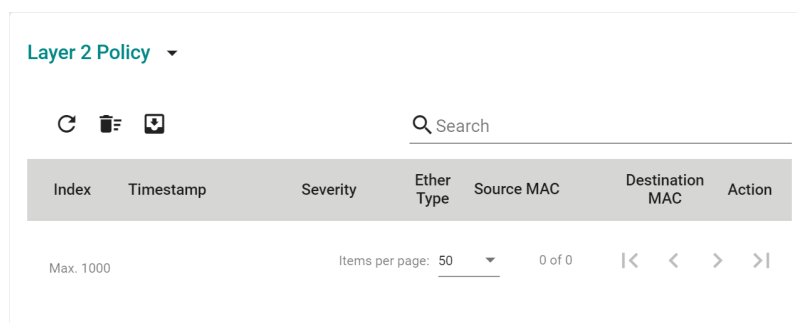
Session Control

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Session Control" with a search bar and a table. The table has the following columns: Index, Timestamp, Severity, Policy ID, Policy Name, Ether Type, IP Protocol, Incoming Interface, Source MAC, Source IP, Source Port, Outgoing Interface, Destination IP, Destination Port, TCP Flags, ICMP Type, and Action. The interface also includes a "Max: 1000" label and a "Items per page: 50" dropdown menu.

UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Policy ID	Shows the ID of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Policy Name	Shows the name of the firewall policy that applies to this event.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
IP Protocol	Shows the IP protocol for this traffic.
Incoming Interface	Shows the incoming interface for this traffic.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Source IP	Shows the source IP address for this traffic.
Source Port	Shows the source port for this traffic.

UI Setting	Description
Outgoing Interface	Shows the destination interface for this traffic.
Destination IP	Shows the destination IP address for this traffic.
Destination Port	Shows the destination port for this traffic.
TCP Flags	Shows the TCP flags that apply to this event.
ICMP Type	Shows the ICMP type that applies to this event.
ICMP Code	Shows the ICMP code that applies to this event.
Action	Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event.

Layer 2 Policy



UI Setting	Description
Index	Shows the index of the event.
Timestamp	Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment.
Severity	Shows the severity categorization of the event: Refer to the Severity Level List for more information.
Ether Type	Shows the EtherType that applies to this event.
Source MAC	Shows the source MAC address for this traffic.
Destination MAC	Shows the destination MAC address for this traffic.

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- | | |
|---------------|--|
| Action | Shows the action taken by the firewall for this event: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow • Deny |
|---------------|--|

VPN Log

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - VPN Log

This page lets you view your device's VPN-related event logs.

Limitations

The VPN log can record up to 1000 events.

Actions

- Click the **Refresh icon** (🔄) to refresh the logs.
- Click the **Clear System Log icon** (🗑️) to delete all logs.
- Click the **Export icon** (📄) to export all logs to a file.

Index	Timestamp	Severity	Additional message
1	2020/2/3 18:42:41+8:00	Notice	[vpn1] Initiating VPN connection
2	2020/2/3 18:42:41+8:00	Notice	[vpn1] VPN remote gateway unreachable
3	2020/2/3 18:39:56+8:00	Notice	[vpn1] Initiating VPN connection

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| Index | Shows the index of the event. |
| Timestamp | Shows the time of the event, including the date, time, and UTC time zone adjustment. |
| Severity | Shows the severity categorization of the event. |

UI Setting	Description
------------	-------------

Additional message Shows additional information about the event, based on the type of event.

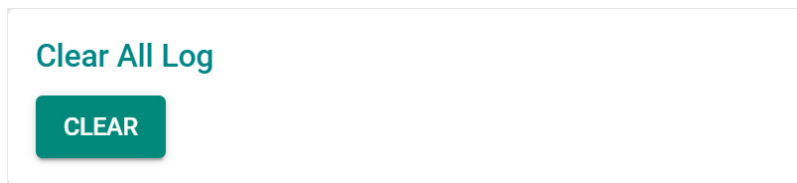
Settings and Backup

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Log - Settings and Backup

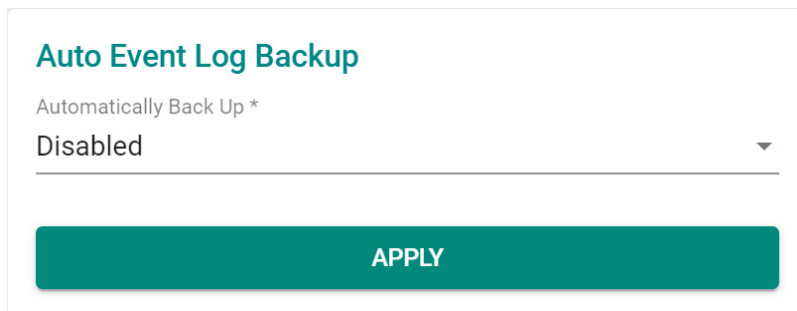
This page lets you clear all the logs or enable automatic event log backups. You can also set up capacity warnings and oversize actions that trigger when log storage has exceeded the specified storage threshold.

Clear All Log

Click the **CLEAR** button to clear all event logs.



Auto Event Log Backup



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Automatically Restore	Enable or disable automatic event log backups.	Enable / Disabled	Disabled
------------------------------	--	--------------------------	----------

Threshold Settings

Threshold Settings

🔄

Status	Category Name	Warning Threshold	Oversize Action	Registered Action
Disabled	System	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	VPN	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Enabled	Trusted Access	50%	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Enabled	Malformed Packets	50%	Stop recording event logs	Trap,Email
Disabled	DoS Policy	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	Layer 3-7 Policy	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	Protocol Filter Policy	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	ADP	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	IPS	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	Session Control	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email
Disabled	Layer 2 Policy	--	Overwrite the oldest event log	Trap,Email

UI Setting

Description

Status

Shows whether threshold settings are enabled for the category.

Category Name

Shows which event log the threshold settings apply to.

Warning Threshold

Shows the threshold percentage that must be reached to trigger a warning sent through the **Registered Action** methods.

Oversize Action

Shows what action will be taken when log storage is full for the selected category.

Registered Action

Shows how threshold warnings will be sent.

Edit Threshold Settings

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Log - Settings and Backup](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Insert > Path Here** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you edit the threshold settings the selected event log category. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit System Threshold Settings

Capacity Warning *
Disabled ▼

Registered Action
Trap, Email ▼

Oversize Action *
Overwrite the oldest event log ▼

CANCEL

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Capacity Warning	Enable or disable capacity warnings for the selected event log category.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Registered Action	Select how the warning is sent. You can select multiple options. Trap: A trap warning will be sent. Email: A warning email will be sent.	Trap / Email	Trap / Email
Oversize Action	Select the oversize action to take when event log storage is full for the selected category. Overwrite the oldest event log: The oldest events will be deleted when new events are created. Stop recording event logs: No new events will be recorded.	Overwrite the oldest event log / Stop recording event logs	Overwrite the oldest event log

Event Notifications

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications](#)

This page lets you configure notifications for various kinds of events.

This page includes these tabs:

- System
- Port
- CPU Usage





























- Port Usage


Event Notifications - System

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - System

This page lets you configure notification settings for various system events related to the overall functions of the device. Each event can be configured independently with different warning methods and severity classifications.


Event Notifications

System		Port			
<input type="text" value="Search"/>					
Status	Group	Event Name	Severity	Registered Action	
 Disabled	General	Cold Start	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Warm Start	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Power 1 Transition (Off->On)	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Power 2 Transition (Off->On)	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Configuration Changed	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Login Failure	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	802.1x Authentication Failure	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Firmware Upgrade Success	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Firmware Upgrade Failure	Emergency		
 Disabled	General	Log Service Ready	Emergency		
 Disabled	Redundancy	Ring/RSTP Topology Changed	Emergency		
 Disabled	Redundancy	Master Mismatch	Emergency		
 Disabled	Redundancy	Coupling Topology Changed	Emergency		
 Disabled	Redundancy	VRRP State Change	Emergency		
 Disabled	VPN	VPN Connected	Emergency		
 Disabled	VPN	VPN Disconnected	Emergency		
 Disabled	Firewall	Firewall Policy Changed	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE PD On	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE PD Off	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	Over Measured Power limitation	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE FETBad	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE Over Temperature	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE VEE Uvlo	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE PD Over Current	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	PoE PD Check Fail	Emergency		
 Disabled	PoE	Over Allocated Power limitation	Emergency		

UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.
Group	Shows which group this event belongs to.
Event Name	Shows the name of the event. Refer to the System Event List for more details.
Severity	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more details.
Registered Action	<p>Shows which action will be taken for this kind of event.</p> <p>Trap: A notification is sent to the Trap server when the event is triggered.</p> <p>Email: A notification is sent to the email server defined in the Email Settings section.</p> <p>Syslog: An event log is recorded to the Syslog server defined in the Syslog section.</p> <p>Relay: A notification is sent through the relay interface, if the device has one, when the event is triggered.</p>
	<p> Note</p> <p>The types of actions available may vary depending on the event type and the device model.</p>

Event Notifications - System - Edit Event Notification

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - System](#)

Clicking the **Edit** () icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - System** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for the selected event. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Event Notification

Event Name
Cold Start

Status *
Disabled ▼

Registered Action ▼

Severity *
Emergency ▼

CANCEL
APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Event Name (View-only)	Shows the name of the event. Refer to the System Event List for more information.	(Fixed)	(Fixed)
Status	Enable or disable notifications for this event.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Registered Action	<p>Select which action to take when the event occurs. Multiple actions may be selected.</p> <p>Trap: A notification will be sent to the Trap server.</p> <p>Email: A notification email will be sent to the email server defined in the Email Settings section.</p> <p>Syslog: The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the Syslog section.</p> <p>Relay: An alarm notification will be triggered through the relay output of the device, if your device is equipped with one.</p>	Trap / Email / Syslog / Relay	N/A
Severity	Select the severity to assign for this event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about the different severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Emergency

Event Notifications - Port

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port

This page lets you configure notification settings for various events related to your device's physical port status. Each port can be configured independently with different warning methods and severity classifications.

When a port event is triggered, the FAULT LED on your device will also light up if your device has one.

Event Notifications					
System	Port				
					Search
Status	Port	Link-On	Link-Off	Severity	Registered Action
	Disabled	1	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	2	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	3	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	4	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	5	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	6	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	7	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	8	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	G1	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	G2	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	G3	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency
	Disabled	G4	Disabled	Disabled	Emergency

UI Setting

Description

Status

Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.

Port

Shows which group this event belongs to.

Link-On

Shows whether notifications for Link-On events are enabled or disabled.

Link-Off

Shows whether notifications for Link-Off events are enabled or disabled.

Severity

Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more details.

Registered Action

Shows how notifications will be sent for this kind of event.

Event Notifications - Port - Edit Event Notification

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - System** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for the selected port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Event Notification

Port
1

Status *
Disabled ▼

Link-On *
Disabled ▼

Link-Off *
Disabled ▼

Registered Action ▼

Severity *
Emergency ▼

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Port (View-only)	Shows which physical port the event notifications are for.	N/A	N/A
	<p>Note</p> <p>Available ports will vary depending on your product and model.</p>		

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable notifications for this port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Link-On	Enable or disable notifications for Link-On events. If enabled, an event will be triggered when a device connects to the port.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Link-Off	Enable or disable notifications for Link-Off events. If enabled, an event will be triggered when the port is disconnected from a device, such as when a cable is unplugged or the connected device is shut down.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Registered Action	Select which action to take when the event occurs. Multiple actions may be selected. Trap: A notification will be sent to the Trap server. Email: A notification email will be sent to the email server defined in the Email Settings section. Syslog: The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the Syslog section. Relay: An alarm notification will be triggered through the relay output of the device, if your device is equipped with one.	Trap / Email / Syslog / Relay	N/A
Severity	Select the severity to assign for this event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about the different severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Emergency

Event Notifications - CPU Usage

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - CPU Usage

This page lets you configure notification settings based on CPU usage.

Event Notifications					
System		Port		CPU Usage	
<input type="text" value="Search"/>					
Status	Event Name	Threshold(%)	Duration(Sec)	Severity	Registered Action
Disabled	CPU Usage Alarm	80	10	Warning	

Items per page: 50 | 1 of 1 | < >

UI Setting	Description
Status	Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.
Event Name	Shows which group this event belongs to.
Threshold(%)	Shows the CPU usage threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.
Duration(Sec)	Shows the amount of time in seconds CPU usage must exceed the threshold to trigger a notification.
Severity	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more details.
Registered Action	Shows how notifications will be sent for this kind of event.

Event Notifications - CPU Usage - Edit Event Notification

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications - CPU Usage](#)

Clicking the **Edit (✎)** icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - CPU Usage** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for CPU usage. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit Event Notification" with the following fields and values:

- Event Name: CPU Usage Alarm
- Status*: Disabled
- Threshold(%)*: 80
- Duration(Sec)*: 10
- Registered Action: (empty dropdown)
- Severity*: Warning

At the bottom right of the dialog, there are two buttons: "CANCEL" and "APPLY".

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Event Name (View-only)	Shows the CPU usage event name.	N/A	N/A
Status	Enable or disable event notifications for CPU usage.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Threshold(%)	Shows the CPU usage threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.	60 to 90	80
Duration(Sec)	Shows the amount of time in seconds CPU usage must exceed the threshold to trigger a notification.	10 to 60	10
Severity	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more details.	Email / Syslog	N/A
Registered Action	Shows how notifications will be sent for this kind of event.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Warning

Event Notifications - Port Usage

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Event Notifications - Port Usage](#)

This page lets you configure notification settings based on port usage. Each port can be configured independently with different warning methods and severity classifications.

Event Notifications										
System	Port	CPU Usage	Port Usage							
										Q Search
Status	Event Name	Port	Tx	Tx Threshold(%)	Tx Duration(Sec)	Rx	Rx Threshold(%)	Rx Duration(Sec)	Severity	Registered Action
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	3	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	4	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	5	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	6	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	8	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	G1	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
Disabled	Port Usage Alarm	G2	Disabled	50	10	Disabled	50	10	Warning	
										Items per page: 50 1 - 7 of 7 < < > >

UI Settings	Description
Status	Shows whether event notifications are enabled for this kind of event.
Port	Shows which port this event belongs to. Available ports will vary depending on your product and model.
Tx	Shows whether Tx traffic is being monitored for event notifications.
Tx Threshold(%)	Shows the Tx threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.
Tx Duration	Shows the amount of time in seconds Tx traffic must exceed the Tx threshold to trigger a notification.
Rx	Shows whether Rx traffic is being monitored for event notifications.
Rx Threshold(%)	Shows the set Rx threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.
Rx Duration(Sec)	Shows the amount of time in seconds Rx traffic must exceed the Rx threshold to trigger a notification.
Severity	Shows the severity assigned to the event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more details.
Registered Action	Shows how notifications will be sent for this kind of event.

Event Notifications - Port Usage - Edit Event Notification

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port Usage

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Event Notifications - Port Usage** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you change the notification settings for the selected port. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit Event Notification

Port
3

Event Name
Port Usage Alarm

Status *
Disabled

Tx *
Disabled

Tx Threshold(%) *
50

Tx Duration(Sec) *
10

Rx *
Disabled

Rx Threshold(%) *
50

Rx Duration(Sec) *
10

Registered Action

Severity *
Warning

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Port (View-only)	Shows which physical port the event notifications are for. Available ports will vary depending on your product and model.	N/A	N/A
Event Name (View-only)	Shows the event name.	N/A	N/A
Tx	Enable or disable Tx monitoring for event notifications.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Tx Threshold(%)	Specify the Tx threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.	1 to 100	50

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Tx Duration	Specify the amount of time in seconds Tx traffic must exceed the Tx threshold to trigger a notification.	1 to 300	10
Rx	Enable or disable Rx monitoring for event notifications.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Rx Threshold(%)	Specify the Rx threshold percentage that must be exceeded for event notifications.	1 to 100	50
Rx Duration(Sec)	Specify the amount of time in seconds Rx traffic must exceed the Rx threshold to trigger a notification.	1 to 300	10
Registered Action	Select which action to take when the event occurs. Multiple actions may be selected. Email: A notification email will be sent to the email server defined in the Email Settings section. Syslog: The event log is recorded to a Syslog server defined in the Syslog section.	Email / Syslog	N/A
Severity	Select the severity to assign for this event. Refer to the Severity Level List for more information about the different severity levels.	Emergency / Alert / Critical / Error / Warning / Notice / Informational / Debug	Warning

Syslog

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [Syslog](#)

This page lets you configure your device to connect to syslog servers to store event logs. When an event occurs, an event notification can be sent as a syslog UDP packet to the specified Syslog servers. Each syslog server can be enabled individually.

Administrators can manually import self-signed certificates for syslog client services. However, they should check the root certificate and validity of the signature before importing, according to the organization's security procedures and requirements. After importing a certificate, the administrator should check if the certificate has been revoked and if so, the certificate must be replaced. When the device sends an imported certificate to the syslog server, the syslog server will attempt to verify the certificate by searching the approved certificate pool on the server to identify the imported certificate.

Note

In order to ensure the security of your network, we recommend the following:

- The encryption algorithm of keys should be selected based on internationally recognized and proven security practices and recommendations.
- The lifetime of certificates generated for syslog client services should be short and in accordance with the organization's security procedures and requirements.
- For security reasons, it is recommended to send event logs to a centralized syslog server for continuous network event monitoring.

Limitations

You can connect to up to 3 syslog servers.

Syslog

Syslog 1	Certificate 1
Disabled	Disabled
Address 1	UDP Port 1
	514
	1 - 65535
Syslog 2	Certificate 2
Disabled	Disabled
Address 2	UDP Port 2
	514
	1 - 65535
Syslog 3	Certificate 3
Disabled	Disabled
Address 3	UDP Port 3
	514
	1 - 65535

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Syslog	Enable or disable the specified syslog server.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Certificate	Select a syslog server certificate to use for the related server, or disable use of certificates.	Drop-down list of certificates / Disabled	Disabled
Address	Enter the IP address of the related syslog server.	Valid IP address	N/A
UDP Port	Specify the UDP port of the related syslog server.	1 to 65535	514

SNMP Trap/Inform

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform](#)

This page lets you configure the SNMP Trap/Inform notification feature.

This page includes these tabs:

- General
- SNMP Account

SNMP Trap/Inform - General

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform - General](#)

This page lets you configure the SNMP Trap/Inform settings of your device. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

SNMP Trap/Inform

General
SNMP Account

Trap Mode *
Trap V1 ▼

Trap Community 1 *
public 6 / 64

Recipient IP/Name 1 Recipient IP/Name 2

Recipient IP/Name 3

Inform Retries Inform Timeout
3 10

1 - 99 times 1 - 300 sec.

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Trap Mode	<p>Select a mode to use for SNMP notifications. Trap notifications are sent without requesting an acknowledgement from the recipient. Inform notifications will request an acknowledgement from the recipient, and will retry sending the notification if the acknowledgement is not received.</p> <p>Trap V1: Use Trap V1 for SNMP notifications.</p> <p>Trap V2: Use Trap V2 for SNMP notifications.</p> <p>Inform V2: Use Inform V2 for SNMP notifications.</p> <p>Trap V3: Use Trap V3 for SNMP notifications.</p> <p>Inform V3: Use Inform V3 for SNMP notifications.</p>	Trap V1 / Trap V2 / Inform V2 / Trap V3 / Inform V3	Trap V1
Trap Community 1	Specify the community string that will be used for authentication.	1 to 64 characters	public
Recipient IP/Name 1/2/3	Specify the name of the recipient trap server that will receive notifications.	Recipient IP or name	N/A
Inform Retries (if Trap Mode is Inform V2 or Inform V3)	Specify the number of times to retry sending an inform notification.	1 to 99	3

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inform Timeout (if Trap Mode is Inform V2 or Inform V3)	Specify the amount of time to wait (in seconds) to wait for an acknowledgement before trying to resend an inform notification.	1 to 300	10

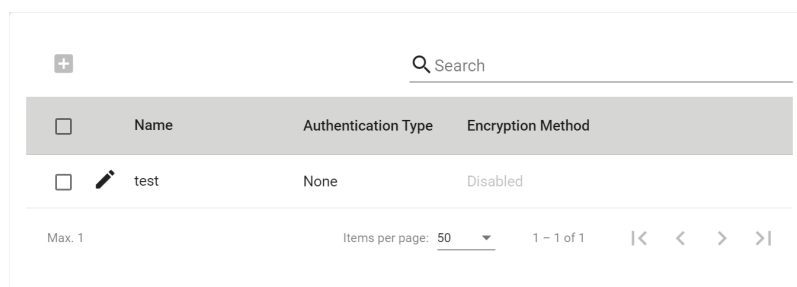
SNMP Account

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account](#)

This section lets you configure an SNMP trap account for your device.

Limitations

You can configure up to 1 SNMP trap account.



		Search	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Authentication Type	Encryption Method
<input type="checkbox"/>	test	None	Disabled

Max. 1 Items per page: 50 1 - 1 of 1 << < > >>

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the name of the SNMP trap account.
Authentication Type	Shows which authentication method is used for the account.
Encryption Method	Shows which encryption method is used for the account.


Create SNMP Trap Account Settings



Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Event Logs and Notifications](#) > [SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add an SNMP trap account for your device. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new account.

Create SNMP Trap Account Settings

Name *
 0 / 32

Authentication Type *
 SHA Authentication Key * 
 At least 8 characters 0 / 64

Encryption Method *
 Enabled Encryption Key *  
 At least 8 characters 0 / 64

CANCEL CREATE

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the account.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Authentication Type	Select which authentication method to use for the account. None: No authentication will be used. MD5: Use MD5 authentication. SHA: Use SHA authentication.	None / MD5 / SHA	None
Authentication Key (if Authentication Type is MD5 or SHA)	Specify an authentication key to use for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A
Encryption Method	Enable or disable AES encryption for the account.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Encryption Key (if Encryption Method is Enabled)	Specify an encryption password for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A

Edit SNMP Trap Account Settings

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account](#)

Clicking the **Edit** (✎) icon for an entry on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you modify an existing SNMP trap account. Click **APPLY** to save your changes.

Edit SNMP Trap Account Settings

Name *
test
4 / 31

Authentication Type *
MD5
Authentication Key *
At least 8 characters 0 / 30

Encryption Method *
Enabled
Encryption Key *
At least 8 characters 0 / 30

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Specify a name for the account.	1 to 32 characters	N/A
Authentication Type	Select which authentication method to use for the account. None: No authentication will be used. MD5: Use MD5 authentication. SHA: Use SHA authentication.	None / MD5 / SHA	None
Authentication Key (if Authentication Type is MD5 or SHA)	Specify an authentication key to use for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A
Encryption Method	Enable or disable AES encryption for the account.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

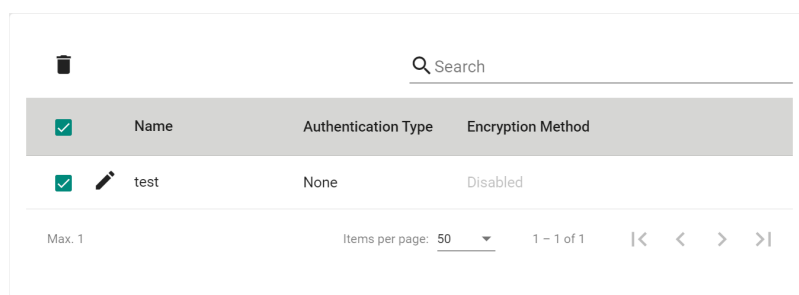
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
------------	-------------	-------------	---------------

Encryption Key (if Encryption Method is Enabled)	Specify an encryption password for the account.	8 to 64 characters	N/A
---	---	--------------------	-----

Delete SNMP Trap Account

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SNMP Trap/Inform - SNMP Account

You can delete an account by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.



Email Settings

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > Email Settings

This page lets you configure your device's email notification settings. You can specify which mail server and account to use, and which email addresses to send email notifications to. Click **APPLY** to save your changes, or click **SEND TEST MAIL** to send a test email using the current settings and recipients.

Note

Auto warning email messages will be sent through an authentication-protected SMTP server that supports CRAM-MD5, LOGIN, and PAIN methods of SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) authentication.

We strongly recommend not entering your Account Name and Account Password if auto warning e-mail messages can be delivered without using an authentication mechanism.

Email Settings

Mail Server 0 / 60

TCP Port 1 - 65535

Username 0 / 60 Password 0 / 60

Sender Address 0 / 60

1st Recipient Email Add... 0 / 60 2nd Recipient Email Ad... 0 / 60


3rd Recipient Email Add... 0 / 60 4th Recipient Email Add... 0 / 60

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mail Server	Specify the address of the email server. You can enter a domain name or IP address.	1 to 60 characters	N/A
TCP Port	Specify the TCP port of the email server.	1 to 65535	25
Username	Specify the username used to log in to the email server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
Password	Specify the password used to log in to the email server.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
Sender Address	Specify the sender email address to use for email notifications.	0 to 60 characters	N/A
Recipient Email Address	Enter an email address to send email notifications to. You can set up to 4 email addresses to receive email notifications.	0 to 60 characters	N/A

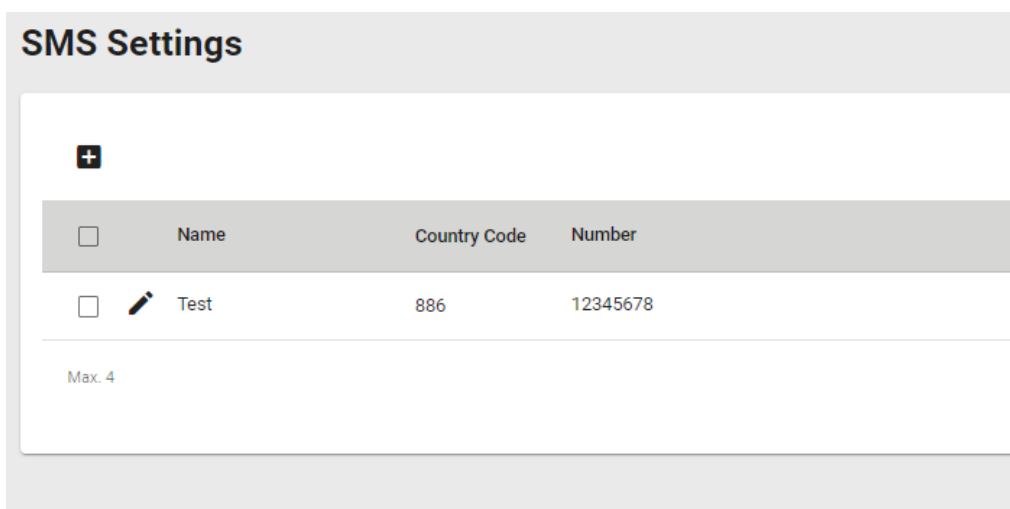
SMS Settings


Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SMS Settings

This page lets you configure your device's SMS notification settings. You can specify which phone number to send SMS notifications to.

 **Note**

Availability of this feature may vary depending on your product model and version.




<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Country Code	Number
<input type="checkbox"/>	 Test	886	12345678

Max. 4

UI Setting	Description
Name	Shows the SMS recipient's name.
Country Code	Shows the SMS recipient number's country code.
Number	Shows the SMS recipient's phone number.

Add SMS Number

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SMS Settings

Clicking the **Add** () icon on the **Diagnostics > Event Logs and Notifications > SMS Settings** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you add an SMS recipient

for your device notification. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new SMS recipient.

Add SMS Number

Name * 0 / 15

+ Country Code * Number *

CANCEL APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Name	Enter the SMS recipient's name.	1 to 15 characters	N/A
Country Code	Enter the SMS recipient number's country code.	Country code	N/A
Number	Enter the SMS recipient's phone number.	Phone number	N/A

Delete SMS Number

You can delete SMS recipients by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete (🗑)** icon.

SMS Settings

🗑

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Name	Country Code	Number
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	✎ Test	886	12345678

Max. 4

Tools

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Tools](#)

This section lets you use various tools to check for network issues.

This section includes these pages:

- [Port Mirroring](#)
- [Ping](#)
- [Diagnostic Support](#)
- [NetFlow](#)

Port Mirroring

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Tools > Port Mirroring](#)

This page lets you configure the port mirror function, which can be used to monitor data being transmitted through a specific port. This is done by setting up another port (the mirror port) to receive the same data being transmitted from, or both to and from, the port under observation.

Using a mirror port allows the network administrator to sniff the observed port to keep tabs on network activity.

Note

For security reasons, it is recommended to use port mirroring to send traffic to an intrusion detection system (IDS) for analysis.

Port Mirroring

Port Mirroring Configuration

Enable*

Enabled ▼

Monitored Port *

Monitored Traffic *

All Streams ▼

Mirror Destination Port *

1 ▼

APPLY

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Enable	Enable or disable the port mirror function.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Monitored Port	Select the numbers for the ports you want to monitor for network activity. Multiple ports can be selected.	(Selectable ports will vary depending on the device model)	N/A
Monitored Traffic	Select the type of traffic that will be monitored. Ingress Stream: Select this option to monitor only those data packets coming into the Moxa industrial secure router's port. Egress Stream: Select this option to monitor only those data packets being sent out through the Moxa industrial secure router's port. All Streams: Select this option to monitor data packets both coming into and being sent out through the Moxa industrial secure router's port.	Ingress Stream / Egress Stream / All Streams	All Streams

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Mirror Destination Port	Select the number of the port that will be used to monitor the activity of the monitored port.	(Selectable ports will vary depending on the device model)	1

Ping

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Tools > Ping](#)

This page lets you use the ping function, which is useful for troubleshooting network problems.

The function's most unique feature is that even though the ping command is entered from the user's PC keyboard, the actual ping command originates from the device itself. In this way, you can use your device to send ping commands out through its ports.

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
IP Address/Domain Name	Specify the IP address or domain name you want to ping, then click the PING button. The ping result will be displayed below.	Valid IP address or domain name up to 50 characters	N/A

Diagnostic Support

Menu Path: [Diagnostics > Tools > Diagnostic Support](#)

This page lets you generate files and import files for troubleshooting.

This page includes these tabs:

- System Profile
- Module Firmware

Note

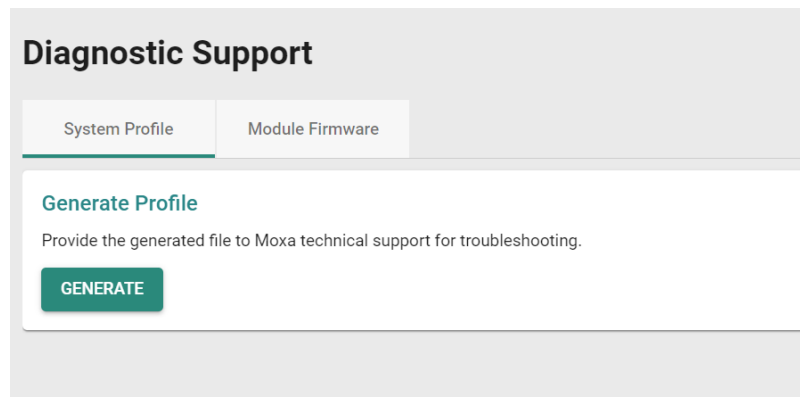
Please note that settings and available options may vary depending on the product model.

System Profile

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools > Diagnostic Support - System Profile

This page lets you generate a system profile file, which includes device information such as system logs, system status, and configurations. This file can be used to assist troubleshooting.

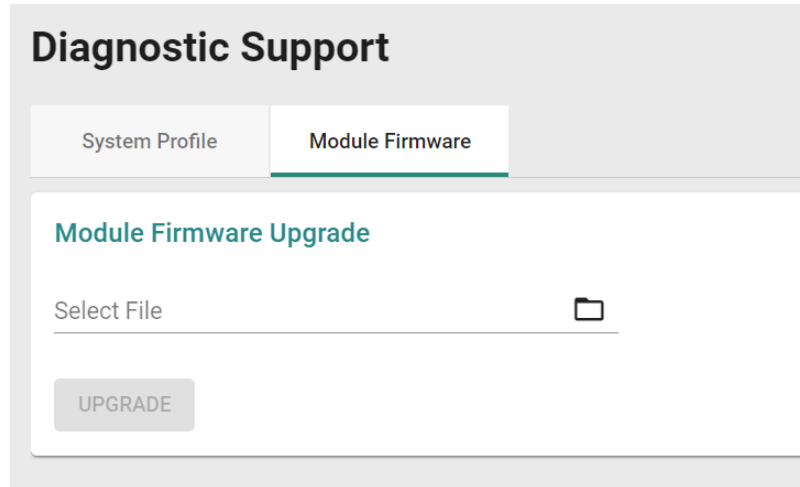
Click the **GENERATE** button to generate and save a system profile file to your local host.



Module Firmware

Menu Path: Diagnostics > Tools > Diagnostic Support - Module Firmware

This page lets you upgrade the firmware of the cellular module using a firmware file provided by Moxa Technical Support.



UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Select File	Select the firmware upgrade file from your local host, then click UPGRADE to upgrade the module's firmware.	N/A	N/A

NetFlow

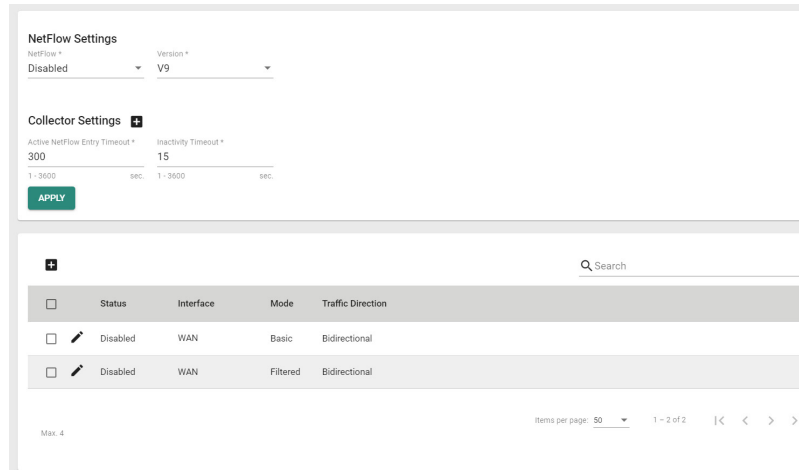
Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [NetFlow](#)

This page lets you create and edit NetFlows for your device.

🔗 Limitations

You can create up to 1 entry per interface.

NetFlow Settings



NetFlow Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
NetFlow	Enable or disable NetFlow.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled
Version	Specify which version of NetFlow to use.	V5 / V9 / IPFIX	V9

Collector Settings

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Collector 1 IP/ Host Name	Specify the collector 1 IP or host name.	Valid IP address or host name	N/A
Collector 1 Port	Specify the collector 1 port number.	1 to 65535	9996
Collector 2 IP/ Host Name	Specify the collector 2 IP or host name.	Valid IP address or host name	N/A
Collector 2 Port	Specify the collector 2 port number.	1 to 65535	9996
Active NetFlow Entry Timeout	Specify the active NetFlow entry timeout in seconds. This is the maximum duration a flow can remain "active" in the router's flow cache.	1 to 3600 seconds	300

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Inactivity Timeout	Specify the inactivity timeout in seconds. This is the maximum duration a flow can remain "inactive" without new packet matches.	1 to 3600 seconds	15

Create NetFlow Entry

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [NetFlow](#)

Clicking the **Add (+)** icon on the **Diagnostics > Tools > NetFlow** page will open this dialog box. This dialog lets you create a new NetFlow entry. Click **CREATE** to save your changes and add the new NetFlow entry.

Create NetFlow Entry

Status *
 Disabled ▾

Interface *
 WAN ▾

Traffic Direction *
 Bidirectional ▾

Mode *
 Basic ▾

Sampling Rate *
 0
 0 - 65535

CANCEL

CREATE

Create NetFlow Entry

Status *
Disabled

Interface *
WAN

Traffic Direction *
Bidirectional

Mode *
Filtered

Source IP Filter

Source IP *
Subnet Mask *
24 (255.255.255.0)

Source Port *
0 - 65535

Destination IP Filter

Destination IP *
Subnet Mask *
24 (255.255.255.0)

Destination Port *
0 - 65535


Protocol Filter

Protocol *
All

CANCEL

CREATE


UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Status	Enable or disable the NetFlow entry.	Enabled / Disabled	Disabled

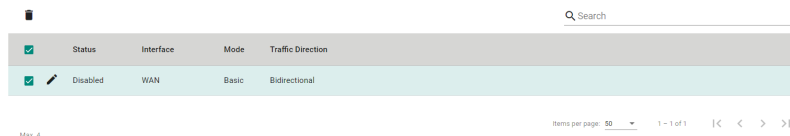
UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Interface	Specify the interface for the NetFlow entry.	Drop-down list of interfaces	WAN
Traffic Direction	Select the traffic direction for the NetFlow entry.	Bidirectional / Ingress / Egress	Bidirectional
Mode	Select the mode for the NetFlow entry. Basic: This mode enables you to configure a NetFlow entry for your device. Filtered: This mode allows you to filter traffic by IP address or specific protocol.	Basic / Filtered	Basic
Sampling Rate (Only when Mode is set as Basic)	Specify the sampling rate of the NetFlow entry. 0 means the sampling rate will be set to 1. <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 5px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p> Note</p> <p>A lower number indicates more frequent sampling, with 1 representing sampling every packet, thus providing full visibility and accuracy. However, more intensive sampling may adversely affect performance.</p> </div>	0 to 65535	N/A
Source IP (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the source IP.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the subnet mask for the source IP.	Valid subnet mask	N/A
Source Port (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the port for the source IP. Setting this to 0 means all ports will be allowed.	Valid port	N/A
Destination IP (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the destination IP.	Valid IP address	N/A
Subnet Mask (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the subnet mask for the destination IP.	Valid subnet mask	N/A

UI Setting	Description	Valid Range	Default Value
Destination Port (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Specify the port for the destination IP. Setting this to 0 means all ports will be allowed.	Valid port	N/A
Protocol (Only when Mode is set as Filtered)	Select the protocol to filter.	All / TCP / UDP	N/A

Delete NetFlow

Menu Path: [Diagnostics](#) > [Tools](#) > [NetFlow](#)

You can delete a NetFlow by using the checkboxes to select the entries you want to delete, then clicking the **Delete** () icon.



<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Status	Interface	Mode	Traffic Direction
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Disabled	WAN	Basic	Bidirectional

Max. 4

Items per page: 50 | 1 - 1 of 1 | < > >>

Chapter 4

Other Features

Other Features

This section covers other features of your device that may not have a related user interface.

The features in this section include:

- Firmware Image Recovery
- Soft Lockdown

Firmware Image Recovery Overview

Firmware Image Recovery refers to the use of multiple copies of firmware within a device to increase reliability and reduce the risk of system failure due to firmware corruption or errors.

In many electronic devices, firmware is stored in non-volatile memory such as flash memory, and any corruption or errors in the firmware can result in the device malfunctioning or becoming unusable. To mitigate this risk, firmware recovery involves storing multiple copies of the firmware within the device, and using a mechanism to switch to a backup copy of the firmware in case the primary copy becomes corrupted or fails.

Overall, Firmware Image Recovery is a useful technique for increasing the reliability and availability of electronic devices, particularly those used in critical applications where system failure can have serious consequences.

Methodology

This device supports a "Dual-image" firmware mechanism to minimize the possibility of system failure, such as in the following situations:

1. When the user encounters an accident when upgrading the device firmware, such as a power outage, which may cause firmware corruption.
2. When the memory encounters lifespan issues or damage from external factors, parts of partitions may become corrupted.

This mechanism involves storing two copies of the firmware in separate memory partitions within the device, and using a boot loader to select the active copy at runtime. If a situation occurs, the firmware can still roll back to the previous version to boot the device.

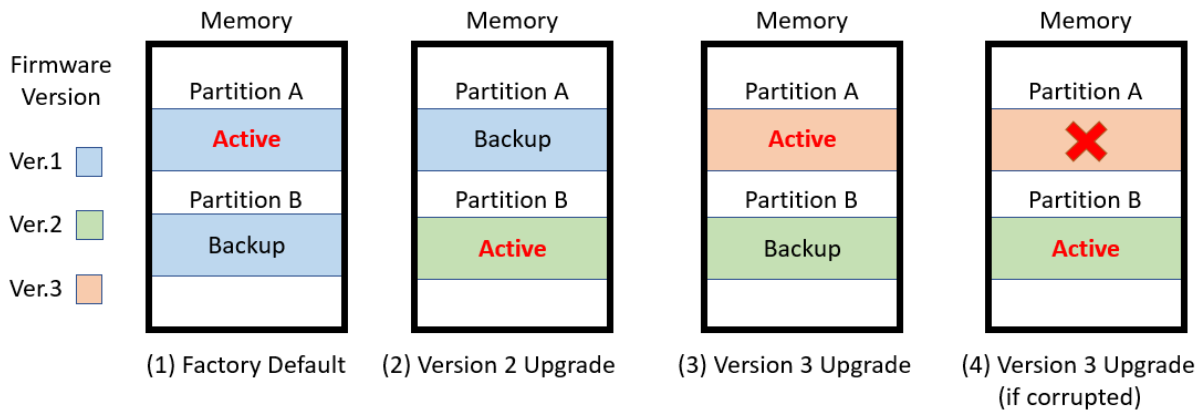
▲ Warning


Firmware Image Recovery will not be able to help if the bootloader sector or the entire memory is corrupted.

How Dual-imaging Works

Here is an overview of how the Dual-image function works.


1. When the product leaves the factory, it will keep two identical copies of the firmware version 1 in separate memory partitions A and B within the device. Partition A will be selected as the active copy by default.
2. When the user upgrades the firmware version 2, Partition B will be overwritten to store the new image as well as be selected as the active copy at the same time. Partition A will keep a previous version 1 as a backup.
3. When the user upgrades the firmware version 3, Partition A will be overwritten to store the new image as well as be selected as the active copy at the same time. Partition B will keep a previous version 2 as a backup.
4. Based on (3), if the user encounters an accident when upgrading the firmware version 3 and Partition A is corrupted, the bootloader will choose backup Partition B as the active one to continue to boot the system and the system will record a "Boot Failed, Fallback to Previous Firmware" event into the system logs.



 **Note**

- Resetting the device to factory default settings only restores user configurations, and will not restore the firmware image in both partitions.
- This mechanism is done automatically by the system and is not user-configurable.

Soft Lockdown

 **Note**

Soft Lockdown Mode is a feature designed for railway applications and is only supported by the TN-4900 Series.

Moxa routers can act as firewalls to help provide protection from external attacks that try to gain access and control over the network. On the other hand, while protecting the network, it is also important to prevent potential malfunctions that may occur and avoid unexpected network operation failures.

To handle this, Soft Lockdown Mode is a monitoring and protection mechanism that monitors important indicators and enters Soft Lockdown Mode once user-defined failure criteria are reached to ensure that device operation remains stable. For details about Soft Lockdown Mode settings, refer to Firewall > Soft Lockdown Mode.

Soft Lockdown Criteria

The criteria for entering and leaving Soft Lockdown Mode are defined by the following:

- **Performance Thresholds:** If the CPU utilization % exceeds a user-defined threshold, or the amount of free memory % goes below a user-defined threshold, a failure will be detected for the current cycle.
- **Monitoring Interval:** This defines how long a single monitoring cycle will be.
- **Number of Cycles to Enter Soft Lockdown Mode:** This defines how many consecutive cycles with failures are required to enter Soft Lockdown Mode.
- **Number of Cycles to Leave Soft Lockdown Mode:** This defines how many consecutive cycles without failures are required to leave Soft Lockdown Mode.
- **Critical Services:** If any of the following critical services are enabled, the device continually check to see whether the services are alive. The device will enter Soft

Lockdown Mode if any enabled critical service is no longer alive, and all enabled critical services must be alive to leave Soft Lockdown Mode.

The critical services that apply to Soft Lockdown Mode are as follows:

- DHCP Server (refer to Network Service > DHCP Server)
- DHCP Relay Agent (refer to Network Service > DHCP Server - DHCP Relay Agent)
- SNMP Server (refer to SNMP)
- Turbo Ring V2 (refer to Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2)

▲ Warning

When the device is operating normally, its CPU and memory usage can vary due to various factors. Apart from potential attacks, the number of devices connected to the router and application settings can also lead to increased demands on CPU and memory.

It is important to carefully assess the usage and configuration of this feature to avoid triggering Soft Lockdown Mode due to normal usage to avoid impacting regular operations.

Entering Soft Lockdown Mode

The device will enter Soft Lockdown Mode when any of the following occur:

- The number of consecutive cycles with failures reaches the defined **Number of Cycles to Enter Soft Lockdown Mode**
- Any of the enabled **Critical Services** are no longer alive

When in Soft Lockdown Mode

In Soft Lockdown Mode, the device will do the following:

- Block all traffic (both ingress and egress) on the interface specified for Soft Lockdown Mode
- Log the event and the reason for the event in the system log

▲ Warning

When Soft Lockdown Mode is enabled, the port settings and VLAN settings should not be modified in order to prevent a mismatch for the Soft Lockdown Mode interface settings.

Leaving Soft Lockdown Mode

The device will leave Soft Lockdown Mode under any of the following conditions:

- The number of normal consecutive cycles without failures reaches the defined **Number of Cycles to Leave Soft Lockdown Mode** AND all enabled **Critical Services** are alive.
- The device is restarted. After restarting, the device will enter normal operation and will only enter Soft Lockdown Mode if the criteria are fulfilled.

When leaving Soft Lockdown Mode, the device will do the following:

- Resume all traffic (both ingress and egress) on the interfaces where firewall rules are applied
- Log the event in the system log

Chapter 5

Device Applications

Device Applications

This section goes over different device applications to help you better understand the applications themselves, and to show you how the device can help you implement those applications.

The following applications are covered:

- Network Segmentation
- Routing
- OpenVPN Client
- NetFlow
- Loopback Interfaces

Network Segmentation

About Network Segmentation

Network Segmentation creates isolated virtual networks.

Segmenting a network reduces congestion and improves network performance by removing unnecessary traffic in a particular segment. For instance, segregating the passenger Wi-Fi network from the TCMS network in a train communication system ensures that the TCMS devices are not impacted by guest traffic. Such an approach helps to mitigate congestion and enhance the overall efficiency of the network.

There are two types of network segments:

- Layer-2 segments use numbered, virtual LAN segments (VLANs) to create isolated networks.
- Layer-3 segments use unique IP prefixes to create subnets.

Layer-2 Segments

A layer-2 segment is essentially a single broadcast domain. All devices connected to the segment will receive any broadcast traffic sent within it. Layer-2 segmentation uses numbered VLANs to create isolated logical segment, which allows for the separation of traffic between different VLANs.

Layer-3 Segments

In an IP network, a layer-3 segment is referred to as a subnetwork or subnet and includes all nodes that share the same network prefix as defined by their IP addresses and network mask. A router is needed to facilitate communication between layer-3 subnets. Hosts on the same subnet can communicate directly using the layer-2 segment that connects them.

VLANs in Depth

A VLAN, or Virtual Local Area Network, is a logical grouping of devices on a network.

This technology allows network administrators to divide a large network into smaller, more manageable segments without the need for additional physical hardware. Devices within a VLAN can be located anywhere on the network but communicate as though they are on the same physical segment. This facilitates traffic management, as administrators can ensure traffic is directed only to devices within the same VLAN by assigning a VLAN tag to each Ethernet frame. Consequently, VLANs provide a means to segment a network beyond the constraints of physical connections, a limitation inherent in traditional network design. VLANs can be utilized to segment your network into various groups, such as:

- **Departmental groups**—One VLAN for the R&D department, another for Office Automation, etc.
- **Hierarchical groups**—One VLAN for directors, another for managers, and another for general staff.
- **Usage groups**—One VLAN for email users and another for multimedia users.

VLAN Standards and Implementation

The functioning of VLANs is guided by IEEE 802.1Q, often referred to as Dot1q. This standard outlines the protocol for VLAN tagging on Ethernet frames within an IEEE 802.3 Ethernet network. During the transmission of data between switches, VLAN tags identify the VLAN ownership of frames. Networking equipment reads these tags and ensures that tagged frames are delivered to devices within that VLAN, maintaining the network's logical segmentation.

A VLAN tag is a specific piece of data embedded in the header of an Ethernet frame. It comprises a 4-byte field carrying key information, such as the VLAN ID (VID) and priority level. The VID is a numerical identifier that uniquely links the frame to a specific VLAN.

The priority field within the tag plays a critical role in prioritizing certain types of traffic within a VLAN. This structure contributes to effective network traffic management by giving precedence to certain data when necessary.

Benefits of VLANs

The main benefit of VLANs is that they provide a network segmentation system that is far more flexible than traditional networks. Using VLANs also provides you with three other benefits:

VLANs help control traffic

With traditional networks, congestion can be caused by broadcast traffic that is directed to all network devices, regardless of whether or not they need it. VLANs increase the efficiency of your network because each VLAN can be set up to contain only those devices that need to communicate with each other.

VLANs simplify device relocation

In traditional networks, administrators spend significant time managing moves and changes, requiring manual updates of host addresses when users switch sub-networks. In contrast, VLANs simplify this process. For example, when relocating a host from Port 1 to Port 6 in a different network section, simply assign Port 6 to the relevant VLAN (e.g., VLAN R&D A). This enables seamless communication between VLANs, eliminating the need for re-cabling.

VLANs provide extra security

Devices within each VLAN can only communicate with other devices on the same VLAN. If VLAN R&D B needs to communicate with VLAN OA(Office Automation) A, the traffic must pass through a routing device or Layer 3 switch.

Important: Network segmentation is not a substitute for network security. While network segmentation can provide a degree of isolation that contributes to the overall security environment, the primary benefit of VLANs is improved performance by ensuring minimal crosstalk between unrelated systems. Network segmentation should be complimented with network security procedures.

Scenario: Layer 2 Segmentation of 3 Factories

Short Description: A manufacturer uses layer 2 segmentation to manage traffic between three different factories, each with many devices.

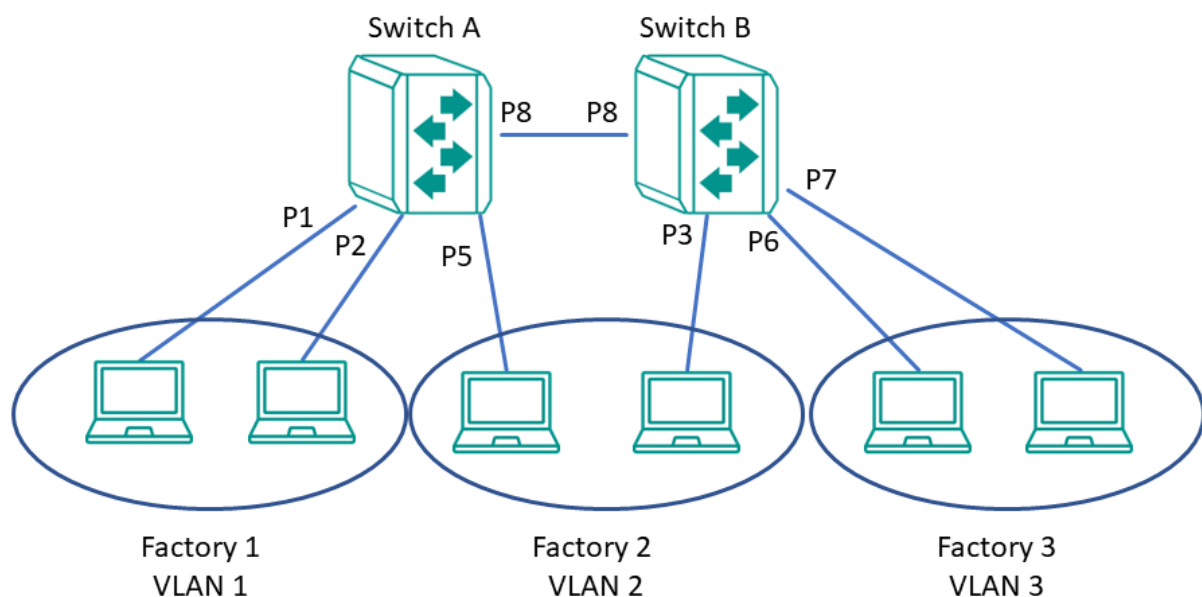
Two switches are used to connect all of the devices together on the same network, but devices from any factory may be connected to either switch. To simplify management and ensure smooth operations, we can configure the switches to make sure that each factory is on its own VLAN.

Each VLAN can be enlarged using simple switches to connect any number of devices in the factory

For our example scenario, we will simplify to two devices connected to each switch. Traffic VLANs are usually assigned to ports, so it's important to note which port we'll be using for each device. The switches are connected each other using port 8, and will allow VLANs to be split between the two switches as necessary, without causing interference or performance drops on the others.

We need a topology that:

- Allows devices on the same VLAN to communicate with each other
- Ensure devices on different VLANs cannot communicate with each other



This diagram outlines how we might create a network meeting these requirements. Each factory is on its own VLAN, and that Factory 2's VLAN is split between two switches. With VLAN segmentation and a Trunk connecting the two switches, Factory 2's VLAN will have comparable performance to VLANs within the same switch. Because of VLAN isolation, administrators can manage and prioritize traffic to ensure that packets do not leave their corresponding VLAN.

Important: Be careful when configuring VLANs on a remote switch. Modifications to the configuration could affect connectivity. For example, if the management VLAN of the switch is VLAN 1 and you are connected to ports that do not belong to VLAN 1, you may be disconnected from the switch during configuration.

Example: Creating VLANs for Layer 2 Segmentation of 3 Factories

Create VLANs in preparation for assigning them to ports.

Before you begin: Make sure you have an environment configured in line with our scenario. This includes:

- 3 routers in a ring topology with backbone connected on ports 7 and 8
- 2 gateways for each router (Service A and Service B), connected at ports 1 and 2, respectively
- Administrator credentials to all three routers

To create VLANs for this example, do the following:

1. Sign in to Switch A using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration**→**Layer 2 Switching**→**VLAN**.
3. To add a VLAN ID, click on the **Settings** tab, and then click the **Add (+)** button.
Result: The **Create VLAN** screen appears.
4. Specify the VLAN to create in the VID, and then click Create. For Factory 1, we will create VLAN 1.
Result: The VLAN will appear on the VLAN table at the top of the page.
5. Repeat this process to create VLANs 2 and 3 for the factories, and then create VLAN 1000 for the link between switches.


Results: We created VLANs for each factory (VIDs 1, 2, 3) and the VLAN for communication between switches (VID 1000).

What to do next: After you have created all 4 VLANs on Switch A, repeat this process on Switch B. Once Switch B is configured, you can continue on to assigning VLANs to ports.

Example: Assigning VLANs to Ports on Switch A

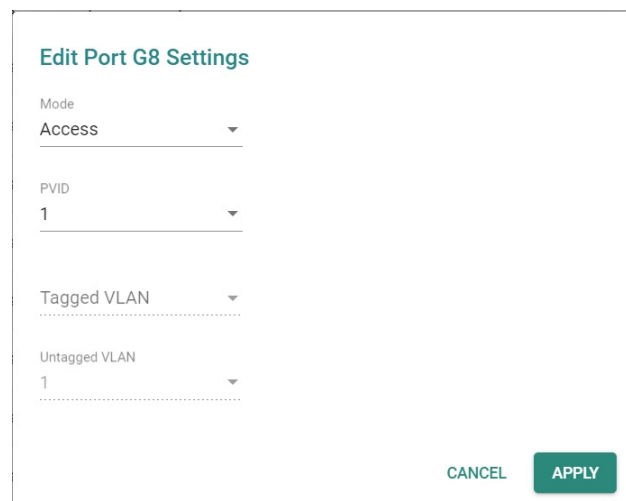
VLANs must be assigned to ports on Switch A to route traffic correctly.

Now that you've created the VLANs, they need to be assigned to ports so that traffic from those ports will be routed over the correct VLAN. A similar procedure must be performed on each switch or router on the network.

1. Sign in to Switch A using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration**→**Layer 2 Switching**→**VLAN**.
3. To assign the newly created VLAN ID to a port, find the port on the **Port Table** on the lower part of the page, and then click the corresponding  **[Edit]** button.

Since we're assigning factory 1 to ports 1 and 2, start with **Port 1**. If you are repeating this step, you can substitute **Port 1** with information from the table at the end of this procedure.

Result: The **Edit Port Settings** panel appears.



Edit Port G8 Settings

Mode
Access

PVID
1

Tagged VLAN

Untagged VLAN
1

CANCEL APPLY

4. Specify the **Mode** and **PVID** that will be assigned to the port, and then click **Apply**.

To assign the chosen port to Factory 1, specify **Mode Access** and **PVID** as 1.

Tutorial Info:

Access mode is used when connecting single devices without tags. These are usually end-user devices that belong to a single VLAN, and do not need to communicate with devices in other VLANs.

Trunk mode allows a port to carry traffic for multiple VLANs over a single physical connection. This is useful for linking switches together that may have many different VLANs.

Hybrid mode is similar to a Trunk port, except users can explicitly assign tags to be removed from egress packets.

Note: The port VID (PVID) setting will apply a VLAN tag only for untagged traffic coming through that port. If traffic going through the port has already been tagged with a VLAN ID, the PVID setting will not change the existing tag.

Result: The **Port Table** will show the new port configuration.

5. To add the remaining ports, repeat this procedure with the following substitutions and settings:

Port	Settings
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PVID: 1• Mode: Access Mode
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PVID: 2• Mode: Access Mode
8	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PVID: 1000• Mode: Trunk Mode• Tagged VLAN: 1, 2, 3

Results: Ports on Switch A have been assigned VIDs and modes, ensuring that untagged traffic on ports 1 and 2 will automatically be tagged as VLAN 1. Traffic on port 5 will be automatically tagged as VLAN 2. Port 8 has been configured as a Trunk that will allow traffic to move between switches while retaining the tags.


What to do next: Assign VLANs to Ports on Switch B.

Important: The Port settings on each switch will be slightly different. Make sure each switch is configured correctly by following the instructions for Switch B.

Example: Assigning VLANs to Ports on Switch B

VLANs must be assigned to ports on Switch B to route traffic correctly.

Now that you've created the VLANs, they need to be assigned to ports so that traffic from those ports will be routed over the correct VLAN. A similar procedure must be performed on each switch or router on the network.

1. Sign in to Switch A using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration**→**Layer 2 Switching**→**VLAN**.
3. To assign the newly created VLAN ID to a port, find the port on the **Port Table** on the lower part of the page, and the click the corresponding  **[Edit]** button.

Since we're assigning factory 2 to port 3, start with **Port 3**. If you are repeating this step, you can substitute **Port 3** with information from the table at the end of

this procedure.

Result: The **Edit Port Settings** panel appears.

Edit Port G8 Settings

Mode
Access

PVID
1

Tagged VLAN

Untagged VLAN
1

CANCEL APPLY

4. Specify the **Mode** and **PVID** that will be assigned to the port, and then click **Apply**.

To assign the chosen port to Factory 3, specify **Mode Access** and **PVID** as 2.

Tutorial Info:

Access mode is used when connecting single devices without tags. These are usually end-user devices that belong to a single VLAN, and do not need to communicate with devices in other VLANs.

Trunk mode allows a port to carry traffic for multiple VLANs over a single physical connection. This is useful for linking switches together that may have many different VLANs.

Hybrid mode is similar to a Trunk port, except users can explicitly assign tags to be removed from egress packets.

Note: The port VID (PVID) setting will apply a VLAN tag only for untagged traffic coming through that port. If traffic going through the port has already been tagged with a VLAN ID, the PVID setting will not change the existing tag.

Result: The **Port Table** will show the new port configuration.

5. To add the remaining ports, repeat this procedure with the following substitutions and settings:

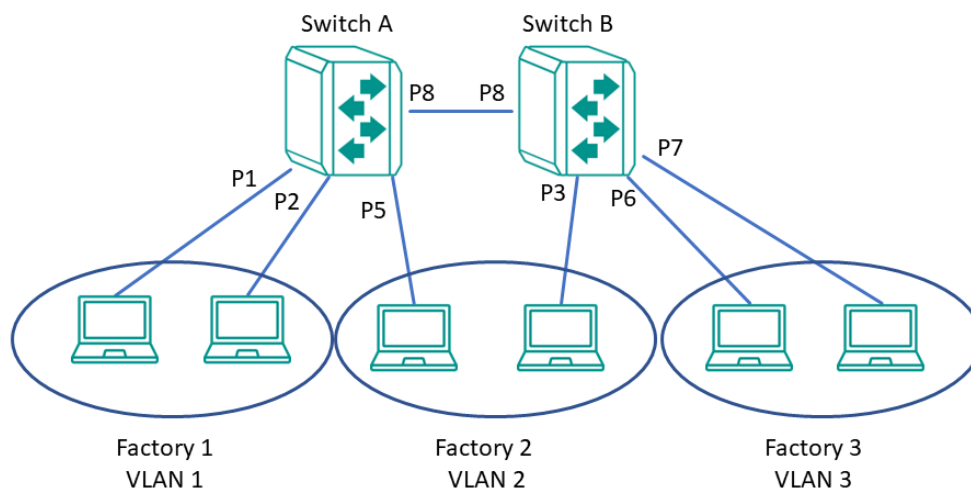
Port	Settings
6	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PVID: 1• Mode: Access Mode
7	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• PVID: 2• Mode: Access Mode

Port	Settings
------	----------

- | | |
|---|---|
| 8 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PVID: 1000 • Mode: Trunk Mode • Tagged VLAN: 1, 2, 3 |
|---|---|

Results: Ports on Switch B have been assigned VIDs and modes, ensuring that untagged traffic on ports 6 and 7 will automatically be tagged as VLAN 3. Traffic on port 3 will be automatically tagged as VLAN 2. Port 8 has been configured as a Trunk that will allow traffic to move between switches while retaining the tags.

When combined with the previous settings, we complete the network segmentation. Traffic on VLANs 1-3 will remain isolated, and VLAN 1000 will allow traffic between switches while retaining VLAN tagging.



Scenario: Layer 3 Segmentation of Two Services

Short Description: A manufacturer uses layer 3 segmentation to manage traffic between three different factories, each with many devices.

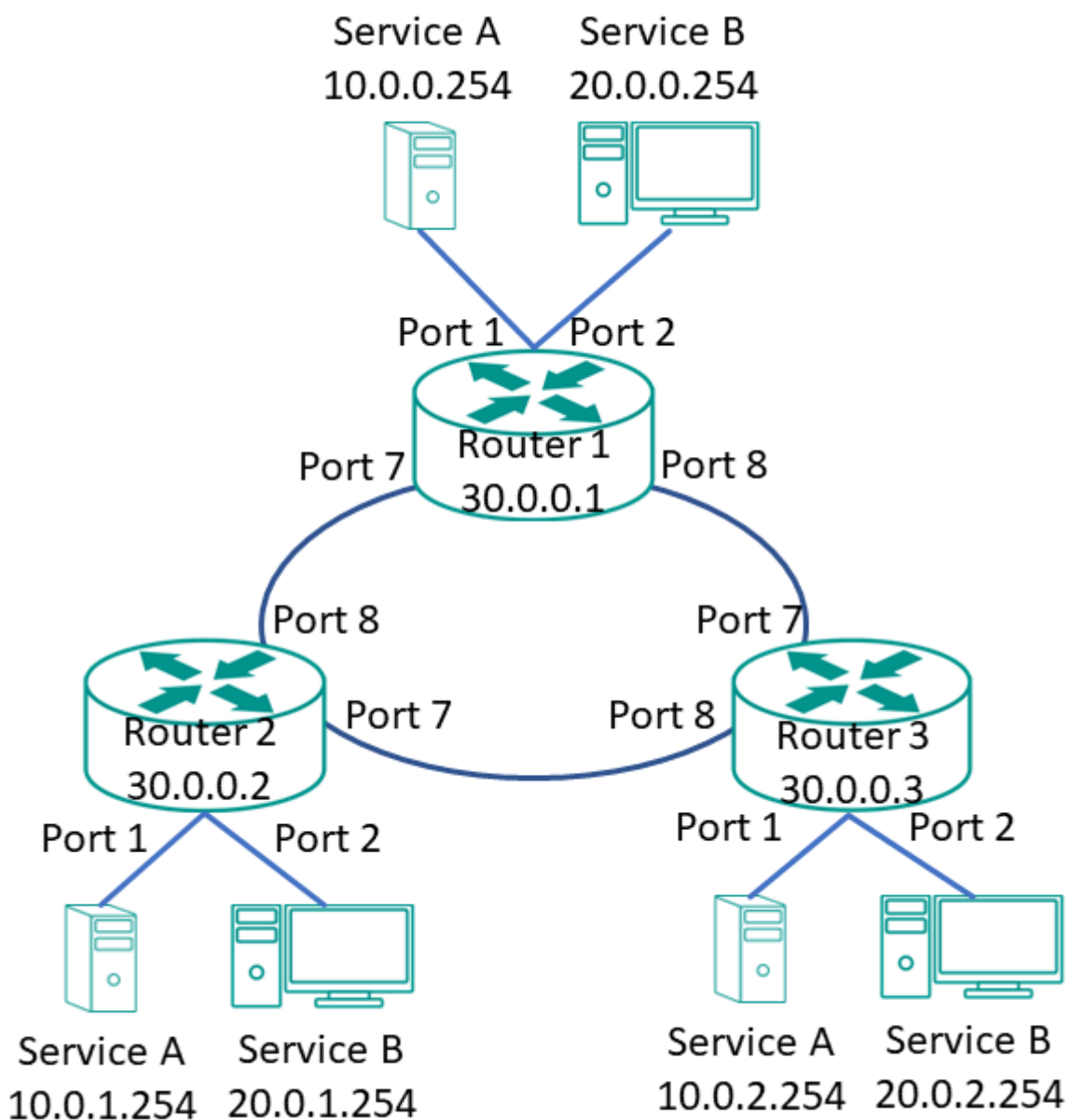
Three routers are used to connect the all of the devices together on the same network, but devices from any factory may be connected to either switch. Each factory has devices running Service A and Service B. Devices need to connect to the corresponding service in other factories, while being isolated from the different services in their own factories.

Each VLAN can be enlarged using simple switches to connect any number of devices in the factory.

For our example scenario, we will simplify to two devices (one for each service) connected to each router. These devices will serve as gateways for additional devices connected to their corresponding service. We can assign separate subnets to each port (an interface), so it's important to note which port we'll be using for each device.

We need a topology that:

- Allows devices on the same subnet to communicate with each other
- Ensure devices on different subnet cannot communicate with each other



This diagram outlines how we might create a network meeting these requirements. Each service is on its own subnet. Routers are connected in a ring topology, also on its own subnet. Because of subnet isolation, administrators can manage and prioritize traffic to ensure that packets do not leave their corresponding subnet.

To deploy this topology we need to do the following:

- Configure VLANs for each interface and bind them to ports
- Configure IP ranges for each interface and assign them to ports

In our example, we are segmenting by Service, rather than by area.


Example: Creating VLANs for Layer 3 Segmentation

Create VLANs in preparation for assigning them to ports.

Before you begin: Make sure you have an environment configured in line with our scenario. This includes:

- 3 routers in a ring topology with backbone connected on ports 7 and 8
- 2 gateways for each router (Service A and Service B), connected at ports 1 and 2, respectively
- Administrator credentials to all three routers

To create VLANs for this example, do the following:

1. Sign in to Switch A using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration**→**Layer 2 Switching**→**VLAN**.
3. To add a VLAN ID, click on the **Settings** tab, and then click the  **[Add]** button.

Result: The **Create VLAN** screen appears.

4. Specify the VLAN to create in the **VID**, and then click **Create**. For Service A, we will create VLAN 10.

Result: The VLAN will appear on the VLAN table at the top of the page.

5. Repeat this process to create VLAN 20 for Service B, and then create VLAN 1000 for the link between switches.


Results: We created VLANs for each Service (VIDs 10 and 20) and the VLAN for backbone between different sites (VID 1000).

What to do next: After you have created all 3 VLANs on Router 1, repeat this process on Routers 2 and 3. The configuration options will be the same. Once VLANs have been configured on all routers, you can move on to assigning VLANs to ports.

Example: Assigning IPs to Router Interfaces

IP subnets must be assigned to interfaces to ensure traffic from corresponding VLANs is segmented correctly.

To assign IPs to router interfaces:

1. Sign in to Router 1 using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration**→**Network Interfaces**→**LAN**, and then press  **[Add]**.

Result: The **Create LAN Interface Entry** screen appears.

3. To add the interface for Service A, specify all of the following, and then click **Create:**

Field	Setting
Name	Service A
VLAN ID	10
IP Address	10.0.1.254
Netmask	8 (255.0.0.0)

Result: The LAN interface will appear on the Network Interface list.

4. To add the interface for Service B, specify all of the following, and then click **Create:**

Field	Setting
Name	Service B
VLAN ID	20
IP Address	20.0.1.254
Netmask	8 (255.0.0.0)

Result: The LAN interface will appear on the Network Interface list.

5. To add the interface for the backbone connection, specify all of the following, and then click **Create**:

Field	Setting
Name	Backbone
VLAN ID	1000
IP Address	30.0.0.1
Netmask	8 (255.0.0.0)

Result: The LAN interface will appear on the Network Interface list.

Results: Interfaces have been configured on Router 1 to allow effective network segmentation. Now you need to configure the additional networks.

What to do next: Repeat this task with the following adjustments:

Router	Item	Value
Router 2	Service A	10.0.2.254
	Service B	20.0.2.254
	Backbone	30.0.0.2
Router 3	Service A	10.0.3.254
	Service B	20.0.3.254
	Backbone	30.0.0.3

Once all routers have been configured with the correct IP interfaces, you can configure a routing solution. Once that's done, your network will be ready to use.

Example: Configuring Static Routing for Layer 3 Segmentation

For complex environments, routing must be configured.

This example uses simple static routing to route traffic across the network. A production network may chose a dynamic routing option instead.

To configure dynamic routing for the Layer 3 example:

1. Sign in to Switch A using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Routing**→**Unicast Route**→**Static Routes**, and then click the **Add (+)** icon.

Result: The **Create new static route** panel appears.

3. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Name	Service A Router 2
Status	Enable
Destination Address	10.0.1.254 Refers to Production Service A on Router 2.
Subnet Mask	8 (255.0.0.0) Refers to the subnet mask of the destination address.
Next Hop	30.0.0.2 Refers to the Router 2 Interface as the next hop on the network.
Metric	1

4. Click **Create**.

Result: The new static routing entry should appear in the routing table.

5. Repeat this process for Service B. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Name	Service B Router 2
Status	Enable
Destination Address	20.0.1.254 Refers to Production Service A on Router 2.
Subnet Mask	8 (255.0.0.0) Refers to the subnet mask of the destination address.

Item	Value
Next Hop	30.0.0.2 Refers to the Router 2 Interface as the next hop on the network.
Metric	1

6. Once this step is complete, repeat the process on Routers 2 and 3. The information for each router should appear as follows:

Item	Service A Router 1	Service B Router 1	Service A Router 2	Service B Router 2	Service A Router 3	Service B Router 3
Appears On	Routers 2/3	Routers 2/3	Routers 1/3	Routers 1/3	Routers 1/2	Routers 1/2
Name	Service A Router 1	Service B Router 1	Service A Router 2	Service B Router 2	Service A Router 3	Service B Router 3
Status	Enable	Enable	Enable	Enable	Enable	Enable
Destination Address	10.0.0.25 4	20.0.0.25 4	10.0.0.25 4	20.0.1.25 4	10.0.0.25 4	20.0.2.25 4
Subnet Mask	8 (255.0.0.0)	8 (255.0.0.0)	8 (255.0.0.0)	8 (255.0.0.0)	8 (255.0.0.0)	8 (255.0.0.0)
Next Hop	30.0.0.1	30.0.0.1	30.0.0.2	30.0.0.2	30.0.0.3	30.0.0.3
Metric	1	1	1	1	1	1

Results: Once the routing configuration is completed, the Example Layer 3 Segmented Network will be ready to use. This will ensure that packets for each service will be isolated from the other, while still be efficiently guided around the network.

About Redundancy

Redundancy in industrial networks refers to averting the impact of unexpected shutdowns. If a service becomes unavailable, it can cause interruptions to productivity and services, resulting in potentially significant losses for businesses. Therefore, it is crucial to establish a redundancy protocol to quickly recover from any abnormalities and maintain productivity.

What kinds of redundancy protocols are there?

Moxa network devices support a variety of network redundancy protocols for both OSI Layer 2 and Layer 3.

- Layer 2: Moxa devices have redundancy protocol support for RSTP, MSTP, Turbo Ring v2, Turbo Chain, Ring Coupling, and Dual Homing for pathway redundancy. These mechanisms establish alternative paths that can be used to reach a destination if the primary connection fails.
- Layer 3: Moxa devices use Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) to ensure that the default gateway function can switch to a backup device in case the primary device fails. This ensures that routing functions remain available even if the primary device goes offline.

By implementing redundancy mechanisms at both Layer 2 and Layer 3, you can help ensure that your networks are reliable and available, even in the event of a failure or outage.

About Layer 2 Redundancy Protocols

Selecting the appropriate Layer 2 redundancy protocol for your network depends on several factors, including:

- The topology and size of your network
- The applications and services you are running
- Your availability and performance requirements

Suggestions for protocol selection will be mentioned in later chapters. Here's a brief summary of each protocol to help you make an informed decision.

Category		RSTP	Turbo Ring v2	Turbo Chain
Specification needs	Diameter	40 pcs	V 250 nodes per ring	V 250 node per chain
	Recovery Time		V Fast Ethernet: 20ms Gigabit Ethernet: 50ms	V Fast Ethernet: 20ms Gigabit Ethernet: 50ms

Category		RSTP	Turbo Ring v2	Turbo Chain
	Link Health Check (Packet Detection Mechanism)	V 2 sec/1 RSTP BPDU (default)	O Gigabit Ethernet: 10ms/LHC pkt.	O Gigabit Ethernet: 10ms/LHC pkt.
Application needs	Multi-Vendor Support	V Public Standard	Moxa proprietary	Moxa proprietary
	Easy-Deployment	Mesh	V Ring Topology	V Chain Topology
	Flexible Scalability		O Turbo Ring + Ring Coupling	V Directly connected to existing network without any changes.
Supported Models		Managed switch: EDS series, IKS series, ICS series, TN series, PT series, RKS series, MDS series. Router: EDR series, TN series.	Managed switch: EDS series, IKS series, ICS series, TN series, PT series, RKS series, MDS series. Router: EDR series, TN series.	Managed switch: EDS series, IKS series, ICS series, TN series, PT series, RKS series, MDS series. Router: EDR series.

V: Most appropriate

O: Partially applicable

About Scenarios for Turbo Chain and Turbo Ring

Large Semiconductor Network

A semiconductor factory plans to construct a new facility to increase chip production capacity for future electric vehicles. They require a large automated network (100+ switches) with redundant mechanisms to prevent unexpected downtime that could impact production lines. Additionally, their network must balance traffic across multiple links to prevent congestion and improve overall performance.

Analysis

- This is a new project with no existing infrastructure.
- A redundancy protocol is required and must support a network with at least 100 switches.

- Link aggregation is needed to increase total throughput beyond what a single connection can sustain.

Solution: Turbo Ring v2

Turbo Ring v2 is suitable in situations where extremely fast failover times are required, such as in mission-critical industrial control systems. Turbo Ring v2 facilitates easy ring topology deployment. With Moxa Turbo Ring technology, networks can recover within 20 ms (Fast Ethernet/fiber) or 50ms (gigabit copper) on a network with up to 250 nodes.

Legacy Rapid Transit Network

A Phase II Metro project needs to build 15 new metro stations in an existing transit system, each requiring networking infrastructure. This project not only establishes its own system with a redundant topology but also ensures compatibility with the Phase I system. The Phase I system comprises a mesh topology with RSTP protocol, consisting of over 30 switches, with cabling that is outdated and no longer replaceable. Nevertheless, Phase II must be interconnected with Phase I without any modifications to the latter.

Analysis

5. This is a rebuilt project and it should be interconnected with RSTP topology.
6. Redundancy protocol is required and support 100+ switches network.

Solution: Turbo Chain

Turbo Chain is most suitable for this situation. One of the key advantages of Turbo Chain is its simplicity and ease of deployment. It can be directly interconnected to RSTP topology with any change on RSTP network.

Note:

The following two alternative solutions would also work in this scenario:

1. Turbo Ring v2 with Ring coupling to RSTP is also an alternate solution. This would depend on network physical deployment.
2. RSTP could be used to expand an existing RSTP network.

Inter-Consist Rail Network

A well-known railway vehicle manufacturer needs to plan a new on-board network, planning a ring network via Turbo Ring for multiple vehicles to form a consist. The

consists also need to be interconnected with each other when connected as a train, and a redundant backup mechanism should be provided between consists.

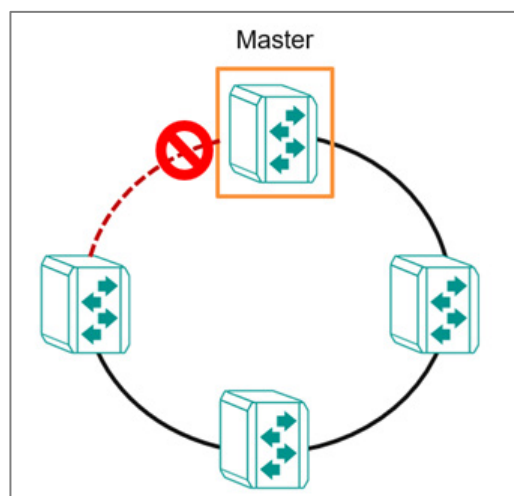
Solution: Ring Coupling

Connection between Turbo Ring networks can be connected with ring coupling. This will allow consists with their own rings to be dynamically uncoupled and recoupled without reconfiguration.

About Turbo Ring v2

Turbo Ring v2 is a high-performance, redundant network topology developed by Moxa for configuring network devices in redundant loops.

In the event of a link failure, the network can automatically reconfigure itself to maintain uninterrupted communication. Recovery times are within 20 ms for Fast Ethernet and 50 ms for Gigabit Ethernet on a network of up to 250 nodes.



Turbo Ring v2 allows connected network devices to elect a "master" switch, which blocks packets from traveling through any of the network's redundant loops and manages the network. If a section breaks, the protocol adjusts the ring so that the disconnected parts of the network establish contact. This enables continuous network operations, even when there is a fault in the network.

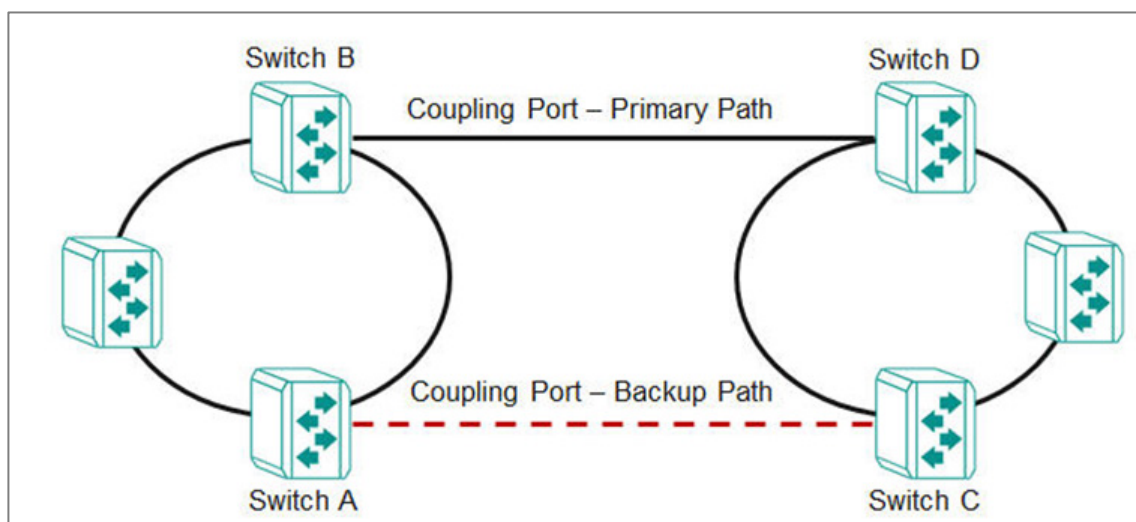
Furthermore, the election mechanism is redundant. If the "master" device itself fails, the network devices detect the failure and automatically elect another. The process occurs quickly, ensuring no interruption.

Turbo Ring v2 supports a backup segment connected to the redundant port (secondary port) on the ring "master". In this case, the backup path is easily identifiable for troubleshooting and replacement.

About Ring Coupling

Ring Coupling refers to the practice of coupling two rings together.

This may be useful when creating a large redundant ring is inconvenient or impractical, such as for devices in remote areas. Smaller redundant rings can be coupled together for inter-ring communication while still maintaining redundancy of constituent rings and couplings.



Ring coupling uses extra ports on each pair of coupled switches. In this example, that means:

- The (Primary) coupling port on Switch B monitors the main path and connects directly to the port on Switch D.
- The (Backup) coupling port on Switch A monitors the main path and connects directly to the port on Switch C.

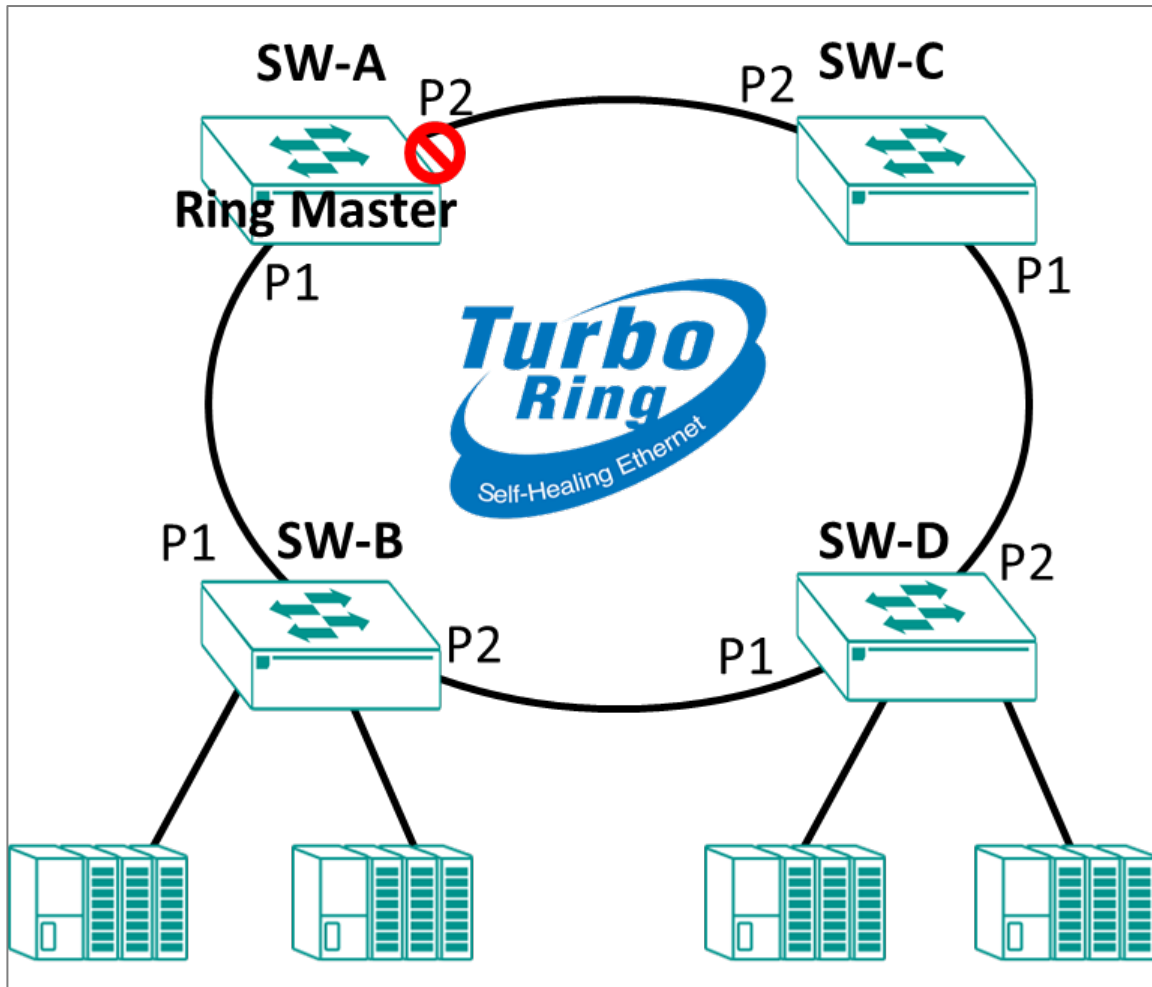
Note

Only one coupling (primary + backup) per ring pair.

Scenario: Using Turbo Ring in a Manufacturing Plant

In this scenario, we describe a factory using a simple ring topology.

A manufacturing plant has a complex network of machines and devices that communicate with each other to keep the production line running smoothly. To ensure that the network remains stable and reliable, the plant needs to use Turbo Ring v2 to create a fault-tolerant network by forming a ring topology.



Set up Turbo Ring v2 to connect multiple networks of machines and devices to create a fault-tolerant network and achieve continuous operations.

Ensure that switches are installed and powered. Wait to connect them until the end. To configure this scenario, do the following:


- Configure the settings each network device for Turbo Ring v2. See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure each device.
- Connect the network devices in a ring topology, using ports 1 and 2 for ring segments.

If the master network device fails, the other devices in the ring will automatically detect the problem and initiate a new election process to select a new master switch, ensuring that there is no significant interruption in communication.

Example: Configuring the Master for Turbo Ring v2 in a Manufacturing Plant

Configure the device labeled SW-A for Turbo Ring v2 in our factory example.

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1** and **2** as ring ports.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Add]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Master	Enabled
Ring Port 1	1
Ring Port 2	2

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:


Master Setting	Result
Multiple devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of Enabled devices
No devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
Single device set to Enabled	Enabled device always master, failure of Enabled device results in ring election

- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Repeat this step on devices SW-B, SW-C, and SW-D, but with the **Master** setting set to **Disabled**. This process is outlined in the subsequent section.

Example: Configuring non-Master devices for Turbo Ring v2 in an On-board Rail Application

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1** and **2** as ring ports.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Master	Disabled
Ring Port 1	1
Ring Port 2	2

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
Multiple devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of Enabled devices
No devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
Single device set to Enabled	Enabled device always master, failure of Enabled device results in ring election

- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

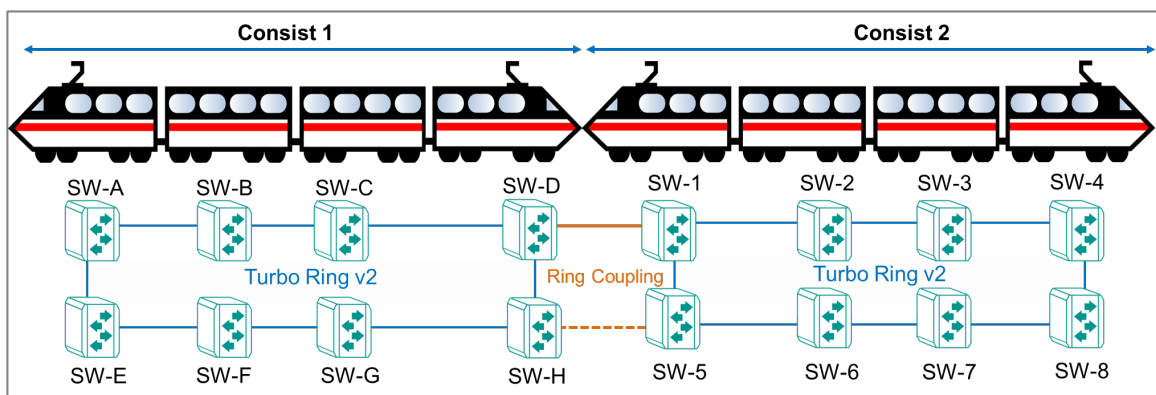
Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports.

Continue to the next section to see how to configure ring coupling. Do not connect coupling ports until network devices have been configured.

Scenario: Using Turbo Ring in an On-board Train Application

In this scenario, we describe setting up Turbo Ring v2 with ring coupling between train consists.

A railway vehicle manufacturer needs to plan a new on-board network with redundancy and flexible inter-consist communication. The customer plans a ring network with Turbo Ring v2 between multiple vehicles to form one ring per consist. Multiple consists will then use ring coupling for inter-consist communication.



This structure allows for easy administration as consists are coupled and uncoupled.


To configure this scenario, do the following:

- Configure the settings each network device for Turbo Ring v2. See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure each device.
- Connect the network devices SW-A through SW-H in a ring topology, using ports 1 and 2 for segments of the ring. Do the same for SW-1 through SW-8. Do not connect the ring coupling yet.
- Configure the Primary Coupling Path path on SW-D. See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure ring coupling.
- Configure the Backup Ring Coupling on SW-H. See the subsequent sections for details about how to configure ring coupling.

Once all devices have been configured, you can connect the ring ports and coupling ports.

Example: Configuring non-Master devices for Turbo Ring v2 in an On-board Rail Application

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports and as ring ports.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Master	Disabled
Ring Port 1	1
Ring Port 2	2

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
Multiple devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of Enabled devices
No devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
Single device set to Enabled	Enabled device always master, failure of Enabled device results in ring election


- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports.

Continue to the next section to see how to configure ring coupling. Do not connect coupling ports until network devices have been configured.

Example: Configuring non-Master devices for Turbo Ring v2 in an On-board Rail Application

Make sure you have NOT connected the ring ports until after you configure Turbo Ring v2 settings. Our examples use ports **1** and **2** as ring ports.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Under Ring Settings, next to **Ring 1**, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring 1 Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Master	Disabled
Ring Port 1	1
Ring Port 2	2

Setting **Master** on multiple devices (or no devices) will have the following effects:

Master Setting	Result
Multiple devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of Enabled devices
No devices set to Enabled	Ring election based on MAC addresses of all devices
Single device set to Enabled	Enabled device always master, failure of Enabled device results in ring election

- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

Once all devices in the ring are configured and enabled, you can connect the ring ports.


Continue to the next section to see how to configure ring coupling. Do not connect coupling ports until network devices have been configured.

Example: Configuring the Primary Ring Coupling Between Consists

Both network devices that make up the ring coupling must be configured as coupling devices.

4. Make sure that you have configured both rings in the scenario.
5. Do not connect the coupling ports until completing setup on both devices. Our scenario assumes port **5** will serve as coupling port.
6. Couplers should only be configured on one ring. Our example uses SW-D as the primary and SW-H as the backup. Do not configure SW-1 or SW-5 as couplers.

To configure SW-D as the primary ring coupler:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Under Ring Coupling Settings, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring Coupling Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Coupling Mode	Primary Path
Coupling Port	5

- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The device has been configured as a primary ring coupling.

Connect the ring coupling ports. Once both devices are connected, you can move on to configuring the backup coupling.


Example: Configuring the Backup Ring Coupling Between Consists

Both network devices that make up the backup ring coupling must be configured as coupling devices.

- Make sure that you have configured both rings in the scenario.

- Do not connect the coupling ports until completing setup on both devices. Our scenario assumes port **5** will serve as coupling port.
- Couplers should only be configured on one ring. Our example uses SW-D as the primary and SW-H as the backup. Do not configure SW-1 or SW-5 as couplers.

To configure SW-H as the backup coupler:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Ring V2**, and then click **General**.
- Under Ring Coupling Settings, click  **[Edit]**.

The Ring Coupling Settings screen appears.

- Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Coupling Mode	Backup Path
Coupling Port	5

- Click **Apply** to save your changes.

The device has been configured as a backup ring coupling.

Once the device has been configured, connect the ring coupling ports. Your coupling configuration will be complete.

About RSTP

Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) is an IEEE 802.1w network protocol that enhances the speed and stability of the Spanning Tree Protocol (STP).

RSTP promotes high availability and a "loop-free" topology, similar to STP, but more quickly within Ethernet networks. It provides faster convergence and is backward compatible with STP. While STP takes 30-50 seconds to converge, RSTP can achieve sub-second convergence.

For applications that require redundancy, but require use of only open-standard protocols and no proprietary protocols, RSTP is a good choice.

How RSTP Works

Based on the original concept of the STP mode, the RSTP tree also grows from root to leaf to build a loop-free topology. This means that RSTP ensures that there is only a single active path between any two devices on an active connection. The remaining disabled connections serve as backup paths in case an active connection fails.

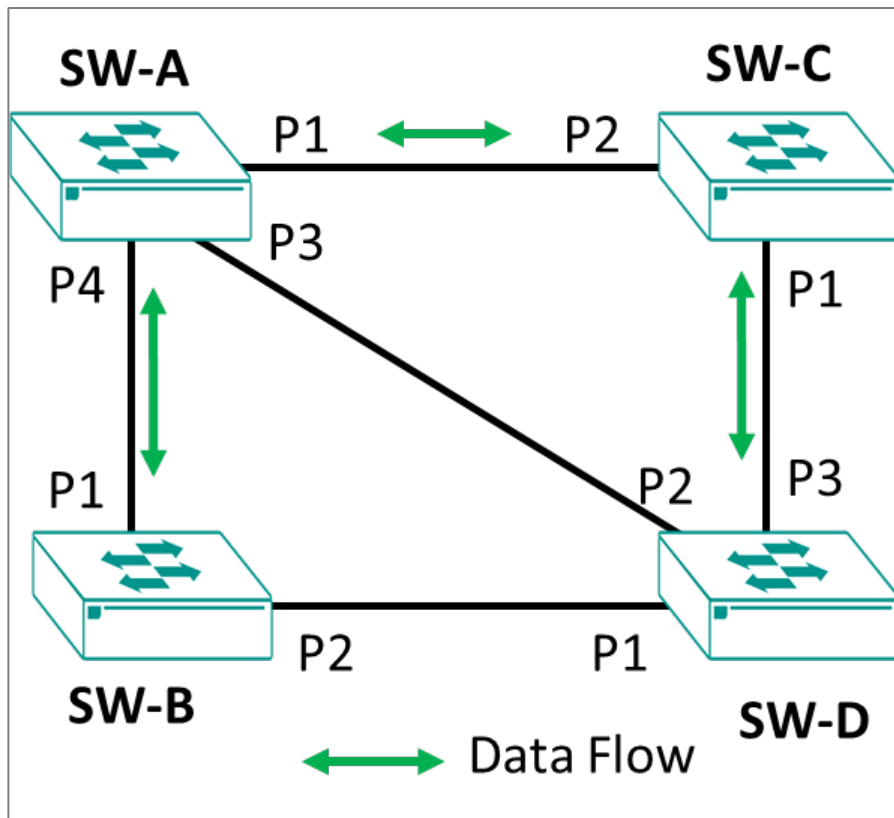
If you are new to STP, please refer to the IEEE 802.1D standard. As an enhancement of STP, RSTP speeds up network convergence. Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP) includes additional information in the Bridge Protocol Data Units (BPDUs) that allow each bridge to confirm that it has taken action to prevent loops from forming when it decides to enable a link to a neighboring bridge. Adjacent bridges connect through point-to-point links allow a link without waiting to ensure that all other bridges in the network have had time to react to the change. The main benefit of RSTP is that the configuration decision is made locally, rather than network-wide. This allows RSTP to carry out automatic configuration and restore a links faster than STP. Additionally, as RSTP is a widely used protocol, Moxa equipment supports connections with switches from various vendors which support RSTP to form a redundant network architecture.

When RSTP is enabled on a network, the spanning tree algorithm automatically determines the configuration of the spanning tree. RSTP's algorithm follows these general procedures:

- **Determining the root bridge:** The switch with the lowest bridge priority is considered the root bridge through priority competition. In case of a tie, a tiebreaker based on the MAC address is used to determine the root bridge. Specifically, the switch with the lowest MAC address is considered the root bridge. All other switches are automatically designated as non-root switches.
- **Selecting the root port for non-root switches:** The root port is selected as the best path to the root bridge based on the root cost, which is typically determined by the bandwidth of the link. Each non-root switch has only one root port.
- ****Assigning designated ports:**** Each connection (segment) must have a port assigned as the designated port for forwarding traffic. The designated port is the one that sends the best BPDU on its segment.
- ****Remaining ports in blocking state:**** All remaining ports, including alternate ports or backup ports, are in a blocking state. These ports do not transmit data to other switches or learn MAC addresses.

Scenario: RSTP on 4 Network Devices

In this scenario, we configure 4 network devices with RSTP.




SW-A will serve as the RSTP root. SW-B, C, and D will be connected to all other devices, but use the green arrow paths as their primary data path.

Ports are configured as follows:

	Device SW-A	Device SW-B	Device SW-C	Device SW-D
Connects to SW-A	N/A	P1	P2	P2
Connects to SW-B	P4	N/A	N/A	P1
Connects to SW-C	P1	N/A	N/A	P3
Connects to SW-D	P3	P2	P1	N/A

Example: Configuring SW-A for RSTP

Here's how to configure SW-A as the root device for RSTP in our example.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Set **Bridge Priority** to **28672** to ensure that SW-A will always be set as the root.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.
- Locate **Port 1** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.


The port settings will be reflected in the table.

- Locate **Port 3** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Click **Apply** to save changes.

The port settings will be reflected in the table.

- Locate **Port 4** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Click **Apply** to save changes.

The port settings will be reflected in the table.

SW-A is now configured for RSTP.

Continue to configure SW-B.

Example: Configuring SW-B and SW-C for RSTP

Here's how to configure SW-B and SW-C for RSTP in our example.


- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.

- Locate **Port 1** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.

The port settings will be reflected in the table.

- Locate **Port 2** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Click **Apply** to save changes.


The port settings will be reflected in the table.

SW-B is now configured for RSTP.

Repeat this procedure on SW-C, and then proceed to configure SW-D.

Example: Configuring SW-D for RSTP

Here's how to configure SW-D for RSTP in our example.

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Spanning Tree**, and then click **General**.
- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.
- Locate **Port 1** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.

The port settings will be reflected in the table.

- Locate **Port 2** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
- Click **Apply** to save changes.

The port settings will be reflected in the table.

- Locate **Port 3** on the list, and then click  **[Edit]**.

The Edit Port Settings screen appears.

- Set Path Cost to 150000

This will ensure that this path will be preferred over the other two ports.

- Click **Apply** to save changes.

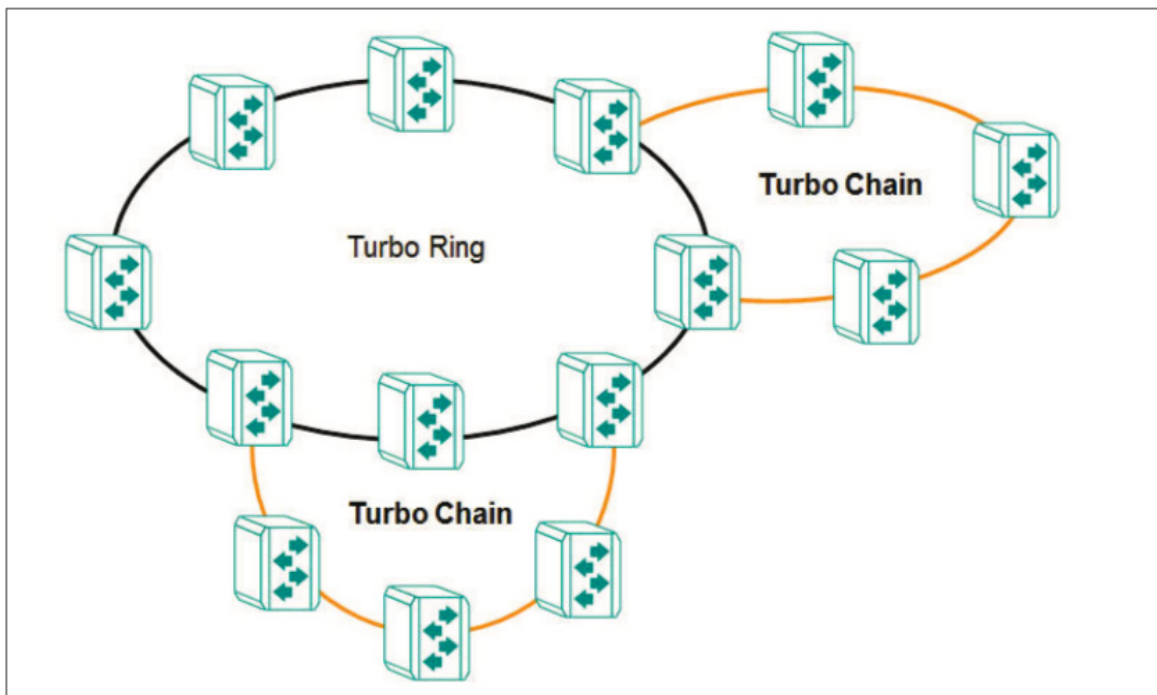
The port settings will be reflected in the table.

SW-D is now configured for RSTP. Now that all network devices are configured, in the event that one link is severed, data will automatically flow over backup paths.

About Turbo Chain

Turbo Chain allows flexible expansion on top of an existing topology

This allows for flexible, cost-effective expansions. This allows you to grow existing networks without replacement the main ring while still maintaining reliability and redundancy.



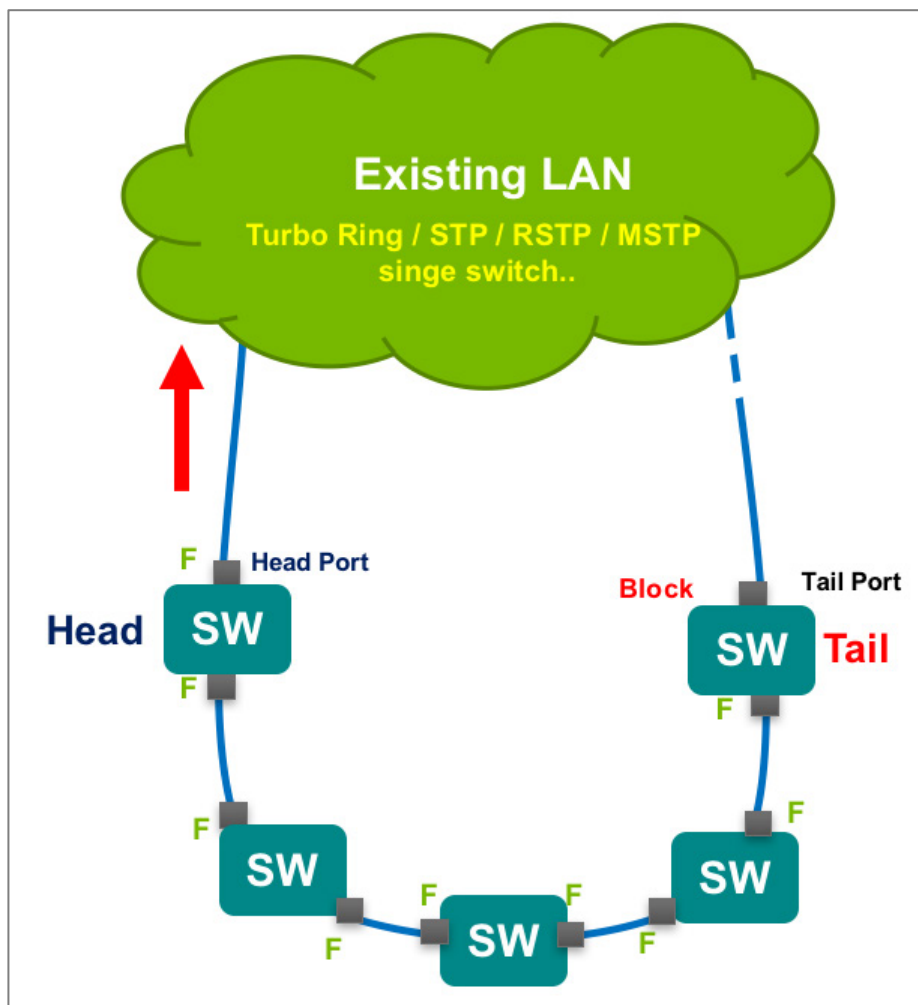
Turbo Chain is a proprietary redundancy technology developed by Moxa, designed for use in widely distributed networks. It enables Ethernet switches to be connected in a daisy-

chain configuration, where each switch serves as a backup path for connected devices. Turbo Chain supports system recovery times of under 20 ms for Fast Ethernet and 50 ms for Gigabit Ethernet in member port link environments.

Turbo Chain is suitable for industrial networks with complex topologies, particularly those utilizing multi-ring architectures. It allows the creation of flexible and scalable topologies with rapid media recovery.

In a typical Turbo Chain setup, each Ethernet switch is connected to two others in a daisy-chain configuration. The switches are categorized into three types: Head, Tail, and Member switches. The Head switch connects the chain to the external network, while the Tail switch provides redundancy. If the Head port is disconnected, the Tail port immediately assumes the role of data transfer, ensuring continuous communication.

This technology ensures that in the event of a link or switch failure, Turbo Chain quickly reroutes traffic to an available backup path, minimizing network downtime and maintaining uninterrupted communication.



Turbo Chain is often used in industrial automation, transportation, and surveillance applications where network reliability is critical. It is compatible with other Moxa networking technologies, such as Turbo Ring, and other Redundancy protocols like STP/RSTP, MSTP etc, to provide further redundancy and resilience for industrial networks.

To sum up, here are some of the features of Turbo Chain technology:

- **Topology:** Turbo Chain uses a daisy-chain topology to connect Ethernet switches in a loop-free configuration.
- **Redundancy:** Turbo Chain provides a backup path on the tail switch to ensure network availability and reduce downtime in the event of a switch or link failure.
- **Fast failover:** Turbo Chain has a fast failover mechanism that can detect and activate backup paths in a matter of milliseconds (< 20 ms) to ensure uninterrupted communication between devices.
- **Compatibility:** Turbo Chain is compatible with other redundancy technologies, such as Turbo Ring and RSTP, to provide even greater redundancy and resilience for industrial networks.

Example: Configuring Turbo Chain

In this example, we will configure network devices for Turbo Chain.

- Determine which devices will be the head, tail, and members of the chain. The head and tail must connect to the main LAN.
- Do not connect any of the chain devices until configuration of all devices is complete.
- Do not use any of the chain ports until configuration is completed. Do not use these ports for administration, as applying the chain configuration to these ports will disconnect you from the web GUI.

You can configure the head, tail, and member devices in any order as long as you do not connect them until after all devices are configured. Choose a device to configure and do the following:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 2 Redundancy > Turbo Chain**, and then click **Settings**.
- Set **Turbo Chain** to **Enabled**.

- For **Chain Role**, specify one of the following:
 - **Head** - specify only one head of the chain. This will be the primary connection to the rest of the network.
 - **Tail** - specify only one tail of the chain. This device will be the backup connection to the rest of the network.
 - **Member** - specify one or more member devices. Member devices make up the "links" between the head and the tail of the chain. Make sure that there are no loops in the chain.
- Specify the following Ports based on the **Chain Role**:

Head Chain Role Option	Port Value
------------------------	------------

Head Port	1
Member Port	2

Member Chain Role Option

Member Port 1	1
Member Port 2	2

Tail Chain Role Option

Tail Port	1
Member Port	2

- Click **Apply** to save changes.
- Repeat this procedure to configure all devices in the chain. Once all devices have been configured, connect the devices in the chain.

Once all devices are configured and connected, packets are transmitted through the Head Port to the LAN network. If any Turbo Chain path is disconnected, the Tail Port will be activated so that packet transmission can continue.

About VRRP

The Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP) is a layer 3 redundancy protocol enabling multiple routers to collaborate as a group and share a virtual IP address.

The main purpose of VRRP is to provide redundancy for the default gateway utilized by hosts on a LAN or VLAN.

In a VRRP setup, a single router is designated as the "master" while the other routers are "backup" routers. The master router is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address. Additionally, backup routers supervise the master router and take over its tasks in case of failure. This enables automatic failover and redundancy, guaranteeing network connectivity—even in the event of a router failure.

Benefits of VRRP

- **Increased Network Reliability:** VRRP enables multiple routers to work together in a group, sharing a virtual IP address. This provides redundancy for the default gateway, ensuring that network connectivity is maintained even if one of the routers fails. This increases the overall reliability of the network and helps prevent downtime.
- **Automatic Failover:** VRRP facilitates automatic failover, where backup routers take over the tasks of the master router in case of a failure. This ensures that there is no disruption to network services and users can continue to access resources without any interruption.
- **Easy Network Management:** VRRP simplifies network management by allowing multiple routers to work together as a group, sharing a virtual IP address. This eliminates the need for complex routing protocols and reduces the risk of misconfiguration.

About VRRP States

With VRRP, routers are assigned different roles and states to ensure seamless failover and improved network availability.

The three primary states of VRRP are:

- **Init State:** This is the initial state when a VRRP router starts up. The router initializes its VRRP configuration and has not yet determined whether it should become a Master or a Backup router. The router remains in the Init state until it

starts receiving VRRP advertisements from other routers in the same VRRP group or until it begins sending advertisements itself.

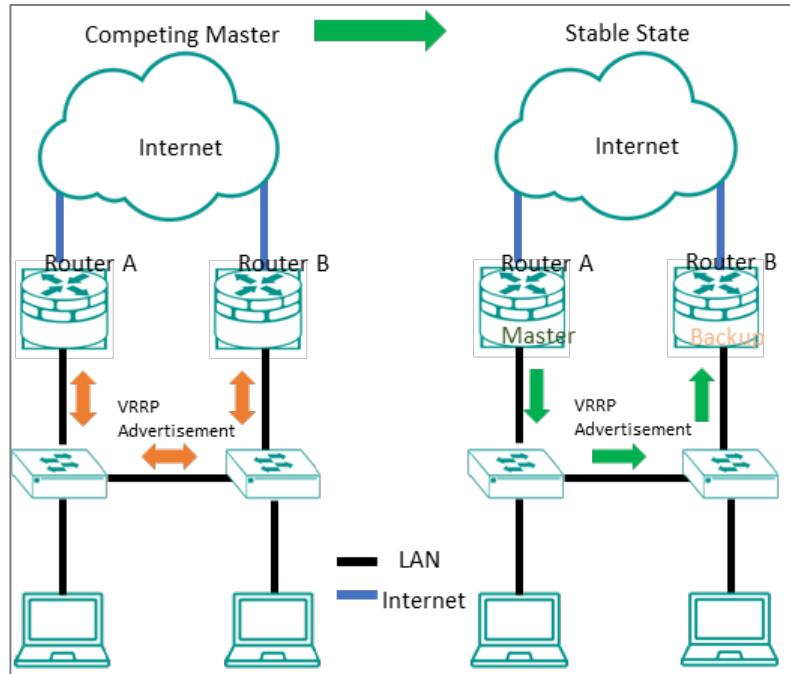
- **Master State:** In this state, the router is responsible for forwarding packets sent to the virtual IP address and acts as the default gateway for the devices in the network. The router with the highest priority (or lowest IP address in case of a tie) becomes the Master router. The Master router periodically sends VRRP advertisements to the other routers in the VRRP group to maintain its role. If the Master router fails, one of the Backup routers will take over the role based on priority.
- **Backup State:** Routers in the Backup state are waiting to take over the Master role if the current Master router fails. Backup routers listen for VRRP advertisements from the Master router and update their timers accordingly. If a Backup router stops receiving VRRP advertisements from the Master router for a certain period (typically three times the advertisement interval), it assumes that the Master router has failed and attempts to transition to the Master state based on its priority.

The VRRP states ensure that the network has a functioning default gateway at all times, providing redundancy and improving network availability in case of router failure. By implementing VRRP, network administrators can achieve increased network reliability, automatic failover, and easier network management.

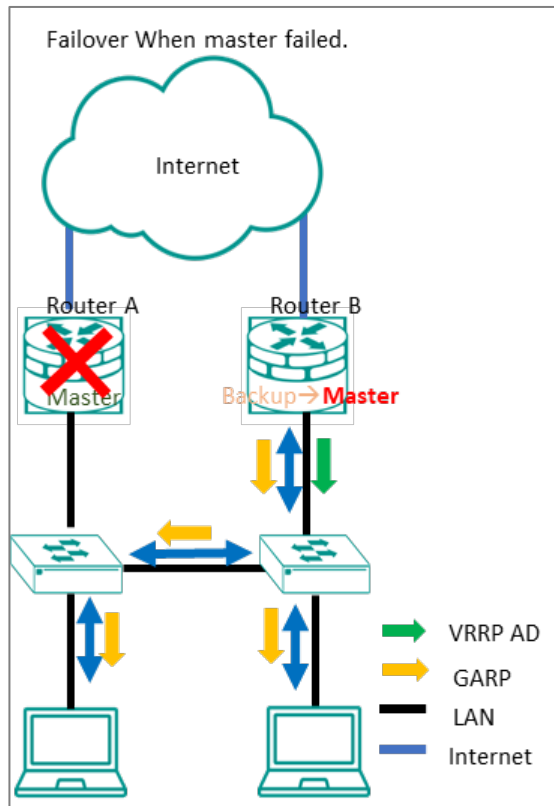
VRRP in Depth

VRRP group routers select a master router based on priority, with the highest priority being the master.

To accomplish this, Each router in the group announces its priority, and the master router regularly sends out VRRP advertisements to the other routers to update its status.



The virtual IP address is linked with the VRRP group, and the master router forwards network packets using the virtual IP address as the source address. The backup routers stay inactive, listening to the VRRP messages from the master and ready to take over if the master fails. The Master Router sends advertisement packets to the backup routers to inform them that it is still operational. The advertisement interval is manually configured, with a default value of 1 second. If the master router fails, the Backup Router is unable to receive advertisement packets from the Master. Once the advertisement down timer expires, backup router will realize that the Master is experiencing issues or has powered down and one of the backup routers with a higher priority takes over as the new master, ensuring there is no disruption in network connectivity.



VRRP can also be set up to use preemption, which allows a higher-priority router to take over as the master even if the current master router is still functional. This can be useful when the higher-priority router is available again after a period of downtime.

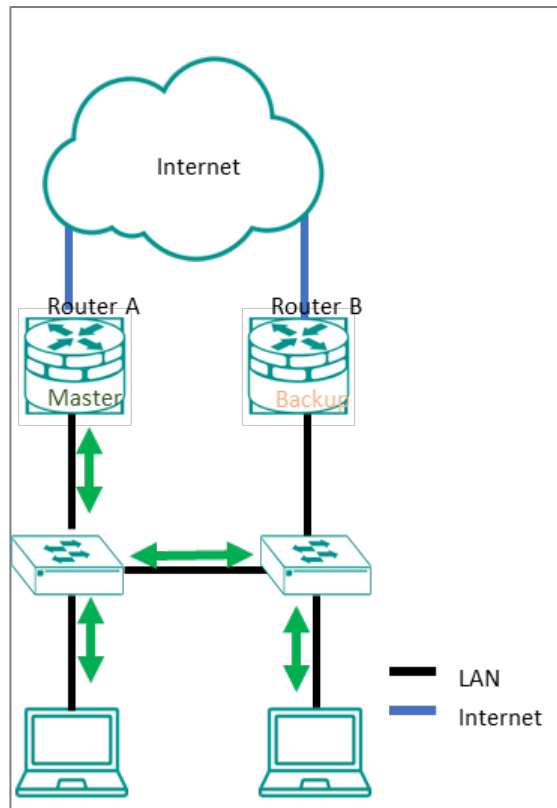
In summary, VRRP is a valuable protocol that provides redundancy in network environments where high availability is critical. It enables multiple routers to act as a single virtual router, ensuring network traffic continues to flow in the event of a router failure.

Scenario: VRRP on Two Routers

In this scenario, we'll configure two routers connected to the same LAN (Local Area Network). We will configure VRRP to ensure that if one of the routers fails, the other router will continue to forward traffic to the LAN.

For example, suppose Router A (LAN interface IP: 192.168.127.1) is initially configured as the master and Router B (LAN interface IP: 192.168.127.2) as the backup in the VRRP group. Router A is responsible for forwarding packets to the LAN. The master should keep tracking the interface by ping the device (IP 192.168.127.100) in order to make sure of the LAN communication.

If Router A were to fail by ping lost or any link down event, Router B would detect this and assume the role of the master. It would then begin forwarding packets to the LAN, ensuring that there is no disruption in network connectivity. Once Router A becomes available, it can take over as the master, and Router B reverts to its backup role.



Example: Configuring VRRP on Router A

This task assumes that each device has already configured an interface called LAN1 with the following IP addresses:

- Router A: 192.168.127.1
- Router B: 192.168.127.2

To configure Router A, do the following:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy** > **Layer 3 Redundancy** > **VRRP**, and then click **Settings**.
- On the lower table of the screen, click **+ [Add]**.

The Create Virtual Router screen appears.

- Configure the following, and then click **Create**.

Option	Value
Interface	LAN1
Virtual IP	192.168.127.3
Priority	200
Preemption	Enabled
Target IP	192.168.127.100

The **Virtual Router** settings appear in the list.

- Under the Virtual Router list, click **Apply**.
- At the top of the page, under **VRRP**, select **Enabled** from the dropdown list, and then click **Apply**.

Router A is now configured for VRRP.

Continue to configure Router B.

Example: Configuring VRRP on Router B

This task assumes that each device has already configured an interface called LAN1 with the following IP addresses:

- Router A: 192.168.127.1
- Router B: 192.168.127.2

To configure Router B, do the following:

- Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
- Go to **Redundancy > Layer 3 Redundancy > VRRP**, and then click **Settings**.
- On the lower table of the screen, click **+ [Add]**.

The Create Virtual Router screen appears.

- Configure the following, and then click **Create**.

Option	Value
Interface	LAN1

Option	Value
Virtual IP	192.168.127.3
Priority	100
Preemption	Enabled
Target IP	192.168.127.100

The **Virtual Router** settings appear in the list.

- Under the Virtual Router list, click **Apply**.
- At the top of the page, under **VRRP**, select **Enabled** from the dropdown list, and then click **Apply**.

Both routers are now configured for VRRP. In the event of a failure of one router, the other can take over using the same virtual IP address, ensuring continued function without reconfiguration.

Routing

About Routing

IP routing is the process of forwarding Internet Protocol (IP) traffic between different networks using one or more intermediate devices.

When one device wants to send a packet to another on a different network, it forwards the packet to its default gateway—usually a router. The router examines the destination IP address and determines the next "hop" along the path to the destination. This process continues with subsequent routers until the packet reaches its destination. Each router along the path checks its own routing table to determine the best path for the packet. Routing tables contain information about network topology and a list of networks and associated routes. Each route correlates information by destination IP or IP range, and includes information such as the next-hop router and the cost of sending packets along that route.

Static routing and **dynamic routing** are two methods of populating the routing table with information about how to reach different networks.

Static routing is manually-configured. Network administrators configure the routing table on each router. This method is simple to configure and allows packets to take predictable paths as long as network topology does not change.

Dynamic routing protocols automatically update the routing table on each router. This method is more flexible and scalable, making it suitable for larger and more complex networks.

In addition to how routes are configured, packets can be routed between a single sender and single recipient (**unicast**), or from one sender to multiple devices at a time (**multicast**).

Unicast delivery is used to send packets from one sender to one recipient, as is typically the case with most network traffic. When a device sends a packet with an unicast destination address, the router looks up the destination address in its routing table and forwards the packet to the next hop on the path to the destination.

Multicast delivery, on the other hand, is used to send packets from one sender to many recipients. With multicast, a single packet is sent out to a group of devices on the network that have expressed interest in receiving packets for that group. This is useful for applications such as video streaming, where the same content needs to be sent to multiple devices simultaneously. Dynamic multicast routing protocols, such as Protocol Independent Multicast (**PIM**), are used to ensure that multicast packets are delivered only to devices that have expressed interest in receiving them.

Routing and Packet Delivery

	Unicast	Multicast
Static	Manual Configuration	Manual Configuration
Dynamic	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• RIP• OSPF	PIM

Note

The TN-4908 series currently only supports static multicast routes in multicast stream routing.

About Static Routing

A static route is a manually configured network path used to deliver network traffic to a specific destination network or host. Unlike dynamic routes established by routing protocols, static routes are created and managed by a network administrator. They are typically used in small networks or situations where there is a limited number of destinations that need to be reached.

Among these static routes, a special type known as the default route, or 'gateway of last resort', plays a critical role. This default route, often designated as 0.0.0.0/0, represents a catch-all path. When a device doesn't have a specific route for a packet's destination IP address, it will utilize the default route, sending the data along this path. This ensures that all data, regardless of its destination, has a route to follow.

While both default and static routes are manually configured, they serve different purposes. Static routes are used for specific, predefined network paths, while the default route is a catch-all, used when no other path is available for a specific data packet. This allows for increased control over network traffic while ensuring that data can reach otherwise unspecified networks, typically including the public Internet.

Static routes, including default routes, offer several advantages, including:

- More control over network traffic, allowing administrators to direct traffic along specific paths.
- Less overhead and resource usage, as static routes don't require routers to exchange routing information.
- Faster convergence, since there are no routing updates to process.

However, static routes also have some disadvantages:

- May be time-consuming and prone to human error, as administrators must manually configure and update routes.
- Unable to adapt to network changes automatically, requiring manual intervention to update routing tables when network topology changes.
- May not scale well in large networks with numerous destinations and frequent changes.

In summary, static routing is a method for unicast communication in which network paths are manually configured by network administrators. While they offer more control over network traffic and can improve performance in some cases, static routes can be time-consuming to manage and may not be well-suited for large, dynamic networks.

About Multicast Routing

Multicast routing is an efficient method for transmitting network traffic to a group of devices simultaneously. This approach helps conserve network resources, improve performance, and reduce congestion by sending only one copy of a message to all interested devices in the group.

A **Static Multicast Route** is a manually configured network path used to deliver multicast traffic to a specific group of devices on a network. It is a type of multicast route that is manually created and configured by a network administrator, rather than dynamically established by a multicast routing protocol. Static multicast routes are typically used in small networks where the multicast group membership is known and does not change frequently. They can also be used in situations where the multicast traffic needs to be routed through a specific path in the network, or when multicast traffic needs to be constrained to a specific set of network interfaces.

Note

While enabling the static multicast routing, it is crucial to regularly review and adjust your configurations in response to any alterations in the network topology or multicast group memberships.


About Selecting a Routing Protocol

Short Description: There are several factors to consider when selecting a routing protocol.

1. **Network Size:** In a small network with only a few L3 devices with two or three interfaces, static routing is often the simplest and most efficient option. Dynamic routing, on the other hand, is more suitable for multiple Layer 3 interfaces with many devices and complex interconnections.
2. **Topology Stability:** If the network topology is relatively stable and changes infrequently, static routing can be a reliable and predictable choice. In contrast, dynamic routing protocols like **RIP** and **OSPF** are designed to adapt to changes in

the network, making them better suited for networks that are constantly changing.

3. **Operational Cost:** Static routing requires manual configuration of each router, which can be time-consuming and error-prone in large networks. Dynamic routing protocols can automate this process, making it easier to manage and scale the network.
4. **Number of Receivers:** Unicast is a one-to-one communication method, while multicast is a one-to-many communication method. Unicast is typically used for sending data to a specific recipient, while multicast is used for delivering data to multiple recipients who have expressed interest in receiving data for a specific multicast group.

 **Note**

Dynamic routing can be vulnerable to attacks that manipulate routing information.

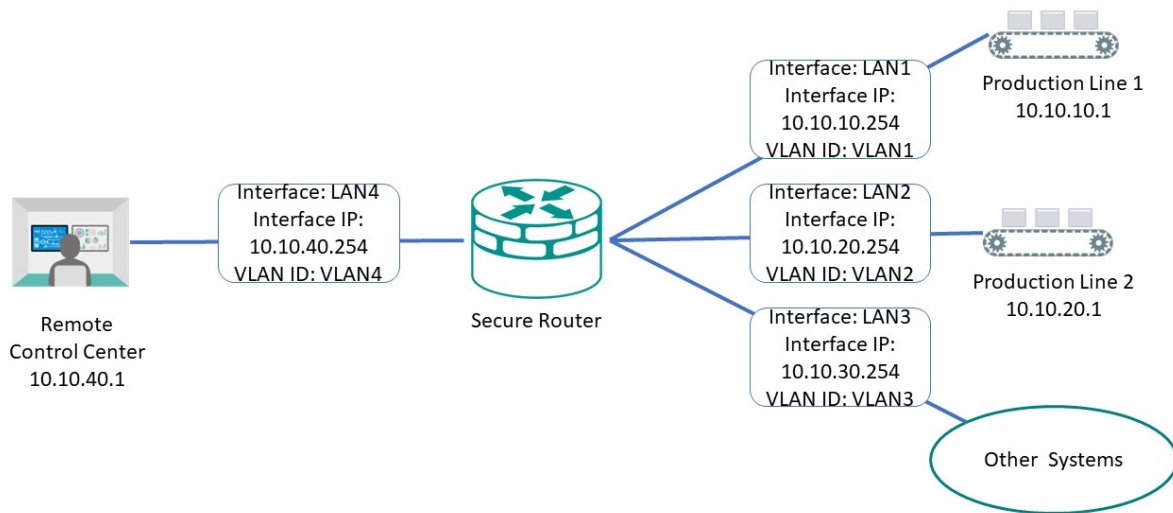
A combination of both static and dynamic routing may also be appropriate in some cases, such as when you have a core network that uses static routes and branch networks that use dynamic routing protocols.

Example: Adding a Static Unicast Route for Factory Automation

A factory operator wants to create static routes between two production lines to coordinate handoffs in a multistage manufacturing process. Static routes allow packets to traverse different subnets, and will ensure efficient routing of packets between the two production lines, as well as to the central control center. This also improves performance by reducing network congestion, ensuring that packets will not be retransmitted to other devices or other subnets.

Before you begin: Make sure you have correctly configured:

- Each device with an IP address.
- VLANs for each subnet. Refer to VLAN for more information.
- VLAN assignment to an Interface. Refer to Network Interfaces for more information.



To create a static route to Production Line 1, do the following:


1. Go to **Routing**→**Unicast Route**→**Static Routes**, and then click **[Add]**.

Result: The **Create new static route** panel appears.

2. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Name	Specify a name for the route. Names must not exceed 10 characters. Names are for user reference only and do not affect functionality.
Status	Enable
Destination Address	10.10.10.1 Refers to Production Line 1.
Subnet Mask	24(255.255.255.0) Refers to the subnet mask of the destination address.
Next Hop	10.10.10.254 Refers to the Secure Router LAN1 Interface as the next hop on the network.

Item	Value
Metric	1 Indicates the preference or priority of a particular route, with lower values having higher priority. When multiple static routes are available (or both static and dynamic routing protocols are available), the router uses the Metric value to determine the best route to use. For static routes, a value of 1 is recommended.

 **Note**

The Destination Address and Subnet Mask identify which traffic forwards to the next hop. For multi-hop entries, the Subnet Mask will correspond to the Destination Address and not the Next Hop.

3. Click **Create**.

Result: The new static routing entry should appear in the routing table.

Results:

Packets meeting the destination criteria will be routed to the appropriate interface and applicable subnet, and will not be propagated further.

What to do next: Repeat this procedure to add Production Line 2 (10.10.20.1), the Remote Control Center (10.10.40.1), and Other Systems (10.10.30.1) to the Static Routing Table.

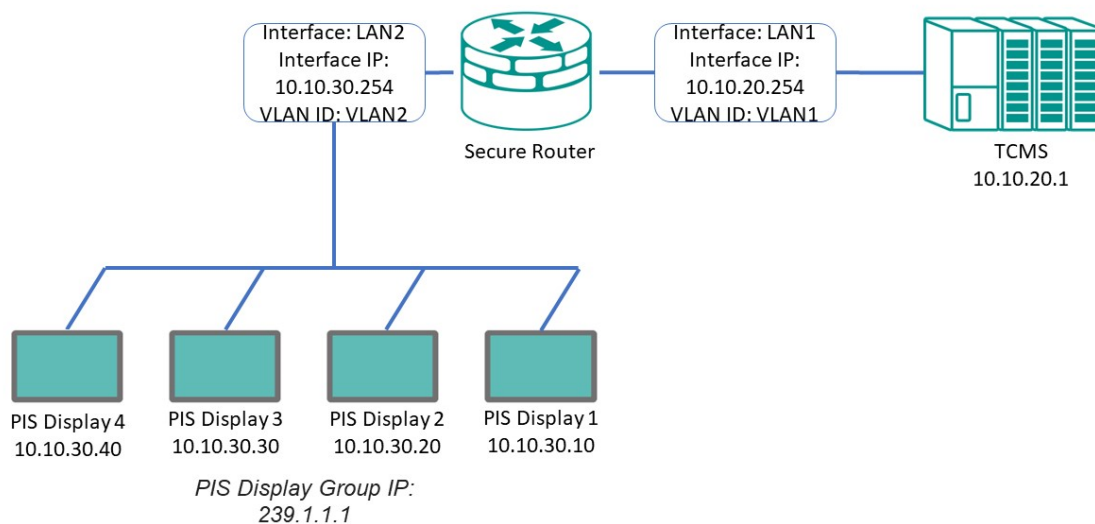
Example: Adding Static Multicast Route for Passenger Speed Display

A train operator wants to display current train speed on the PIS (Passenger Information System), requiring the TCMS (Train Control Management System) to share speed information with the PIS. There are multiple displays in multiple cars throughout the train. Multicast static routing allows the TCMS to send a single packet to multiple displays across the train, minimizing traffic congestion and processing overhead. The reduction in the total number of packets on the network can make it easier to manage quality of service and allocate network resources effectively.

Before you begin: Make sure you have correctly configured:

- Each device with an IP address.

- Each display device to join the multicast group (239.1.1.1 in this example). Consult your PIS system documentation for details.
- VLANs for each subnet. Refer to VLAN for more information.
- VLAN assignment to an Interface. Refer to Network Interfaces for more information.
- IGMP Snooping as Enabled on the VLAN for the PIS displays. Refer to VLAN Settings - Edit VLAN Settings for more information.



To create a static multicast route for the PIS Display Group, do the following:

1. Go to **Routing**→**Multicast Route**→**Multicast Route Settings**, make sure **Mode** is set to **Static Multicast Route**, and then click **Apply**.
2. Go to **Routing**→**Multicast Route**→**Static Multicast Route**, and then click **[Add]**.

Result: The **Create Static Multicast Route** panel appears.

3. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Status	Enable

Item	Value
Group Address	239.1.1.1 Refers to the group IP used by the PIS displays. Packets sent to this address will be sent to all devices configured to listen on this IP which also share the other parameters specified in this section.
Source Address Type	Choose Specify Source , and then specify 10.10.20.1 This refers to the Control Unit, ensuring that other potential devices on this interface and VLAN do not generate unnecessary packets and traffic.
Inbound Interface	LAN1 Refers to the interface connecting the TCMS to the Secure Router. Since the TCMS provides the speed data for the displays.
Outbound Interface	LAN2 Refers to the interface connecting the PIS screens to the Secure Router.

4. Click **Create**.

Result: The new static routing entry appears in the routing table.

Results:

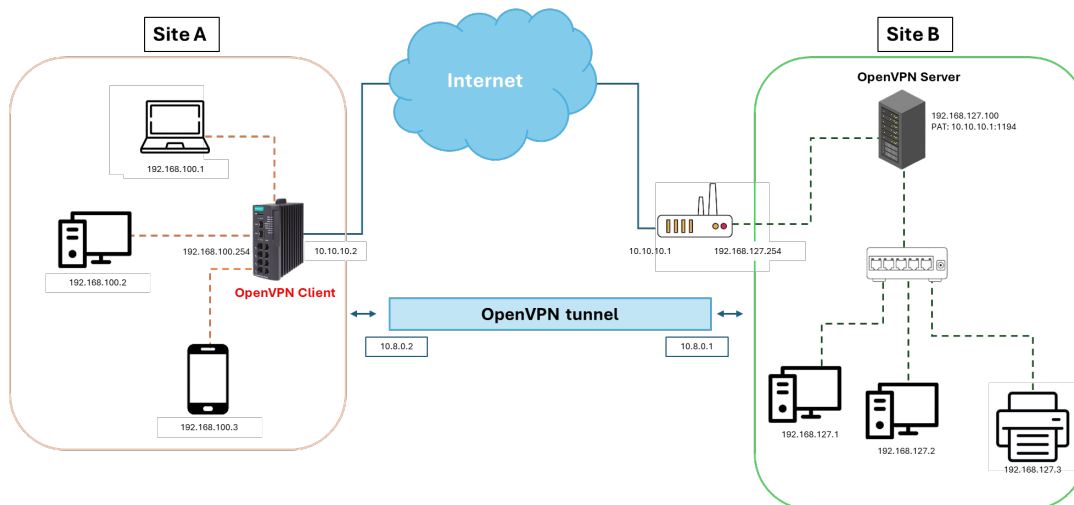
Multicast packets from the TCMS meeting the specified criteria will be sent to PIS screens, allowing them to display speed data without generating duplicate or extra packets that might reduce network performance.

About OpenVPN Client

OpenVPN is an open-source software application that implements virtual private network (VPN) techniques to create secure point-to-point or site-to-site connections. It can establish a safe and encrypted tunnel between devices and a VPN server, ensuring the internet traffic remains private and secure. OpenVPN can also traverse network address translators (NAT) and firewalls, making it a versatile and powerful solution for secure communication over the Internet.

Scenario: Using a Site-to-Site OpenVPN Tunnel

Our scenario two locations, Site A and Site B, which need to securely share resources.



Site A has multiple devices that need access to the resources at Site B. Configuring OpenVPN on each device at Site A is complex and time-consuming. To simplify the setup, the user decides to use the router at Site A as an OpenVPN client, facilitating connections from all devices at site A to site B as though they were on the local network.

Configuring the Router as an OpenVPN Client

Configuring the router as client allows all traffic from devices at Site A to be tunneled over the Internet to Site B as though they were on the same network.

Before you begin: Make sure that you have an OpenVPN Profile (.ovpn file) from the VPN server. Additionally, the router at site B must be configured with PAT (Port Address Translation) to forward OpenVPN packets to the OpenVPN server at IP address 192.168.127.100.

Note

Applying the OpenVPN client will disable the IPsec VPN, which may result in VPN connection loss.

1. Sign in to the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **VPN > OpenVPN Client > Settings**.
3. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Description	Optionally enter a description of up to 40 characters.

Option	Value
Import OpenVPN Profile	Import an OpenVPN profile from the local file system.
Username	Enter a username if required by the OpenVPN server.
Password	Enter a password if required by the OpenVPN server.


4. Click **Apply** to save your settings.

Results: After the OpenVPN connection is established, the connection will be visible under **VPN > OpenVPN Client > Status**. Additionally, the routing information for the VPN will be visible in the routing table under **Routing > Unicast Route > Routing Table**.

What to do next: If the OpenVPN server cannot identify IPs from site A, it may be necessary to add a NAT rule on the OpenVPN client.

Example: Configuring NAT to Translate over OpenVPN

For OpenVPN servers that are unable to identify IP addresses from site A, you can add a NAT rule on the OpenVPN client router.

1. Sign into the device with administrator credentials.
2. To configure the inbound rule, go to **NAT**, and then click  **[Add]**.
3. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Description	Optional: Enter your description here
Index	Specify an index (ID) for the route.
Mode	Advance
Protocol	ICMP, TCP, UDP
Incoming Interface (Original Packet)	LAN
Source IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Subnet Mask

Option	Value
Source IP (Original Packet)	192.168.100.0
Subnet Mask (Original Packet)	24 (255.255.255.0)
Source Port mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Destination Port Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Outgoing Interface (Translated Packet)	Any
Source IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Single
Source IP (Translated Packet)	10.8.0.2
Source Port Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any
Destination Port Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any

4. Click **Apply**.

The NAT rule will appear on the list.

The router will now ensure that packets between the local network and the OpenVPN tunnel are translated to the tunnel IP address to facilitate transmission on the remote server.

About NetFlow

NetFlow collects detailed information about the traffic passing through a network interface.

It provides network administrators with valuable insights into traffic flow within the network, allowing them to monitor and analyze network traffic effectively. This capability is crucial for performance monitoring, capacity planning, troubleshooting, and security analysis.

NetFlow In Depth

Netflow architecture generally contains three main components.

NetFlow Exporter

NetFlow exporters are devices that collect and export traffic data, typically a router. The exporter gathers data from the network interface, aggregates packet headers, and sends this information via UDP to the NetFlow collector for analysis.

Note

The exporter identifies the flows by at least one of the following features: IP Source, IP Destination, Source Port, Destination Port, Class of Service, Layer 3 Protocol Type, and Interface.

NetFlow Collector

NetFlow collectors are servers or appliances that receive the aggregated flows transmitted by NetFlow exporters, storing and preprocessing the flow data for the NetFlow analyzer.

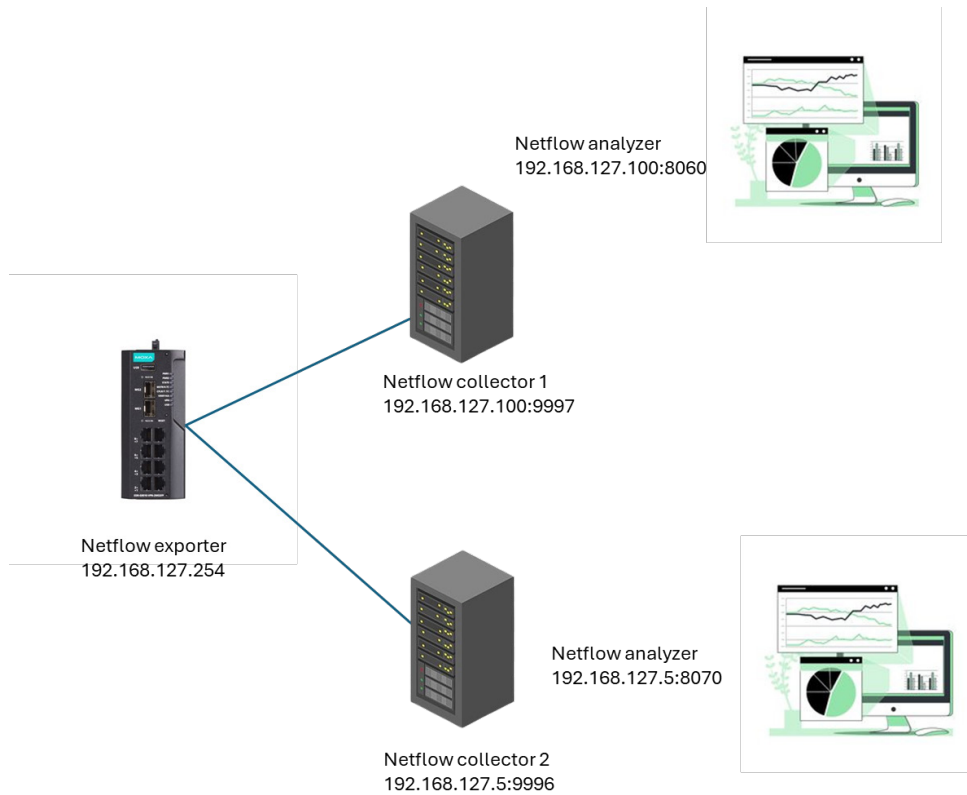
NetFlow Analyzer

NetFlow analyzers are software tools designed to analyze flow data records stored by NetFlow collectors, transforming them into visual reports to aid network administrators in understanding and optimizing network performance.

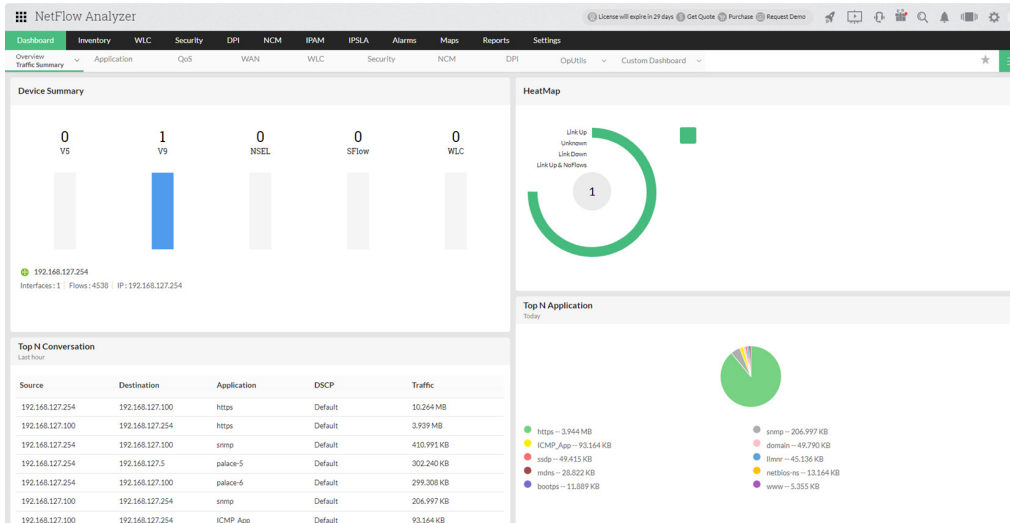
Scenario: Using NetFlow to Collect LAN Interface Data

See how NetFlow can be used to monitor an enterprise network.

In a large enterprise network, network administrators need to monitor network traffic in real time to ensure stable performance and quickly identify potential security threats. The diagram provided is a simplified example to illustrate the basic concept of NetFlow monitoring and analysis. The system consists of three main components: a NetFlow Exporter, two NetFlow Collectors for redundancy, and a NetFlow Analyzer.

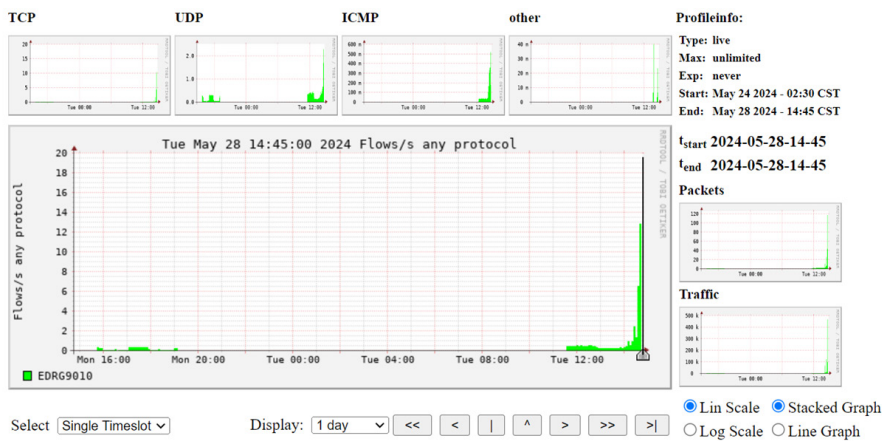


- Netflow Exporter: The router collects network traffic data from the interfaces, and sends it to two Netflow collector servers.
 - 2 NetFlow Collectors (Middle Servers)
- Flows will be sent to both collectors simultaneously. If one collector fails, the other will continue to operate, providing a degree of redundancy.
- NetFlow Analyzers (Software Based):
 - One NetFlow collector running **NetFlow Analyzer on Windows OS**



- One NetFlow collector running **NfSen on Linux**

Profile: live



Statistics timeslot May 28 2024 - 14:45


Channel:	Flows:					Packets:					Traffic:				
	all:	tcp:	udp:	icmp:	other:	all:	tcp:	udp:	icmp:	other:	all:	tcp:	udp:	icmp:	other:
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EDRG9010	3.3 /s	1.1 /s	2.2 /s	0.0 /s	0 /s	13.4 /s	7.5 /s	5.8 /s	0.1 /s	0 /s	26.3 kb/s	20.0 kb/s	6.2 kb/s	60.3 b/s	0 b/s
TOTAL	3.3 /s	1.1 /s	2.2 /s	0.0 /s	0 /s	13.4 /s	7.5 /s	5.8 /s	0.1 /s	0 /s	26.3 kb/s	20.0 kb/s	6.2 kb/s	60.3 b/s	0 b/s

Display: Sum Rate


After collection, the data is sent to an analyzer. The analyzer processes this data and transforms it into visual reports, making it easier to understand and analyze network traffic patterns.

Example: Configuring the Router as a NetFlow Exporter

To be effective in a NetFlow topology, the device must be configured as a NetFlow Exporter with the correct settings for collectors.

1. Sign in to the device using administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Diagnostics > Tools > NetFlow**.
3. To create Collector entries, next to **Collector Settings**, click  **[Add]** twice.
4. Under **NetFlow Settings**, configure all of the following:

Option	Value
NetFlow	Enabled
Version	V9 Selected the correspond NetFlow version for your NetFlow collector.
Collector 1 IP/Host Name	192.168.127.100
Collector 1 Port	9997
Collector 2 IP/Host	192.168.127.5
Collector 2 Port	9996
Active NetFlow Entry Timeout	1
Inactivity Timeout	1

5. Click **Apply** to apply these settings.
6. Above the table on the bottom half of the page, click  **[Add]**.

The Create NetFlow Entry screen appears.

7. Specify all of the following:

Status	Enabled
Interface	LAN Select the network interface to be monitor by NetFlow. In this scenario, "LAN" interface (192.168.127.254/24) is selected.
Traffic Direction	Bidirectional

Mode

Basic

Basic mode collects all data from the interface. **Filter** mode collects specific data flow according to source IP, source port, destination IP, destination port, and Protocol (TCP, UDP).

Sampling Rate

1

This parameter defines the sampling rate of NetFlow data. When the user inputs a parameter, the system will automatically sample 1 packet from the specified number of packets as the sampling rate. For example, if the parameter is set to 100, it means that 1 packet will be randomly selected from every 100 packets as the sampling rate. The range of the sampling rate is 0~65535, the default value is 0, which means the sampling function is inactive, the result is same as sampling every packet (sampling rate = 1).

Consider the following guidelines for setting the sampling rate for a production environment:

- Low Traffic Volume: 1 per 100-500 packets
- Medium Traffic Volume: 1 per 1,000-2,000 packets
- High Traffic Volume: 1 per 2,000-4,000 packets

8. Click **Create** to save changes.

About Loopback Interfaces

Loopback interfaces are dummy IP interfaces to allow otherwise identical subnets to communicate without address conflicts or wasted ports.

Imagine a scenario where you need to enable NAT (Network Address Translation) to traverse a VPN (Virtual Private Network). Currently, the setup requires using a Secondary IP, which needs to be bound to a physical interface. This method, although functional, consumes a physical interface and requires additional configuration. Instead, consider using a virtual interface. A virtual interface is a software-based representation of a network interface that doesn't correspond to a physical port. By using virtual interfaces, you can achieve the same objectives without consuming physical hardware resources.

Scenario: Connecting Two Subnets

In this network topology, two routers need to establish a VPN tunnel, but their underlying LANs use the same subnet (192.168.127.0/24). This setup typically encounters

difficulties because VPN tunnels cannot usually be established between two identical subnets.

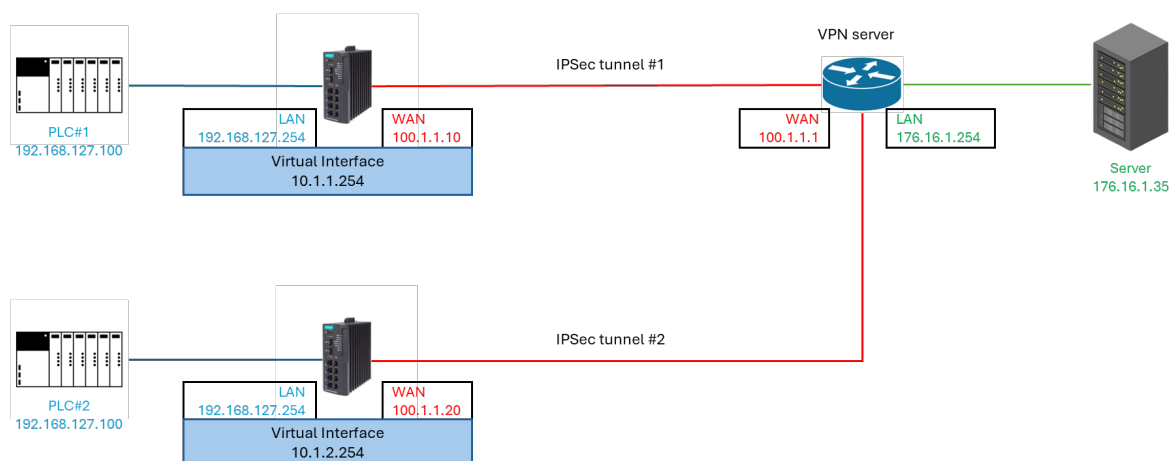
A common solution to this problem is configuring a **secondary IP** address on a physical interface. However, this approach requires binding the secondary IP to an additional physical interface. If the user does not need or cannot use additional physical interfaces, this method becomes impractical.

To solve this problem, we utilized the **loopback interface** feature. Each router is configured with a loopback interface, each with a unique IP address (10.1.1.254 and 10.1.2.254). This way, the two routers can establish VPN tunnels with their respective loopback interfaces without wasting physical ports.

This configuration allows VPN tunnels to be established between two identical LAN subnets (192.168.127.0/24) by using loopback interfaces to isolate and forward internal traffic. Loopback interfaces provide an additional IP layer for the routers, allowing VPN connections to operate normally without changing the internal LAN subnet. This way, PLC#1 and PLC#2 under the LAN can communicate with the remote server (176.16.1.30) through NAT, enabling cross-subnet data exchange.

Using loopback interfaces not only solves the VPN connection issue, but also avoids the need for additional physical interfaces, making it an efficient and flexible solution.

Sample Topology



In this topology, PLC #1 and #2 both need to communicate with the server over a VPN connection. However, since they have identical local IP addresses and local subnets, their simultaneous connection would ordinarily result in IP address conflicts and routing

problems. With loopback interfaces configured with unique IP addresses, this can be avoided using the loopback interface as a medium for Network Address Translation.

- The VPN tunnel is established between the 176.16.1.0/24 subnet on the server side and the 10.1.1.254/24 and 10.1.2.254/24 loopback interfaces on the routers.
- Internal LAN addresses (192.168.127.0/24) are translated via NAT to communicate through the loopback interfaces. Specifically, PLC#1 at 192.168.127.100 will be translated to 10.1.1.254, and PLC#2 will be translated to 10.1.2.254.
- PLC#1 and PLC#2 use NAT to have their traffic directed through the loopback interface, enabling seamless communication with the server at 176.16.1.254.

By utilizing loopback interfaces and NAT, the architecture ensures that even with identical LAN subnets, VPN connectivity and inter-subnet communication are maintained without the need for additional physical interfaces.


Setup

To configure this setup, you will need:

- Loopback Interface configuration on both routers (see subsequent section)
- NAT configuration to translate the NAT (see subsequent section)
- IPSec tunnels between the VPN server(WAN IP: 100.1.1.1), Router 1 (WAN IP: 100.1.1.254), and Router 2 (WAN IP: 100.1.2.254) using the loopback interfaces as endpoints.

Example: Configuring a Loopback Interface for IPSec Tunnel #1

Virtual interfaces need to be defined before they can be translated.

1. Sign into the device with administrator credentials.
2. Go to **Network Configuration > Network Interfaces > Virtual Interface**.
3. Under Loopback Interface, click  **[Add]**.

The Create Loopback Interface Entry screen appears.

4. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Name	Specify a name. For our example, we will use VPNLoopback.
Status	Enabled
ID	1
IP Address	10.1.1.254
Netmask	24 (255.255.255.0)

5. Click **Apply**.


The loopback interface appears in the list.

Repeat this procedure on the other router to configure a loopback interface for IPSec tunnel #2 with the following differences:

- **IP Address:** 10.1.2.254

Example: Configuring NAT to Translate to the Loopback Interface


For the Virtual Interface to be effective, NAT must be configured to correctly translate packets using the interface. Two rules must be configured on each router: an inbound rule and an outbound rule.

1. Sign into the device with administrator credentials.
2. To configure the inbound rule, go to **NAT**, and then click  **[Add]**.
3. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Description	Optional: Enter your description here
Index	Specify an index (ID) for the route.
Mode	Advance
Protocol	ICMP, TCP, UDP

Option	Value
Incoming Interface (Original Packet)	WAN
Source IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Source Port mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Single
Destination IP (Original Packet)	10.1.1.254
Destination Port Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Outgoing Interface (Translated Packet)	Any
Source IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Single
Destination IP (Translated Packet)	192.168.127.100 This matches the PLC on our LAN.
Destination Port Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any

4. Click **Apply**.

5. To configure the outbound rule, go to **NAT**, and then click  **[Add]**.

6. Configure all of the following:

Option	Value
Status	Enabled
Description	Optional: Enter your description here
Index	Specify an index (ID) for the route.
Mode	Advance
Protocol	ICMP, TCP, UDP
Incoming Interface (Original Packet)	WAN

Option	Value
Source IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Source Port mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Single
Destination IP (Original Packet)	192.168.127.100 This matches the PLC on our LAN.
Destination Port Mapping Type (Original Packet)	Any
Outgoing Interface (Translated Packet)	Any
Source IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any
Destination IP Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Single
Destination IP (Translated Packet)	10.1.1.254
Destination Port Mapping Type (Translated Packet)	Any

7. Click **Apply**.

Repeat this procedure on the other router to configure NAT binding for IPSec Tunnel #2 and corresponding virtual interface, with the following differences:

- Inbound rule:
 - **Destination IP** (Original Packet) : 10.1.2.254
- Outbound rule:
 - **Destination IP** (Translated Packet) : 10.1.2.254

Chapter 6

Security Hardening Guide

Security Hardening Guide

This chapter provides an overview of security strategy, standards, and recommended best practices to improve the security landscape.

The threat landscape is constantly evolving, and no security guide can ever provide 100% protection. This chapter is constantly being expanded, and is not exhaustive.

Security Best Practices

Product Security

This section provides essential information on the installation of your product.

Physical Installation Guidelines

Physical protection of devices is vital to network security.

With physical access to devices, prospective attackers can physically bypass security mechanisms, alter network conditions, or plant additional malicious devices in networks. Follow these tips to help reduce the risk of tampering with networking devices by unauthorized personnel.

- Install switch/router in an access-controlled area. To further protect your device from potential physical attacks, it is important to implement appropriate physical security measures. This may include CCTV surveillance, security guards, locks, and access control systems, among other measures. The specific measures you choose should be based on your environment and the level of risk you face.
- Install a Layer 2 switch within the security perimeter. This perimeter can be established by setting up a firewall at the border, as the switch is not designed to be directly connected to the Internet. Note that the switch should not be classified as zone or boundary equipment. Avoid connecting the device directly to the Internet, as this can leave your network vulnerable to security breaches.
- Follow the Quick Installation Guide included in the package of your device. It contains step-by-step instructions that are easy to follow and will help you set up the device quickly and efficiently.
- Examine and monitor anti-tamper labels applied to the device enclosures. These labels provide a quick and easy way for administrators to determine if the device has been tampered with.

- Deactivate any ports that are not currently in use. Fewer active ports represent fewer avenues of attack. Refer to Network Interfaces for more information.

Account Management Guidelines

Manage user accounts, set passwords, and restrict access to authorized personnel only.

- Assign the appropriate account privileges.

Limit the number of users with admin privileges to only those who need to perform device configuration or modifications. For other users, read-only access is sufficient. Moxa devices supports both local account authentication and remote centralized mechanisms, including RADIUS and TACACS+. This allows for flexible and secure access control options.

- Implement good password practices. Good password practices include:
 - a. Enabling and configuring a Password Policy to ensure your password meets specified requirements.
 - b. Setting the minimum password length to at least eight characters.
 - c. Require passwords to have at least one uppercase and lowercase letter, a digit, and a special character.
 - d. Setting password expiration.
 - e. Updating passwords regularly.
 - f. Never sharing passwords.

Refer to Password Policy for more information about password policies.

Protecting Vulnerable Network Ports

Understand security risks and mitigate them by configuring network ports correctly.

- Changing port numbers for active services, including TCP port numbers for HTTP, HTTPS, Telnet, and SSH.
- Disable any ports that are not in use, as they could pose an unacceptable security risk.
- Use encrypted communication protocols wherever available. Use HTTPS instead of HTTP, SSH instead of Telnet, SFTP instead of TFTP, and SNMPv3 instead of SNMPv1/v2c. Refer to Network Interfaces for more information.

- Generate new SSL certificates and SSH keys for devices prior to using HTTPS or SSH applications. Refer to SSH & SSL for more information.

Maintaining Communication Integrity

Ensure that information sent is accurate, complete, and secure.

Maintaining communication integrity reduces risks risk of data corruption or interception, and associated security breaches, data loss, and other negative effects on networks and their users.

- Use encryption.

Encryption uses mathematical algorithms to convert data into a secret code, making it extremely difficult for people without the correct codes to read or change the data. By using encryption, you can ensure that the data being transmitted is secure and cannot be intercepted by unauthorized users.

- Use digital signatures.

Digital signatures verify the authenticity and integrity of digital documents or messages. Using a digital signature, you can ensure that the message or document came from the expected sender and has not been altered.

- Implement access control.

Access control restricts access to only authorized users to the network and its resources. By implementing access control measures, such as firewalls or access control lists, you can prevent unauthorized access and reduce the risk of data breaches.

Communication Integrity Features

Moxa devices provide support for VPNs and secure versions of protocols to help maintain communication integrity.

VPN (Virtual Private Network)

VPN is a secure network connection allowing users to access a private network. VPNs use encryption and authentication to protect the data in transit, which makes it difficult for anyone to intercept or tamper with the data. VPNs also provide access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network. VPNs are commonly used to securely connect remote workers to a company network securely or to allow secure access to restricted resources over the internet.

Refer to VPN for more information.

HTTPS (Hypertext Transfer Protocol Secure)

HTTPS is a secure version of the regular HTTP protocol for transmitting data over the internet. HTTPS uses TLS (Transport Layer Security) encryption and digital certificates to protect the data in transit from interception, tampering, or eavesdropping.

Refer to Management Interface for more information.

SSH (Secure Shell)

SSH is a secure protocol for remote terminal login and secure file transfers. SSH uses encryption to protect the data in transit, making it difficult for anyone to intercept or tamper with it. SSH also provides authentication and access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network.

Refer to Management Interface for more information.

SFTP (Secure File Transfer Protocol)

SFTP is a secure version of FTP (File Transfer Protocol) that uses encryption to protect the data in transit. SFTP also provides authentication and access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network.

Refer to Management Interface for more information.

SNMP v3 (Simple Network Management Protocol version 3)

SNMP v3 is a secure version of the SNMP protocol used for network management and monitoring. SNMP v3 uses encryption and authentication to protect the data in transit, making it difficult for anyone to intercept or tamper with it. SNMP v3 also provides access control features to ensure only authorized users can access the network.

Refer to SNMP for more information.

Device Access Control Best Practices

Device access control is an essential aspect of network security that helps protect against unauthorized access to network resources.

Unauthorized access can occur through various means, including physical access to network devices, hacking, or social engineering. Without proper access control measures

in place, networks are vulnerable to security breaches, data theft, and other malicious activities.

Device access control is particularly important for organizations that handle sensitive data, such as financial institutions, healthcare providers, and government agencies. By implementing device access control, these organizations can limit access to sensitive information and prevent security breaches. Below are some ways to ensure device access control:

- Use strong passwords. Passwords should be complex and unique for each device. Passwords should also be changed regularly to maintain security. Refer to Password Policy for further information.
- Implement trusted access lists. Trusted access lists are authorized devices or users allowed to access a particular network resource. Trusted access lists can be managed at the device, network, or application levels. Network administrators can use trusted access lists to ensure that only authorized devices or users can access sensitive resources. Refer to Trusted Access for further information.
- Implement an L3 firewall. An L3 firewall, also known as a Layer 3 firewall, is a network security device operating at the OSI model's network layer. L3 firewalls can monitor and filter traffic based on IP addresses, ports, protocols, and other network-level attributes. Using L3 firewalls, network administrators can prevent unauthorized access to the network and block potential security threats. Refer to Firewall for further information.

About Device Integrity and Authenticity

Integrity and authenticity are vital elements of trust within a network.

Device integrity refers to the state of a device being complete, unaltered, and free from any unauthorized changes or modifications.

Authenticity refers to the assurance that the device is genuine and comes from a trusted source.

Both integrity and authenticity are critical aspects of device security. Methods to sustain these aspects include:

- Configuration Backup & Encryption
- Secure Boot

Configuration Backup and Encryption

Configuration backup and encryption protects a device's sensitive data and configuration by creating an encrypted copy storing it securely. In the event of unauthorized device changes, correct configuration information can be quickly and securely restored.

The process involves creating a backup of the device's configuration and then encrypting it using a strong encryption algorithm. The encrypted backup is then stored securely to prevent unauthorized access. This process is particularly important for devices that store sensitive information, such as network equipment, servers, and other critical infrastructure. Encrypting the configuration backup ensures that the data remains protected even if the backup location is compromised.

Secure Boot

Secure Boot is a security mechanism designed to ensure that devices boot using only software that is verified as trusted. The primary function of Secure Boot is to prevent unauthorized software from running during the boot process. It achieves this by verifying the integrity and authenticity of the bootloader and firmware.

A bootloader refers to the initial software that runs when a device is powered on. Its primary role is to load the device's operating system. Firmware is software embedded within the device that manages and controls the device's hardware functions.

Moxa hardware makes use of cryptographic modules embedded in devices to support verification processes. The device's ROM (read-only memory) contains approved bootloaders and associated digital certificates, which are used to verify the integrity of the firmware.

When the device boots, the first thing to run is the bootloader. Secure boot checks the digital signature against the certificate stored in ROM. If the signatures match, the boot process continues. If they do not match, or there is evidence of tampering, the boot process halts to prevent potential security breaches.

Device Resource Management and Monitoring

Moxa devices provide a number of features to help customers manage device resources efficiently and monitor security.

Device Resource Monitoring

Network device resource management is essential for network reliability and security. By monitoring use of network resources, administrators can verify that network guidelines are being followed and devices are operating efficiently and effectively.

Proactive monitoring and management of device resources such as CPU utilization, memory utilization, and network traffic allows administrators to identify potential security breaches early, and help avoid network downtime and disruption. For example, abnormal spikes in network traffic or CPU utilization could be indicative of a malware infection or a denial-of-service attack.

Examples of activities to monitor include:

- Connected ports
- CPU usage
- Memory usage

Refer to Device Summary for more information.

Event Logs

In addition to real-time monitoring and management, Moxa devices provide advanced logging options to help identify security events. Chosen event types can also generate notifications to notify administrators of unusual events where attention is needed, or to feed into larger security monitoring systems.

Moxa devices offer three kinds of logs:

- System Logs, showing details of all system-related event logs
- Firewall logs, showing details of all patterns from layers 3-7, including
 - Trusted Access
 - Malformed Packets
 - DoS Policy
 - Layer 3 – 7 Policy
 - Protocol Filter Policy
 - Anomaly Detection & Protection (ADP)
 - Intrusion Detection/Prevention System (IDS/IPS)

- Session Control
 - VPN logs, showing all VPN-related events

Refer to Event Log for more information about Event Logs.

Refer to Event Notifications for more information about Event Notifications.

Refer to SNMP for more information about SNMP configuration.

Denial of Service (DoS) Protection

In a denial-of-service (DoS) attack, the attacker attempts to overwhelm a target system with a flood of traffic or requests. The deluge of traffic causes the target system to become paralyzed, and also causes disruptions in networks and online services.

Moxa devices can prevent several types of DoS attacks by rejecting requests which ask for a particular network scan, or rejecting too many such requests in a specified period.

Refer to DoS Policy setting for more information.

Session Control

Session control refers to managing communication sessions between network objects, such as IP addresses or ports. The management process involves establishing, maintaining, and terminating sessions to ensure secure and reliable communication between various objects. Session control allows administrators to allocate device resources more efficiently by limiting the number of active sessions, and improving network security by dropping unused sessions.

Refer to Session Control for more information.

Recommended Settings for Services and Features

When prioritizing device security, the first point of assessment is often the network interfaces and services.

By deactivating unneeded interfaces and services, one can reduce potential vulnerabilities and associated security threats. Additionally, activating the appropriate security features enhances early anomaly detection and bolsters the device's defense against cyber attacks.

Common Protocols and Ports

Service Name	Default Port	Default Setting	Security Suggestions
HTTP	TCP 80	Enabled	Disable if possible to avoid leaks from unencrypted traffic.
HTTPS	TCP 443	Enabled	
Telnet	TCP 23	Enabled	Disable if possible to avoid leaks from unencrypted traffic.
SSH	TCP 22	Enabled	
NTP/SNTP	UDP 123	Disabled	Use SNTP to synchronize system time if possible. Enable NTP authentication if possible.
SNMP	UDP 161 UDP 162 TCP 10161 TCP 10162	Disabled	For V1 & V2c, change default community string names, i.e. public & private, to other unique names. For V3, enable SNMP admin account authentication.
Syslog	UDP 514	Disabled	By default, logs are stored in the device, but limited local storage limits the number of saved logs, resulting in missed logs for critical incidence. Sending logs to an external log server can mitigate limitation, decreasing the chance of missing critical logs.
RADIUS	UDP 1812	Disabled	Enabling RADIUS authentication can help administrators manage password changes more efficiently.
Moxa Services	TCP 443 UDP 40404	Enabled	These 2 ports are only used by the Moxa management software. Disable it if you don't use Moxa management software.

Security-Related Functions

Function	Default Setting	Security Suggestions
Firewall	Deny All	Without precise firewall rules configuration, "Allow All" has a higher change to allow unwanted packets going into the protected network, so we highly suggest using "Deny All" instead of "Allow All". Refer to Scenario: Airport Integrated Solutions to learn more about Allow Lists.
Password Policy	Disable	Enable password policy to comply enterprise security policies.

Function	Default Setting	Security Suggestions
Login policy	Disable	Enable a login policy to heighten resistance against brute force attacks and terminating any inactive login sessions.
Malformed Packets Filtering	Disable	The "Malformed Packets Filtering" feature logs events at a user-defined severity level whenever the system discards malformed packets. Depending on the protocols active in your network, you can choose to enable this feature or leave it disabled.
DoS Policy	None	Select a DoS policy according to your network traffic to increase network robustness.
Session control	None	Configure session control policies appropriate for your traffic to improve network reliability.
802.1X over ports	Disable	Enable 802.1X port authentication to block unauthorized LAN access.
Trusted Access	Enabled	By default, the device permits all connections from the LAN attempting to access it. For enhanced security, block all LAN connections attempting to access the device. Then, use a trusted IP list to specify which trusted IPs are allowed access to the device.

Common Threats and Countermeasures

These are examples of common known threats, and suggestions for mitigation.

Incident Category	Detailed Description	Mitigation Suggestions
Tampering & Information Disclosure	An attacker can read or modify data transmitted over HTTP data flow.	Disable HTTP, and replace HTTP transmission with HTTPS.
Tampering & Information Disclosure	An attacker can read or modify data transmitted over Telnet data flow.	Disable Telnet, and replace HTTP transmission by SSH.
Information Disclosure	Data flowing across TFTP may be sniffed by an attacker.	Use SFTP instead of FTP.
Denial of Service	SNMP Server crashes, halts, stops or runs slowly by excessive quires.	Enable rate limit to stop excessive SNMP requests.
Denial of Service	RADIUS Server crashes, halts, stops or runs slowly by excessive quires.	Enable rate limit to stop excessive RADIUS requests.

Incident Category	Detailed Description	Mitigation Suggestions
Repudiation	Devices fail to synchronize a system time with a trusted NTP/SNTP server.	Enable NTP authentication to verify a connection with the trusted NTP/SNTP server.

Refer to:

- [User Interface](#)
- [DoS Policy](#)
- [Time](#)

Recommended Operational Roles and Duties

Adhering to the principle of least privilege reduces risks by ensuring users operate at the minimum privilege required to complete their tasks.

Instead of individual allocation, privilege levels should be tied to specific job functions. For optimized device security, we recommend three distinct privilege levels, each tailored for different management needs:

Administrator

Designated for system management, this privilege level permits:

- Creation and deletion of configuration objects, files, and user accounts.
- Monitoring system status and resources.
- Modifying parameter values.
- Reviewing stored data within the device.

Administrator Responsibilities:

- Reset and periodically change the default administrator password.
- Ensure password complexity aligns with enterprise security policies.
- Manage and authorize individuals with appropriate access privileges.
- Disable non-essential interfaces or network services.
- Enable secure communication protocols to guard against data breaches.
- Regularly update firmware to address potential vulnerabilities.

Supervisor

Tailored for network experts or operators, this privilege grants:

- Monitoring of system status and resources.
- Adjusting values in configuration objects or files.
- Access to review data stored in the device.

Supervisor Responsibilities:

- Continuously monitor system status and resources to maintain device functionality.
- Routinely verify the integrity of device configuration objects and files.
- Manage trusted devices through IP and MAC allowlisting.
- Oversee and respond to system alerts to preempt device failures and security threats.

Auditor

Reserved for audit-focused personnel, this level allows:

- Monitoring of system status and resources.
- Reviewing data stored within the device.

Auditor Responsibilities:

- Regularly inspect logs to identify and assess incidents and their associated risks.

Moxa devices provide three user privilege categories: admin, supervisor, and user. We advise aligning the admin role for administrator users, the supervisor role for supervisor users, and the user role for auditor users.

Refer to:

- User Accounts

Recommended Patching and Backup Practices

Moxa's guidance on ensuring device security through regular firmware upgrades and configuration backups.

Firmware Upgrade

Moxa continuously releases firmware throughout the product lifecycle to improve features and rectify identified issues. Upon discovering a vulnerability, our approach aligns with the Moxa Product Security Incident Response Team (PSIRT) guidelines, ensuring swift and appropriate action.

Maintaining current firmware on your network devices is vital to maintain security. Using outdated firmware can expose the device to potential threats. We strongly advise periodic firmware updates. We consistently release the latest firmware and software on our official website, along with respective release notes. Check for these updates regularly.

Configuration Backup

For network operators and system administrators, it is essential to regularly back up device configurations. This precaution allows for quick recovery in unforeseen scenarios, such as cyber attacks.

Refer to:

- Firmware Upgrade
- Configuration Backup and Restore

Recommendations for Vulnerability Management

As the adoption of the Industrial IoT (IIoT) continues to grow rapidly, security becomes an increasingly high priority.

The Moxa Product Security Incidence Response Team (PSIRT) takes a proactive approach to protect our products from security vulnerabilities and help our customers better manage security risks.

To report vulnerabilities for Moxa products, please submit your findings on the following web page: <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory/report-a-vulnerability>.

For the most up-to-date Moxa security information, please visit our security advisory page: <https://www.moxa.com/en/support/product-support/security-advisory>

Recommendations for Decommissioning

To avoid any sensitive information such as account passwords or network configurations from disclosure, always delete all imported certificates and reset devices to factory default before you decommission your devices.

Using Security Features

Introduction to IPS

IPS (Intrusion Prevention System) is a network security technology used to detect and prevent potential threats in a network.

IPS analyzes the network traffic and identifies potential attacks, including viruses, worms, malware, and unauthorized access. Once an IPS detects a threat, it takes immediate action to block the attack and protect the security of the network and system. IPS uses signature-based and behavior analysis to identify threats and employs various techniques to protect systems, such as blocking IP addresses and protocols. It is an important component of network security architecture designed to enhance the security of networks and systems, prevent unauthorized access, and protect against data breaches.

What is the difference between IDS and IPS?

IDS (Intrusion Detection System) and IPS are network security systems that help protect against security threats and vulnerabilities.

An IDS monitors network traffic and identifies potential security threats and attacks. When it detects a security threat, it saves logs and generates an alert, which is sent to the security team for further analysis and action. An IDS is a passive security system that only monitors network traffic and does not take any action to prevent or stop an attack.

On the other hand, an IPS monitors network traffic like an IDS, but also takes active measures to prevent security threats and attacks. Additionally, an IPS can block, quarantine, or even terminate network traffic or connections deemed suspicious or malicious. IPS systems often use a set of predefined rules or policies to identify and respond to security threats in real-time.

The main difference between IDS and IPS is that IDS only detects and notifies of potential security threats, while IPS takes action to prevent and stop the security threat.

IDS is generally considered a more passive security system, whereas IPS is more proactive and can take immediate action to mitigate security risks.

IPS Applications

IPS is typically used to actively prevent and block unauthorized access or malicious activities on your network.

IPS is typically used when you want to actively prevent and block unauthorized access or malicious activities on your network. It's a proactive security solution that acts in real-time to prevent potential security threats from entering or leaving your network.

Here are some common applications of IPS:

1. **Protecting critical assets:** IPS can protect mission-critical assets or systems, such as PLCs, factory automation, ICS (Industrial Control System), from external and internal security threats.
2. **Resisting zero-day attacks:** IPS can help you detect and block unknown or zero-day attacks that have not yet been identified by traditional anti-virus or intrusion detection systems.
3. **Real-time threat detection:** IPS systems can provide real-time threat detection and prevention, reducing the risk of data breaches and other security incidents.
4. **Virtual patching:** Even devices with outdated OS can receive up-to-date protection without regular security updates and patches.

In summary, IPS should be used when you want to actively prevent and block security threats in real-time and protect critical assets or comply with specific regulations or standards.

IPS Limitations

The most notable limitation of IPS is that it relies on updated patterns—updated definitions and countermeasures of known threats—to correctly detect and act on threats. To address this issue, Moxa provides regular updates in the form of a security package.

Example: Updating the Network Security Package via the Web GUI

Download the latest Network Security Package from the Moxa and install via the Web GUI.

Before you begin: Make sure you have purchased an activated an IPS license.

This task uses the Moxa EDR-G9010 series as an example product. Replace this product with your product for each step.

1. From the Moxa support website, navigate to **Resources**→**Software Packages**→**Network Security Package for EDR-G9010 Series**

The Moxa support website is located at <https://www.moxa.com/en/support>.

2. Download the latest version of the Network Security Package to your computer.
3. Open the router's web interface and navigate to **System**→**System Management**→**Software Package Management**→**Network Security Package**.
4. Click **Source**, and then choose **Local**.
5. Click **Select Files**, and then choose a file from your local file system.
6. Click **Upgrade** to start the upgrade process.

The upgrade process will begin, and the result appears at the bottom of the interface.

What to do next:

Confirm that the Network Security Package has been updated by checking the version information from the Package Information Screen. On the web interface, go to **Firewall**→**Advanced Protection**→**Information**→**Package Information**, and check the version listed.

Example: Updating the Network Security Package via MXsecurity

Download the latest Network Security Package from the Moxa website and install with the MXsecurity web console.

Before you begin: Make sure you have purchased an activated an IPS license.

This task uses the Moxa EDR-G9010 series as an example product. Replace this product with your product for each step.

1. From the Moxa support website, navigate to **Resources**→**Software Packages**→**Network Security Package for EDR-G9010 Series**

The Moxa support website is located at <https://www.moxa.com/en/support>.

2. Download the latest version of the Network Security Package to your computer.

3. From the MXsecurity web console, go to **Device Deployment**→**Software Packages**→**Network Security Packages**.
4. Select the secure routers to update, and then click **Upgrade**.

Results: The upgrade process will begin on the selected routers, with the result displayed within seconds.

What to do next:

Confirm that the Network Security Package has been updated by checking the version information from the Package Information Screen. On the MXsecurity web console, go to **Device Deployment**→**Software Packages**, and check the version listed.

Example: Configuring IPS Rules via MXsecurity

Enable IPS rules and observe the generated event from the MXsecurity, the centralized cybersecurity visualization platform.

Before you begin: Make sure you have:

- a configured MXsecurity server
- an active IPS license that supports MXsecurity
- at least one Network Security Package uploaded. See Example: Updating the Network Security Package via MXsecurity for upload steps.

1. From the MXsecurity web console, go to **Management**→**Policy Profile**.
2. Click *[Add]*, and then configure:
 - **Profile Name**
 - **Description** (optional)

3. Select **IPS**, and then choose one of the **Package Versions** from the list.
4. Enable one or more IPS rules, then click **Apply**.

You can choose **Select All** to enable all protection.

Result: Your new policy profile is visible in the **Policy Profile** table.

5. To apply the profile, go to **Deployment**→**Policy Profile**.
6. Select the IPS profile, and then click **Apply**.

Results:

If an IPS event is triggered, you can go to **Logging**→**Firewall**→**IPS** to examine the events.

Example: Configuring IPS rules via WebGUI

Enable and configure IPS rules from device web interfaces.

Before you begin: Make sure you have:

- an active IPS license that supports device-based IPS
- 1. In the device UI, go to **Firewall**→**Advanced Protection**→**IPS**.
- 2. Identify rules to configure:

Choose from:

- Choose rules from the list
 - Filter rules by clicking [*Filter*]
 - Type search terms in the search box
3. Edit or enable rules by clicking [*Edit*], then setting **Status** to **Enabled**.

You can toggle multiple rules by selecting them, and then clicking →**Quick Settings**, **and then setting Status to Enabled**.

Results: Selected rules will now be enabled.

What to do next: You can check the event log to verify to see actions taken by rules by going to **Diagnostics**→**Event Logs and Notifications**→**Event Log**→**Firewall Log**.

Introduction to Firewalls

A firewall is a network security device that monitors and controls incoming and outgoing network traffic based on predetermined security rules.

Its primary function is to create a barrier between a private internal network and the public internet, allowing only authorized traffic to pass through and blocking unauthorized access attempts. They use various techniques to filter network traffic, including packet filtering, stateful inspection, and application filtering. Firewalls are an essential component of network security and are used by individuals, small businesses, and large enterprises to protect their networks from various types of cyber threats, such as viruses, malware, hackers, and other malicious attacks.

Stateful vs. Stateless firewalls

Firewalls can be categorized as either stateful or stateless.

Stateless firewalls, also known as packet filtering firewalls, examine individual packets of data and enforce rules based on information in the packet header, such as source and destination IP addresses or port numbers. Stateless firewalls do not keep track of the state of connections and cannot distinguish between packets belonging to different connections.

Stateful firewalls, on the other hand, keep track of the state of connections and use this information to enforce rules. They can distinguish between packets belonging to different connections and apply more complex security policies. Stateful firewalls maintain a state table that tracks information such as source and destination IP addresses, port numbers, and connection status.

Overall, stateful firewalls offer more advanced security features and are generally more effective at protecting networks from threats. However, they also require more resources and may be more complex to configure and manage. Stateless firewalls are simpler and more lightweight, but may not provide as much protection against advanced threats.

Categories of Firewall

- Policy (L2,L3~L7) : A policy in firewall function is a set of rules and criteria that are used to determine how traffic is allowed or denied on a network. Firewall policies define the actions that the firewall should take when specific traffic matches the defined criteria.
- Malformed packet: The Malformed Packets function enables the device to record event logs with a user-specified severity whenever malformed packets are dropped by the system.
- Session control: Session control in a firewall is the process of tracking and controlling the flow of network traffic between two endpoints in a network session. Session control to help users protect backend hosts or services and avoid system abnormalities.
- DoS(Denial of Service) policy: The Industrial Secure Router provides 9 different DoS functions for detecting or defining abnormal packet formats or traffic flows. The Industrial Secure Router will drop packets when it either detects an abnormal packet format or identifies unusual traffic conditions.

- Protocol filter policy: The Industrial Secure Router supports industrial protocol filtering, allowing users to inspect network traffic based on specific protocols to detect anomalies and protect your network.

When to Use Firewalls

Firewalls are a fundamental component of network security and are used to protect networks from unauthorized access and cyber threats. It is a static system that filters traffic based on predefined rules, such as source/destination MAC, IP address or port.

1. Prevent unauthorized access to critical assets: Firewalls are used to prevent unauthorized access to critical assets, such as a controller of a system, central monitor system.
2. Safeguarding sensitive data: Firewalls are used to safeguard sensitive data such as financial information, healthcare records, and production data.
3. Complying with regulations: Many industries are subject to regulations that require the use of firewalls to protect sensitive data.

In summary, firewalls are used to control traffic based on predefined rules and focus on access control. Firewalls are often used in combination with other network security techniques, like IPS (Intrusion Prevention System) to provide comprehensive protection against cyber threats.

Scenario: Airport Integrated Solutions

A network system provider is configuring a network for an airport.

Airports rely on intricate network systems to enhance efficiency, elevate safety measures, promote environmental sustainability, and reduce operational expenses.

Sub-Systems in an Airport Network:

A airport network system normally contains several sub-systems to facilitate transportation, such as:

- **Air Traffic Management System (ATMS):** Orchestrates the safe and efficient movement of aircraft.
- **Airport Lighting Control and Monitoring System (ALCMS):** Manages lighting information for approaches, runways, and taxiways.

- **Apron Docking Guide Systems:** Aids aircraft in safe and precise docking at the airport.
- **Apron Management System:** Supervises the activities on the airport apron area, ensuring smooth operations.

Interoperability and Security

For airports to function seamlessly, these sub-systems must intercommunicate while maintaining security against potential threats. The network should facilitate data sharing for regular flight operations while safeguarding critical systems against intrusions.

Moxa's Solution

Moxa's secure routers bolster this integration through policy-based firewalls. These policies, composed of specific rules, selectively permit or deny traffic among subsystems. For instance, designers can authorize control signals from ATMS to ALCMS, while excluding potentially disruptive traffic from other parts of the airport.

Allowlist Firewall Configuration

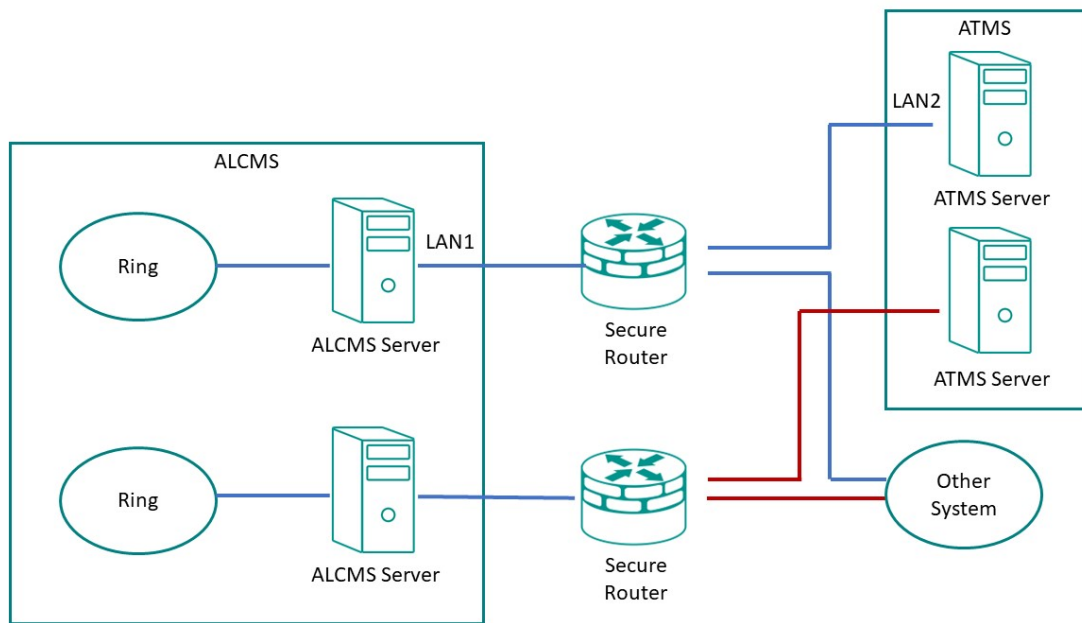
An allowlist is a network configuration that blocks all traffic except those specifically allowed.

Consider a scenario where the network designer employs dual networks for added redundancy. The firewall's rules can be fine-tuned to:

- Allow the ATMS server to communicate with the ALCMS.
- Reject all unrelated traffic and connections.

To achieve this, set up one or more port filters to allow favorable traffic from recognized devices or ports. Then, set up a "deny all" rule to block any unspecified traffic, allowing the systems coexist securely on a shared network.

Integrating subsystems while preserving security and redundancy requires meticulous design and strategic solutions. With the right tools and approaches, airports can achieve high levels of operational efficiency and safety.



Example: Allowing ATMS-ALCMS traffic

Create port filtering rules to allow traffic between the ATMS and ALCMS.

This procedure must be used in tandem with a correctly configured "deny all" policy to correctly implement an allowlist.

Before you begin: Make sure that network interfaces have already been configured with static IP addresses.

Note

This example of an allow list relies on fixed IP addresses. Ensure your network is configured accordingly. If the identified characteristics change, the settings will have to be updated.

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**, and then click **[Add]**.

Result: The **Layer 3-7 Policy** creation panel appears.

2. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Action	Allow
Filter Mode	IP and Port Filtering

Item	Value
Source IP Address	LAN2 Refers to the ATMS server
Destination IP Address	LAN1 Refers to the ALCMS server.

Tutorial Info: In this example, these settings identify the "allowed traffic" by IP address. This requires the IP address to be constant. When configuring in a production environment, make sure the characteristics you choose for your filter clearly distinguish trusted and untrusted network objects, such as IP address, protocol and port, or network interface.

Note

Layer 3-7 Policy rules represent a stateful firewall. This means that once the Source initiates traffic with Destination, two-way traffic will be allowed through the firewall because the firewall will remember the "state" of the connection. However, if there is a possibility that either Source or Destination may initiate the connection, it may be best to create separate "mirrored" rules to allow connections in both directions. Refer to Stateful vs. Stateless firewalls for more information.

3. Click **Apply**.

What to do next: Add a policy rule to deny all other traffic to and from the ATMS and ALCMS. See Example: Configuring Blocked Traffic (Air)


Example: Configuring Blocked Traffic (Air)

Once you have specified "allowed" traffic, block all other traffic so that the ATMS and ALCMS systems will be effectively isolated from all other devices.

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**, and then click  **[Add]**.

Result: The **Layer 3-7 Policy** creation panel appears.

2. In the **Action** field, select **Deny**.
3. In the **Filter Mode** field, select **IP and Port Filtering**.
4. Click **Apply**.
5. Make sure that the "deny all" rule is the last rule on the list, otherwise this rule may override the allow rules.

To reorder rules, click  **[Reorder Priorities]**

Results: Traffic between the ATMS and ALCMS systems will be permitted, but all other traffic to and from these systems will be blocked, effectively isolating these systems from other devices on the network. This helps make sure that even if other systems on the network are compromised, no traffic from these systems will reach the ATMS and ALCMS systems, effectively isolating them from this vector of attack.

What to do next:

Tip: Instead of configuring a "deny all" rule, you can configure a policy from **Global Policy Settings** to deny all traffic. To apply the policy:

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**
2. Specify **Status** as **Enabled**.
3. Specify **Default Action** as **Deny All**.
4. Click **Apply**.

Specific rules override generalized policies, effectively making the policy the last rule on the list.

Scenario: Railway Integrated Solutions

Short Description: A network system provider is configuring a network for a railway operator.

Understanding Railway Network Topology

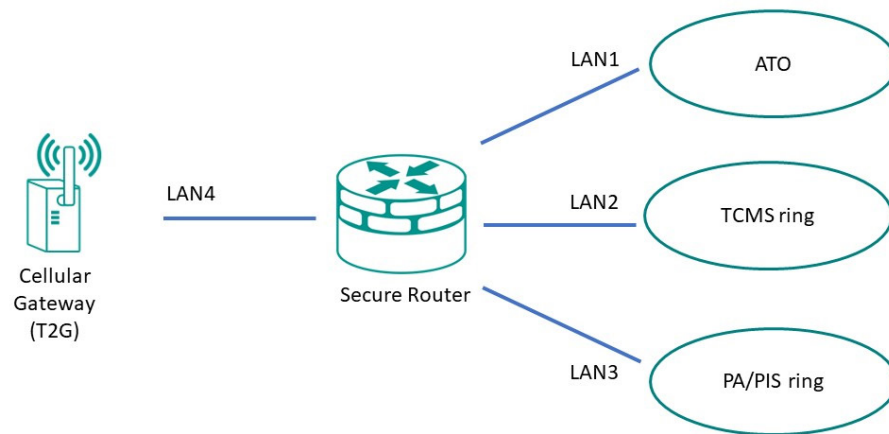
A typical railway train network comprises multiple sub-systems working in tandem to ensure smooth operations. These sub-systems communicate crucial information, such as train speed, departure/arrival times, door status, climate control, lighting, and station updates to passengers.

Moxa's secure routers offer firewall functionality that allows seamless integration of these systems. By implementing policy-based firewall rules, these routers can permit authorized traffic and block unauthorized exchanges between the different sub-systems.

For instance, the train operating system might consist of various components:

- T2G system (usually a cellular gateway)
- ATO (Automatic Train Operation) system
- TCMS (Train Control and Management System) ring
- PA (Public Announcement system)/PIS (Public Information System) ring

- Control units for each of these systems



As an example scenario: a network designer might want configure the network such that the TCMS is the gatekeeper for all signals to the ATO, and prevent the ATO from talking to any other node on the network. We can achieve this kind of network isolation with an allowlist.

Allowlist Firewall Configuration

An allowlist is a network configuration that blocks all traffic except those specifically allowed.

To apply our example from above, the firewall's rules can be fine-tuned to:

- Allow the TCMS to access the ATO, PA/PIS, and Cellular Gateway.
- Allow the Cellular Gateway to access the TCMS and PA/PIS system.
- Reject all unrelated traffic and connections.

This configuration effectively isolates the ATO from the Cellular Gateway and PA/PIS.

To implement this configuration, set up one or more port filters to allow favorable traffic from recognized devices or ports. Then, set up a "deny all" rule to block any unspecified traffic, allowing the systems coexist securely on a shared network.


Integrating subsystems while preserving security and redundancy requires meticulous design and strategic solutions. With the right tools and approaches, operators can achieve high levels of operational efficiency and safety.

Example: Allowing TCMS traffic

Create port filtering rules to allow the TCMS to act as a gatekeeper for other devices on the network.

This procedure must be used in tandem with a correctly configured "deny all" policy to correctly implement an allowlist.

Before you begin: Make sure that network interfaces have already been configured with static IP addresses.

 **Note**

This example of an allow list relies on fixed IP addresses. Ensure your network is configured accordingly. If the identified characteristics change, the settings will have to be updated.

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**, and then click  **[Add]**.

Result: The **Layer 3-7 Policy** creation panel appears.

2. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Action	Allow
Filter Mode	IP and Port Filtering
Source IP Address	LAN2 LAN2 should represent the IP address of the TCMS.
Destination IP Address	LAN1 LAN1 should represent the IP address of the ATO.

Tutorial Info: In this example, these settings identify the "allowed traffic" by IP address. This requires the IP address to be constant. When configuring in a production environment, make sure the characteristics you choose for your filter clearly distinguish trusted and untrusted network objects, such as IP address, protocol and port, or network interface.

Note

Layer 3-7 Policy rules represent a stateful firewall. This means that once the Source initiates traffic with Destination, two-way traffic will be allowed through the firewall because the firewall will remember the "state" of the connection. However, if there is a possibility that either Source or Destination may initiate the connection, it may be best to create separate "mirrored" rules to allow connections in both directions. Refer to Stateful vs. Stateless firewalls for more information.

Tutorial Info: In this case, we will specifically create a bidirectional or "mirrored" rule for TCMS to Cellular Gateway traffic.

3. Create two more **Allow** rules.

Rule Purpose	Source IP	Destination IP
Allow TCMS to PA/PIS Traffic	LAN2	LAN3
Allow TCMS to Cellular Gateway Traffic	LAN2	LAN4

4. Click **Apply**.

Results: Rules have been created that will allow the TCMS to access all network nodes, allowing the TCMS to serve as a gatekeeper. Next, create a rule that will allow the Cellular Gateway to access the TCMS and PA/PIS. Refer to Example: Allowing the T2G to access TCMS and PA/PIS for more information.

Example: Allowing the T2G to access TCMS and PA/PIS

Create port filtering rules to allow traffic from the Cellular Gateway to the TCMS and PA/PIS.

Before you begin: Make sure that network interfaces have already been configured with static IP addresses.

Note

This example of an allow list relies on fixed IP addresses. Ensure your network is configured accordingly. If the identified characteristics change, the settings will have to be updated.

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**, and then click  **[Add]**.

Result: The **Layer 3-7 Policy** creation panel appears.

2. Specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Action	Allow
Filter Mode	IP and Port Filtering
Source IP Address	LAN4 LAN4 should represent the IP address of the Cellular Gateway.
Destination IP Address	LAN2 LAN2 should represent the IP address of the TCMS.

Tutorial Info: In this example, these settings identify the "allowed traffic" by IP address. This requires the IP address to be constant. When configuring in a production environment, make sure the characteristics you choose for your filter clearly distinguish trusted and untrusted network objects, such as IP address, protocol and port, or network interface.

Note

Layer 3-7 Policy rules represent a stateful firewall. This means that once the Source initiates traffic with Destination, two-way traffic will be allowed through the firewall because the firewall will remember the "state" of the connection. However, if there is a possibility that either Source or Destination may initiate the connection, it may be best to create separate "mirrored" rules to allow connections in both directions. Refer to Stateful vs. Stateless firewalls for more information.

3. To allow the Cellular Gateway to access the PA/PIS, specify all of the following:

Item	Value
Action	Allow
Filter Mode	IP and Port Filtering
Source IP Address	LAN4 LAN4 should represent the IP address of the Cellular Gateway.
Destination IP Address	LAN3 LAN3 should represent the IP address of the PA/PIS.

4. Click **Apply**.

Results: Rules have been created that will allow the Cellular Gateway to access the TCMS and PA/PIS.

What to do next: Add a policy rule to block all other traffic. Refer to Example: Configuring Blocked Traffic (Rail) for more information.

Example: Configuring Blocked Traffic (Rail)

Once you have specified "allowed" traffic, block all other traffic so that the ATO will be effectively isolated from all other devices, relying on the TCMS as a gatekeeper.

1. Go to **Firewall** → **Layer 3-7 Policy**, and then click



[Add].

Result: The **Layer 3-7 Policy** creation panel appears.

2. In the **Action** field, select **Deny**.
3. In the **Filter Mode** field, select **IP and Port Filtering**.
4. Click **Apply**.
5. Make sure that the "deny all" rule is the last rule on the list, otherwise this rule may override the allow rules.

To reorder rules, click



[Reorder Priorities]

Results: The TCMS will be able to access all network devices, and the Cellular Gateway will be able to access the TCMS and PA/PIS, but all other traffic will be blocked, effectively isolating these systems from other devices on the network. This helps make sure that even if other systems on the network are compromised, no traffic from these systems will reach the specified systems, effectively isolating them from this vector of attack.

Tip

Instead of configuring a "deny all" rule, you can configure a policy from Global Policy Settings to deny all traffic. To apply the policy,

1. Go to Firewall →Layer 3-7 Policy
2. Specify Status as Enabled.
3. Specify Default Action as Deny All.
4. Click Apply.

Specific rules override generalized policies, effectively making the policy the last rule on the list.

Security Standards and Concepts

Introduction to Defense in Depth

The Defense-in-Depth strategy is used to protect systems from various types of attacks by using multiple independent defense mechanisms.

This involves incorporating multiple layers of security to protect the product against potential attacks and vulnerabilities at various stages of its design, development, and use.

It is crucial to understand that no single protection can guarantee complete security. That's why the Defense-in-Depth approach makes it difficult for attackers to leverage one weakness to attack the product or network as a whole. This approach requires attackers to overcome multiple obstacles undetected, increasing the difficulty level. By leveraging multiple security features and layers of protection in a product, vulnerabilities in any one layer can be mitigated.

AAA

About AAA - Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting

Authentication, **A**uthorization, and **A**ccounting (AAA) is a user-based access control paradigm.

AAA coexists with other security practices. While product security and network security focus on device or process security, AAA focuses on users.

AAA comprises a set of functions for an administrator to determine which users can access a network device, which services are available to authorized users, and collect information about user activities for audits or charging purposes if required. When implemented well, AAA can provide an extra layer of security across different aspects.

Authentication

Authentication provides a method of identifying a user before access to the network device is granted, typically by having the user enter a valid username and password and/or provide a physical token or digital certificate. Additional policies such as a password complexity check or login failure lockout can also increase access security.

Authorization

After authentication is successful, a user can be authorized to use specific resources on the device or perform specific operations. For instance, a normal user with limited permissions may only view the device's system settings, whereas an administrator would have full control to view or edit all system settings.

Accounting

Accounting keeps track of user activities on the device. It monitors the resources a user consumes during network access. This can include the amount of data sent and received through an Ethernet port or the number of user login failures.

About Authentication Types

Handle authentication with the local device exclusively, or with a remote server using local accounts only as a fallback.

It is important to choose the right authentication method, or combination of authentication methods for your network environment and use case. Moxa devices offer the following authentication options.

Local Authentication

Local authentication uses the accounts and settings stored on the local network device to identify users (authentication), determine which services they can use (authorization), and track basic user activities such as amount of data transferred or number of login failures (accounting).

Remote Authentication

Remote authentication uses accounts configured on a RADIUS server - allowing AAA to be configured from a single, centralized location. However, it is important to note that local authentication is retained as a fallback mechanism to ensure the device can be configured if the RADIUS server becomes inaccessible. Additionally, Moxa products

support backup RADIUS servers if the primary becomes inaccessible. Due consideration should be given to the configuration and maintenance of backup servers for redundancy.

Local vs. Remote Authentication Feature Comparison

Features	Local	Remote
Configuration location	Local device	Remote RADIUS server, local as fallback
Number of accounts	Few	Many
Password security requirements	Limited	Many
Allowed services*	Specified locally	Determined by server
Authority types	Admin, User, Supervisor	Admin, User
User feedback on failed login	Custom prompt	Server-defined
Setup effort	Low	High

*Allowed services are usually dependent on Authority types.

Example: Creating a Local User

Local accounts are authenticated and managed by the local device, and function even when remote RADIUS servers are unavailable.

Before you begin: Make sure you have an account with **Admin** authority.

In this example, create a local user with simple **User** level authority to fill the Authentication of the AAA tripod. Once the user has been created, add additional access controls.

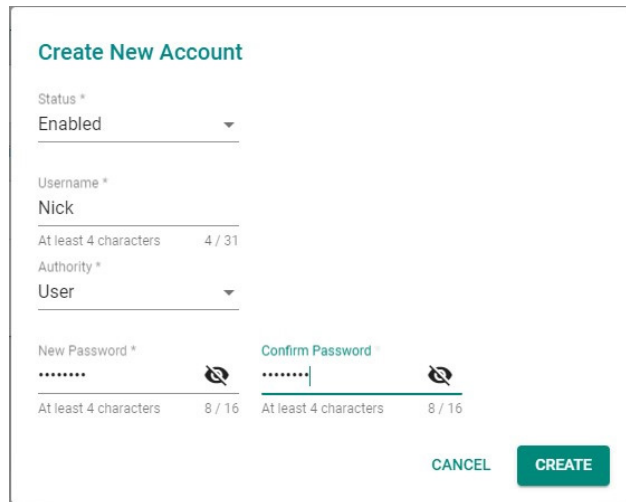
1. Using an account with **Admin** authority, log in to the network device.
2. Go to **System**→**Account Management**→**User Accounts**, and then click the plus icon.

Result: The **Create New Account** panel appears.

3. Set **Status** to **Enabled**.
4. In the **Username** field, type Nick.
5. Set **Authority** as **User**.

6. In the **New Password** field, type 1qaz!@#\$, and then type again to confirm.
7. Click **Create**.

Results: By creating the user **Nick**, Authorization and Accounting details can now be configured.



The screenshot shows a 'Create New Account' form with the following fields and values:

- Status *: Enabled
- Username *: Nick (4 / 31 characters)
- Authority *: User
- New Password *: 8 / 16 characters
- Confirm Password *: 8 / 16 characters

Buttons: CANCEL, CREATE

What to do next: Now that a user account has been created, add account controls. Account controls allow setting a warning for incorrect passwords, account lockouts, and automatic logout. For details, see Example: Configuring Account Controls for Local Users.

Example: Configuring Account Controls for Local Users

Login Failure Account Lockout and Auto Logout increase the security of local accounts.

Enabling additional account controls can increase resistance to brute-force attacks as well as enable troubleshooting. This example demonstrates how to set account lockouts after failed login attempts and manage idle users.

1. Using an account with **Admin** authority, log in to the network device.
2. Go to **Security**→**Device Security**→**Login Policy**.

Result: The **Login Policy** panel appears.

3. In the **Login Authentication Failure Message** field, type Warning! The account will be temporarily locked if there are too many consecutive login failures.
4. Set **Login Failure Account Lockout** to **Enabled**.
5. In the **Login Failure Retry Threshold** field, type 3.

This is the number of failed attempts before the user account will be temporarily blocked.

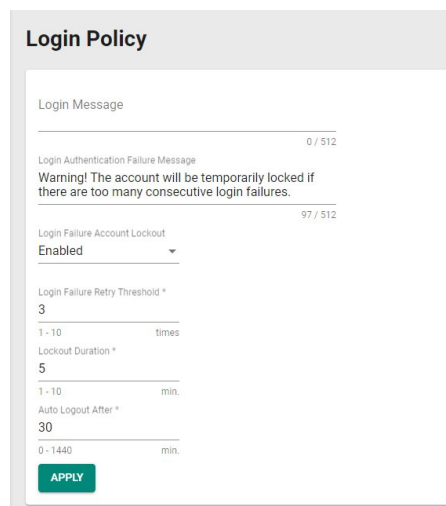
Temporary bans can help prevent password guessing and brute force attacks by preventing attackers from rapidly guessing many passwords.

6. In the **Lockout Duration** field, type 5.

This specifies the number of minutes the account will be locked.

7. In the **Auto Lockout After** field, type 30.

This is the amount of time in minutes before inactive accounts automatically log out.



The screenshot shows a configuration window titled "Login Policy". It contains several fields for setting login security parameters:

- Login Message:** A text input field with a character count of 0 / 512.
- Login Authentication Failure Message:** A text input field containing the warning: "Warning! The account will be temporarily locked if there are too many consecutive login failures." with a character count of 97 / 512.
- Login Failure Account Lockout:** A dropdown menu currently set to "Enabled".
- Login Failure Retry Threshold *:** A numeric input field set to "3", with a range of 1 - 10 and the unit "times".
- Lockout Duration *:** A numeric input field set to "5", with a range of 1 - 10 and the unit "min".
- Auto Logout After *:** A numeric input field set to "30", with a range of 0 - 1440 and the unit "min".

An "APPLY" button is located at the bottom of the configuration area.

Results: This configuration:

- Displays a warning message on failed login attempts, enabling troubleshooting
- Blocks accounts for five minutes after three unsuccessful login attempts, limiting the effectiveness of credential guessing
- Automatically logs out inactive user accounts after thirty minutes, reducing risks of unauthorized access through idle consoles

What to do next: Optionally, configure allowed access protocols. For details, see User Interface.

Example: Configuring a Remote RADIUS Server

In this example, the RADIUS server handles all Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting.

Before you begin:

- Make sure you have a working RADIUS server and corresponding configuration information. In our example, we use a server that has the following settings:
 - **PAP** authentication protocol
 - An address of 192.168.127.1
 - UDP port 1812
 - A preconfigured shared key

Remote Authentication Dial-In User Service (RADIUS) servers may make it easier to manage large numbers of users from a central location.

1. Using an account with **Admin** authority, log in to the network device.
2. Go to **Security**→**Authentication**→**Login Authentication**, and then set **Authentication Protocol** to **RADIUS, Local**.

Tutorial Info: This setting will use the remote RADIUS server as the primary authentication source, and use local authentication as a fallback if the RADIUS server is unavailable.

 **Note**

Enabling RADIUS authentication will not remove local accounts. Make sure local accounts have a strong, unique password. Local accounts are still required both for RADIUS server configuration as well as for local fallback if the RADIUS server is not reachable. For details, see Example: Creating a Local User.

3. Go to **Security**→**Authentication**→**RADIUS**.

Result: The **RADIUS Server** will appear.

4. Configure all of the following:

Field	Setting
Authentication Type	PAP
Server Address 1	192.168.127.1
UDP Port	1812
Shared Key	Enter your Shared Key here.

Tutorial Info: These configuration options are provided as an example only, and will need to match your network environment.

5. Click **Apply**.

Results:

By configuring remote authentication, the network device will redirect user login requests to the RADIUS server. When logging in with remote user Peter, the RADIUS server will process the authentication request and determine whether to grant access to the device. If Peter does not match RADIUS or Local information, access will be denied.

In situations where the RADIUS server is not reachable or unavailable, users such as Nick (created in Example: Creating a Local User or other existing local users can still access the network device using their local passwords.


Note

If RADIUS is enabled, but unreachable, network-based logins (HTTP/HTTPS/Telnet/SSH) will not be possible, and users will be limited to logins through the console port only.


RADIUS Server

Authentication Type *
PAP

Server Address 1 0 / 63 UDP Port 1812
1 - 65535

Shared Key 0 / 60 

Server Address 2 0 / 63 UDP Port 1812
1 - 65535

Shared Key 0 / 60 

APPLY

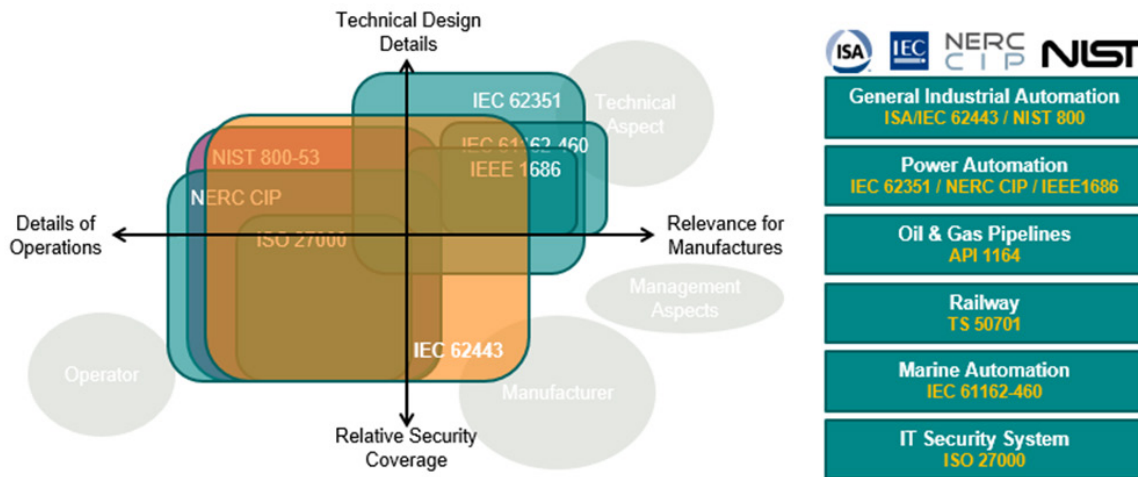
ISA/IEC 62443 Standards and Architecture

Security Reference Standards

In the field, large networks are connected through switches and routers. These devices manage all data traffic and serve as the main bridge between devices. However, if these

switches and routers are compromised, the repercussions can cascade to all connected devices. To help mitigate this risk, Moxa implements the ISA/IEC 62443-4-2 standard into our network device designs.

Security Standards and Vertical Markets



Industries such as electricity, oil and gas, rail transportation, and maritime have established their own standards for security. These standards include guidelines and regulations designed to address each industry's unique concerns. Among these standards, 62443 is the most comprehensive, covering a wide range of industries and security concerns, making it an excellent choice for organizations that prioritize security in their operations.

ISA/IEC 62443 Standards and Architecture

The ISA/IEC 62443 standard is a set of guidelines and best practices designed to help organizations secure their industrial automation and control systems (IACS) against cyber threats. The framework helps assess risks to IACS and implement appropriate security measures to protect against cyber attacks and malware. The standard consists of multiple parts, with each covering different aspects of industrial cybersecurity.

Breakdown of ISA/IEC 62443

Parts of ISA/IEC 62443	Scope	Sections
ISA/IEC 62443-1	General	Part 1-1: Terminology, concepts, and models Part 1-2: Master glossary of terms and abbreviations Part 1-3: System security compliance metrics Part 1-4: IACS security life cycle and use-cases
ISA/IEC 62443-2	Process and Program requirements	Part 2-1: Establishing an industrial automation and control system security program Part 2-2: Implementation guidance for an IACS security management system Part 2-3: Patch management in the IACS environment Part 2-4: Security program requirements for IACS service providers
ISA/IEC 62443-3	Systems	Part 3-1: Security technologies for industrial automation and control systems Part 3-2: Security risk assessment and system design Part 3-3: System security requirements and security levels
ISA/IEC 62443-4	Components	Part 4-1: Secure product development lifecycle requirements Part 4-2: Technical security requirements for IACS components

Product suppliers adhere to the ISA/IEC 62443 standard to provide components for Industrial Automation and Control System (IACS) solutions. These components can be:

- Individual items
- Combined products forming a system or subsystem

Additionally, system integrators use the following sections of the ISA/IEC 62443 standard:

- IEC 62443-2-1
- IEC 62443-2-4
- IEC 62443-3-2
- IEC 62443-3-3

These standards help integrators:

- Determine security zones

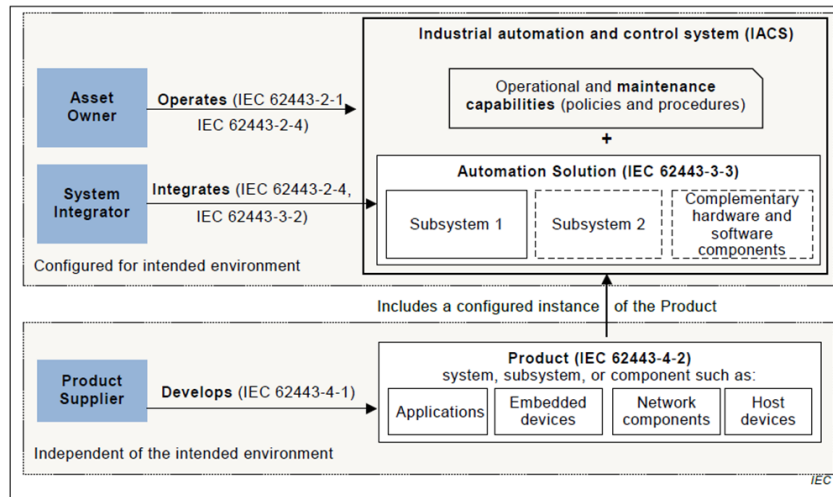
- Specify security capability levels for each zone
- Integrate products into an Automation Solution

Key Parts of ISA/IEC 62443 Standard

Parts of the ISA/IEC 62443 Standard	Technical Security Requirements
General ISA/IEC 62443-1	ISA-/IEC 62443-1-1 Foundational Requirements (FR)
System ISA/IEC 62443-3	ISA-/IEC 62443-3-3 System Requirements (SR)
Component ISA/IEC 62443-4	ISA-/IEC 62443-4-2 Component Requirements (CR)

Once the solution is ready, it's installed on-site, becoming a vital part of the IACS.

Summary of IEC 62443 Stakeholders



Establishing Foundational Requirements

ISA/IEC 62443-1-1 Foundational Requirements (FR)

FR 1	Identification and Authentication Control
FR 2	User Control
FR 3	System Integrity

FR 1 Identification and Authentication Control

FR 4	Data Confidentiality
FR 5	Restricted Data Flow
FR 6	Timely Response to Events
FR 7	Resource Availability

Once an organization settles on target security levels, foundational requirements can help further specify requirements based on the seven foundational security functions (FRs). The ISA/IEC 62443 framework includes:

- **System Requirements (SRs):** Detailed in Part 3-3, these are guidelines for those shaping the system's overall architecture.
- **Component Requirements (CRs):** Outlined in Part 4-2, they cater to designers focusing on individual components.

Both system and component designers reference these standards, ensuring the final product's security aligns with what the asset owner's requirements. This methodology not only bolsters the product's defense against specific threat levels but also optimizes resource utilization among stakeholders. As a side note, every FR from Part 1-1 is paired with four distinct security levels, which trace back to standards set in Parts 3-3 and 4-2. For simplicity in cross-referencing, CRs are numerically aligned with their corresponding SRs.

Component Requirements

Part 4-2 extends the SRs from Part 3-3 by introducing CRs tailored for a variety of IACS components.

These components fall under four broad categories of SRs:

- Software Applications
- Embedded Devices
- Host Devices
- Network Devices

While a majority of Part 4-2's criteria are generic and apply uniformly across categories, there are exceptions. Unique, component-specific stipulations are clearly signposted, with exhaustive details available in dedicated clauses. For details, consult the original standards.

Requirement Enhancements

CRs may contain one or more requirement enhancements (RE). REs are additional requirements attached to CRs that add additional conditions to accommodate higher security levels.

FR 1 Applications: User Identification and Authentication

FR 1 codifies the principle that all users—humans, software processes, or devices—must first be identified and authenticated before accessing the system or assets.

Recognizing the need to verify different kinds of users, FR 1 uses the following CRs:

- **CR 1.1** focuses on human users.
- **CR 1.2** addresses software processes and devices.

Identification vs. Authentication: Consider a person's ID card. While the card identifies its owner, can someone else misuse it? Certainly. Here, the distinction between 'identifying' (matching a person to an ID card) and 'authenticating' (confirming the card holder's authenticity) becomes crucial. Each process has distinct methods and requirements.

Understanding CR and RE in Determining Security Levels: CR represents foundational requirements, whereas RE accounts for advanced needs. Together, they define the security capacity of a component. Each component's security level, according to FR, ranges from 0 (no requirements) to 4.

For instance:

- **Security Level 1:** Implementing basic identification and authentication for all human users.
- **Security Level 2:** Incorporates RE1 - uniquely identify and authenticate users, like using ID cards for employees.
- **Security Level 3:** Engages RE2 - multifactor authentication.

Multifactor Authentication Unraveled: Typically, this methodology hinges on:

1. **Knowledge:** Passwords or PINs.

2. **Possession:** Devices like smartphones or security keys.
3. **Inherence:** Biometrics such as fingerprints.

To achieve Level 3, a combination of at least two of these factors is essential.

Security Levels (SLs) and Attack Types

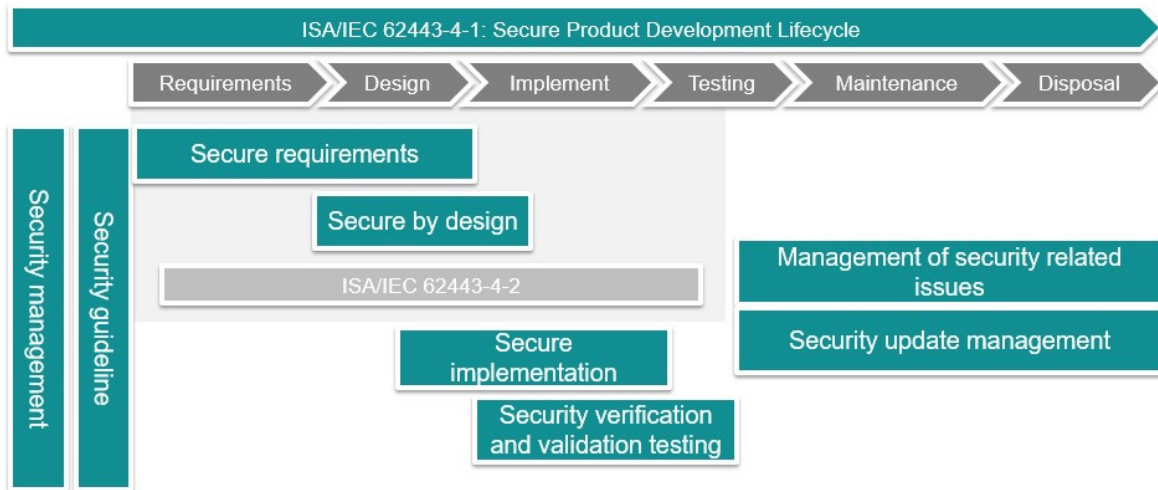
Security Level	Example Threat Actor	Violation Type	Means	Resource Level	Motivation
SL-1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ordinary user 	Coincidental	N/A	N/A	N/A
SL-2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entry-level hacker 	Intentional	Simple	Low	Low
SL-3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Terrorist Organization • Organized crime 	Intentional	Sophisticated	Moderate	Moderate
SL-4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nation state 	Intentional	Sophisticated	Extended	High

For more information about CRs, SLs, and REs, refer to the ISA/IEC 62443 standard.

Product Lifecycle and Security

Component security plays a role throughout the product lifecycle.

Moxa's Application of ISA/IEC 62443-4-1



How Moxa applies ISA/IEC 62443-4-1

Our commitment to security includes to adhering to the ISA/IEC 62443-4-1 standard, considering security at each stage of the product's lifecycle. This includes the

safeguarding of our corporate network, keys, secure design and implementation proficiencies, testing processes, and post-sales services. Our approach involves extensive training and certification of all team members associated with product design, execution, and assistance. Moreover, we offer robust support mechanisms like vulnerability handling and patch management.

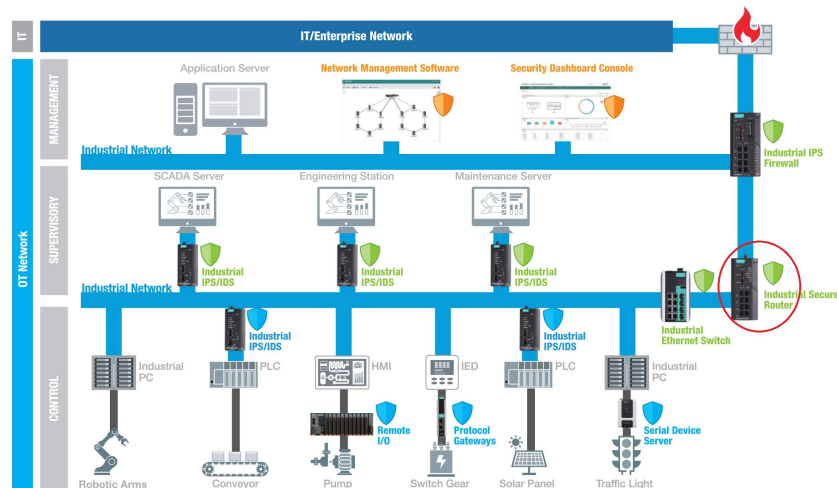
Component Security with IEC 62443-4-2

IEC 62443-4-2 serves as a guide for product suppliers, helping us decipher the specific security capability benchmarks for control system components. This standard not only clarifies which requirements should be assigned but also pinpoints those that must be integral to the components. The fusion of these component requirements with their enhancement requirements defines the component's target security level.

Product Security Context

Security context describes a product's role in a network and the security features of its environment.

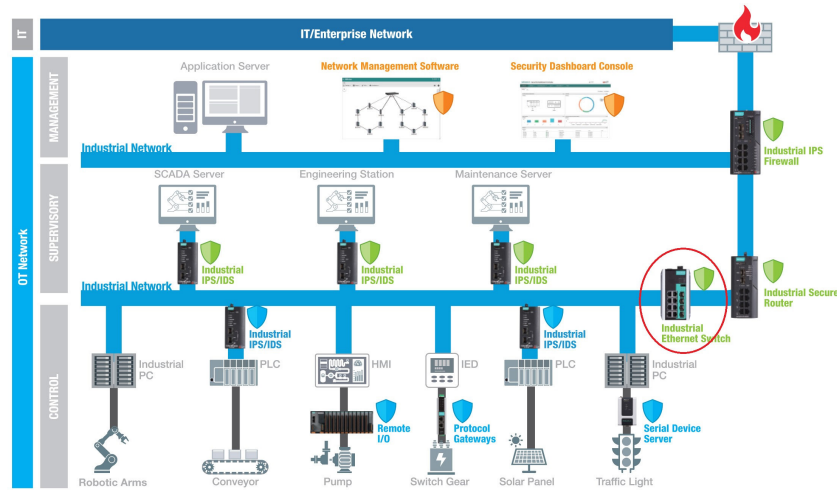
Security Context of an Industrial Secure Router



A secure router is a router with security features. Unlike a firewall—which exclusively filters and controls traffic—a secure router also monitors connections between devices. Secure routers have additional security features such as intrusion detection/prevention systems (IDS/IPS), virtual private network (VPN) support, and advanced encryption capabilities.

Secure router Intrusion Detection Systems (IDS) can be deployed behind the firewall for a defense-in-depth approach, increasing detection of attacks bypassing first-layer firewalls.

Security Context of an Industrial Ethernet Switch



Switches with enhanced security features such as access control lists (ACLs), VLAN support, and support for secure communication protocols, in conjunction with other security measures, can help create a more robust and resilient network.

ACLs and VLANs can help isolate devices on the same physical or logical network segments. This isolation adds further security to minimize or mitigate the effects of an attack.

Chapter 7

Appendix

Appendix

This section includes additional reference information for your device.

The following information is included:

- Destination Ports for Layer 3-7 Protocol
- EtherTypes for Layer 2
- Fiber Check Threshold Values
- IEC 61375-2-3 Communication Identifiers
- IEC-104 Cause of Transmission List
- IEC-104 Type Identification List
- LED Behavior
- MIB Groups
- MMS Command Type List
- MMS Service Operation List
- Severity Level List
- Status Codes
- Structure and Syntax of Consist Info Configuration Files
- Supported Features List
- System Event List
- System Log Events
- TRDP Message Type List
- TRDP Protocol Filter Profile List
- User Role Privileges

Destination Ports for Layer 3 – 7 Protocol

Network Service

Remote-Access

Remote-Desktop

Network Service

Email

File-Transfer

Web-Access

Network-Service

Authentication

VOIP-and-Streaming

SQL-Server

Industrial Application Service

Modbus

DNP3

IEC-60870-5-104

IEC-61850-MMS

OPC-DA

OPC-UA

CIP-EtherNet/IP

Siemens-Step7

Moxa-RealCOM

moxa-MXview-Request

EtherTypes for Layer 2

The following table shows the Layer 2 protocol types commonly used in Ethernet frames.

EtherType Value (Hexadecimal)	Layer 2 Protocol
0x0800	IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4)
0x0805	X25
0x0806	ARP (Address Resolution Protocol)
0x0808	Frame Relay ARP
0x08FF	G8BPQ AX.25 Ethernet Packet
0x6000	DEC Assigned proto
0x6001	DEC DNA Dump/Load
0x6002	DEC DNA Remote Console
0x6003	DEC DNA Routing
0x6004	DEC LAT
0x6005	DEC Diagnostics
0x6006	DEC Customer use
0x6007	DEC Systems Comms Arch
0x6558	Trans Ether Bridging
0x6559	Raw Frame Relay
0x80F3	Appletalk AARP
0x809B	Appletalk
0x8100	8021Q VLAN tagged frame
0x8137	Novell IPX
0x8191	NetBEUI
0x86DD	IP version 6 (Internet Protocol version 6)
0x880B	PPP
0x884C	MultiProtocol over ATM

EtherType Value (Hexadecimal)	Layer 2 Protocol
0x8863	PPPoE discovery messages
0x8864	PPPoE session messages
0x8884	Frame-based ATM Transport over Ethernet
0x9000	Loopback

Fiber Check Threshold Values

Model Name	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Max./Min. TX Power (dBm)	Min. RX Power (dBm)
FEMST	120	-11.0/-23.0	-31.0
FEMSC	120	-11.0/-23.0	-31.0
FESSC	120	3.0/-8.0	-34.0
SFP-1FEMLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-37.0
SFP-1FESLC-T	120	3.0/-8.0	-37.0
SFP-1FELLC-T	120	3.0/-8.0	-37.0
SFP-1GSXLC-T	110	-1.0/-12.5	-18.0
SFP-1GLSXLC-T	120	2.0/-12.0	-19.0
SFP-1GLXLC-T	120	0.0/-12.5	-20.0
SFP-1GLHLC-T	120	1.0/-11.0	-23.0
SFP-1GLHXLC-T	120	4.0/-7.0	-24.0
SFP-1GZXLC-T	120	8.0/-3.0	-24.0
SFP-1G10ALC-T	120	0.0/-12.0	-21.0
SFP-1G10BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0

Model Name	Temperature Threshold (°C)	Max./Min. TX Power (dBm)	Min. RX Power (dBm)
SFP-1G20ALC-T	120	1.0/-11.0	-23.0
SFP-1G20BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0
SFP-1G40ALC-T	120	5.0/-6.0	-23.0
SFP-1G40BLC-T	120	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0
SFP-1GSXLC	100	-1.0/-12.5	-18.0
SFP-1GLSXLC	100	2.0/-12.0	-19.0
SFP-1GLXLC	100	0.0/-12.5	-20.0
SFP-1GLHLC	100	1.0/-11.0	-23.0
SFP-1GLHXLC	100	4.0/-7.0	-24.0
SFP-1GZXLC	100	8.0/-3.0	-24.0
SFP-1GEZXLC	100	8.0/-3.0	-30.0
SFP-1GEZXLC-120	100	6.0/-5.0	-33.0
SFP-1G10ALC	100	0.0/-12.0	-21.0
SFP-1G10BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0
SFP-1G20ALC	100	1.0/-11.0	-23.0
SFP-1G20BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0
SFP-1G40ALC	100	5.0/-6.0	-23.0
SFP-1G40BLC	100	-5.0/-21.0	-34.0

IEC 61375-2-3 Communication Identifiers

This is a list of IEC 61375-2-3 communication identifier ComIDs and their descriptions.

ComID	Description
0	unspecified PDU
1	ETBCTRL telegram
2	CSTINFO notification message
3	CSTINFOCTRL notification message
10	TRDP Echo
31	TRDP - statistics request command
35	TRDP - global statistics data
36	TRDP - subscription statistics data
37	TRDP - publishing statistics data
38	TRDP - redundancy statistics data
39	TRDP - join statistics data
40	TRDP- UDP listener statistics data
41	TRDP - TCP listener statistics data
80	Conformance test- control telegram
81	Conformance test - status telegram
82	Conformance test - confirmation request telegram
83	Conformance test - confirmation reply telegram
84	Conformance test - opTrnDir request telegram
85	Conformance test - opTrnDir reply telegram
86	Conformance test - echo request telegram
87	Conformance test - echo reply telegram
88	Conformance test - echo notification telegram
100	TTDB - operational train directory status telegram

ComID	Description
101	TTDB - operational train directory notification
102	TTDB - train directory information request
103	TTDB - train directory information reply
104	TTDB - consist information request
105	TTDB - consist information reply
106	TTDB - train network directory information request
107	TTDB - train network directory information reply
108	TTDB - operational train directory information request
109	TTDB - operational train directory information reply
110	TTDB - train information complete request
120	ECSP - control telegram
121	ECSP - status telegram
122	ECSP - Confirmation/Correction request
123	ECSP - Confirmation/Correction reply
130	ETBN - control request
131	ETBN - status reply
132	ETBN - train network directory request
133	ETBN - train network directory reply
140	TCN-DNS - resolving request telegram (query)
141	TCN-DNS - resolving reply telegram

IEC-104 Cause of Transmission List

This is a list of IEC-104 cause of transmission codes and their descriptions.

Cause	Description
0	not used
1	periodic, cyclic
2	background interrogation
3	spontaneous
4	initialized
5	interrogation or interrogated
6	activation
7	confirmation activation
8	deactivation
9	confirmation deactivation
10	termination activation
11	feedback, caused by distant command
12	feedback, caused by local command
13	data transmission
14-19	reserved for further compatible definitions
20	interrogated by general interrogation
21	interrogated by interrogation group 1
22	interrogated by interrogation group 2
23	interrogated by interrogation group 3
24	interrogated by interrogation group 4
25	interrogated by interrogation group 5
26	interrogated by interrogation group 6
27	interrogated by interrogation group 7

Cause	Description
28	interrogated by interrogation group 8
29	interrogated by interrogation group 9
30	interrogated by interrogation group 10
31	interrogated by interrogation group 11
32	interrogated by interrogation group 12
33	interrogated by interrogation group 13
34	interrogated by interrogation group 14
35	interrogated by interrogation group 15
36	interrogated by interrogation group 16
37	interrogated by counter general interrogation
38	interrogated by interrogation counter group 1
39	interrogated by interrogation counter group 2
40	interrogated by interrogation counter group 3
41	interrogated by interrogation counter group 4
44	type-Identification unknown
45	cause unknown
46	ASDU address unknown
47	Information object address unknown

IEC-104 Type Identification List

This is a list of IEC-104 type identification codes and their descriptions.

Process information in monitor direction

Type	Description
1	Single point information
2	Single point information with time tag
3	Double point information
4	Double point information with time tag
5	Step position information
6	Step position information with time tag
7	Bit string of 32 bit
8	Bit string of 32 bit with time tag
9	Measured value, normalized value
10	Measured value, normalized value with time tag
11	Measured value, scaled value
12	Measured value, scaled value with time tag
13	Measured value, short floating-point value
14	Measured value, short floating-point value with time tag
15	Integrated totals
16	Integrated totals with time tag
17	Event of protection equipment with time tag
18	Packed start events of protection equipment with time tag
19	Packed output circuit information of protection equipment with time tag
20	Packed single-point information with status change detection
21	Measured value, normalized value without quality descriptor

Process telegrams with long time tag (7 octets)

Type	Description
30	Single point information with time tag CP56Time2a
31	Double point information with time tag CP56Time2a
32	Step position information with time tag CP56Time2a
33	Bit string of 32 bit with time tag CP56Time2a
34	Measured value, normalized value with time tag CP56Time2a
35	Measured value, scaled value with time tag CP56Time2a
36	Measured value, short floating-point value with time tag CP56Time2a
37	Integrated totals with time tag CP56Time2a
38	Event of protection equipment with time tag CP56Time2a
39	Packed start events of protection equipment with time tag CP56time2a
40	Packed output circuit information of protection equipment with time tag CP56Time2a

Process information in control direction

Type	Description
45	Single command
46	Double command
47	Regulating step command
48	Setpoint command, normalized value
49	Setpoint command, scaled value
50	Setpoint command, short floating-point value
51	Bit string 32 bit

Command telegrams with long time tag (7 octets)

Type	Description
58	Single command with time tag CP56Time2a
59	Double command with time tag CP56Time2a
60	Regulating step command with time tag CP56Time2a
61	Setpoint command, normalized value with time tag CP56Time2a
62	Setpoint command, scaled value with time tag CP56Time2a
63	Setpoint command, short floating-point value with time tag CP56Time2a
64	Bit string 32 bit with time tag CP56Time2a

System information in monitor direction

Type	Description
70	End of initializ

System information in control direction

Type	Description
100	(General-) Interrogation command
101	Counter interrogation command
102	Read command
103	Clock synchronization command
104	(IEC 101) Test command
105	Reset process command
106	(IEC 101) Delay acquisition command
107	Test command with time tag CP56Time2a

Parameter in control direction

Type	Description
110	Parameter of measured value, normalized value
111	Parameter of measured value, scaled value
112	Parameter of measured value, short floating-point value
113	Parameter activation

File transfer

Type	Description
120	File ready
121	Section ready
122	Call directory, select file, call file, call section
123	Last section, last segment
124	Ack file, Ack section
125	Segment
126	Directory
127	QueryLog – Request archive file

LED Behavior

This page describes the LED behaviors for different product series.

Note

Please note that some LEDs are only on models with related features.

EDF-G1002 Series LED Behavior

LED	Color	State	Description
PWR1	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input PWR1.
	Off	Off	Power is not being supplied to the power PWR1.
PWR2	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input PWR2.
	Off	Off	Power is not being supplied to the power PWR2.
STATE	Green	On	The system passed the self-diagnosis test during boot-up and is ready to run.
		Blinking (1 Hz)	The system is ready to do a factory reset after pressing the reset button for 5 seconds.
	Red	On	The system failed the self-diagnosis test during boot-up.
	Off	Off	The system is off.
USB	Green	On	A USB device is connected.
		Blinking (1 sec off, 1 sec on)	USB data is being transmitted.
	Red	On	The USB device is malfunctioning.
	Off	Off	No USB device connected.
Bypass	Amber	On	System-halted bypass or Run-time bypass mode is enabled.
		Blinking (0.5 Hz)	Run-time bypass is enabled and operating
	Off	Off	System-halted bypass or Run-time bypass mode is disabled.
HA	Green	On	Reserved.
	Amber	On	Reserved.
	Off	Off	Reserved.
	Green	On	The port is active, and a link is established at 1000 Mbps.

LED	Color	State	Description
10/100/1000 Mbps		Blinking	Data is being transmitted at 1000 Mbps.
	Amber	On	The port is active, and a link is established at 10/100 Mbps.
		Blinking	Data is being transmitted at 10/100 Mbps.
	Off	Off	The port is inactive, or the link is down.

EDR-8010 Series LED Behavior

LED	Color	State	Description
PWR1	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
		Off	Power is not being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
PWR2	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
		Off	Power is not being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
STATE	Green	On	The system passed the self-diagnosis test on boot-up and is ready to run.
		Blinking	Device reset is in progress, blinking once per second.
		Red	On
MSTR/H.TC	Green	On	The EDR-8010 is set as the Master of the Turbo Ring, or as the Head of the Turbo Chain.
		Blinking	The Turbo Ring or the Turbo Chain is down.
		Off	The EDR-8010 is not set as the Master of this Turbo Ring or is set as a Member of the Turbo Chain.
CPLR/T.TC	Green	On	The EDR-8010 Series' coupling function is enabled to form a backup path, or the device is set as the Tail of the Turbo Chain.
		Blinking	The Turbo Ring or the Turbo Chain is down.
		Off	The EDR-8010 Series' coupling function is disabled, or the device is set as a Member of the Turbo Chain.
VRRP/HA	Green	On	The EDR-8010 is set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.
		Off	The EDR-8010 is not set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.

LED	Color	State	Description
VPN	Green	On	All VPN tunnels are working normally.
	Amber	On	Only parts of the VPN tunnels are working normally.
		Off	No active VPN connections.
USB	Green	On	USB drive successfully connected.
		Blinking	USB data is being transmitted.
	Red	On	USB dongle malfunction.
1G	Green	On	1G SFP link is up.
		Off	No link or the SFP link is down.
10/100 Mbps	Green	On	10 or 100 Mbps copper link is up.
		Off	No link or the copper link is down.

EDR-G9004 Series LED Behavior

LED	Color	State	Description
PWR1	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
		Off	Power is NOT being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
PWR2	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
		Off	Power is NOT being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
STATE	Green	On	The system passed the self-diagnosis test on boot-up and is ready to run.
		Blinking	Device reset is in progress, blinking once per second.
	Red	On	The system failed the self-diagnosis test on boot-up.
BYPASS	Amber	On	The bypass redundancy function is enabled.
		Off	The bypass redundancy function is disabled.
WAN/DMZ	Amber	On	The WAN2/DMZ port is set to WAN mode.
	Green	On	The WAN2/DMZ port is set to DMZ mode.

LED	Color	State	Description
		Off	The WAN2/DMZ port is disabled.
VRRP/HA	Green	On	The EDR-G9004 is set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.
		Off	The EDR-G9004 is not set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.
VPN	Green	On	All VPN tunnels are working normally.
	Amber	On	Only parts of the VPN tunnels are working normally.
		Off	No active VPN connections.
USB	Green	On	USB drive successfully connected.
		Blinking	USB data is being transmitted.
	Red	On	USB dongle malfunction.
1G/2.5G	Green	On	2.5G SFP link is up.
	Amber	On	1G SFP link is up.
		Off	No link or the SFP link is down.
10/100/ 1000 Mbps	Green	On	1000 Mbps copper link is up.
	Amber	On	10/100 Mbps copper link is up.
		Off	No link or the copper link is down.

EDR-G9010 Series LED Behavior

LED	Color	State	Description
PWR1	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
		Off	Power is not being supplied to power input P1 on the main module.
PWR2	Amber	On	Power is being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
		Off	Power is not being supplied to power input P2 on the main module.
STATE	Green	On	The system passed the self-diagnosis test on boot-up and is ready to run.

LED	Color	State	Description
		Blinking	Device reset is in progress, blinking once per second.
	Red	On	The system failed the self-diagnosis test on boot-up.
MSTR/H.TC	Green	On	The EDR-G9010 is set as the Master of the Turbo Ring, or as the Head of the Turbo Chain.
		Blinking	The Turbo Ring or the Turbo Chain is down.
		Off	The EDR-G9010 is not set as the Master of this Turbo Ring or is set as a Member of the Turbo Chain.
CPLR/T.TC	Green	On	The EDR-G9010 Series' coupling function is enabled to form a backup path, or the device is set as the Tail of the Turbo Chain.
		Blinking	The Turbo Ring or the Turbo Chain is down.
		Off	The EDR-G9010 Series' coupling function is disabled, or the device is set as a Member of the Turbo Chain.
VRRP/HA	Green	On	The EDR-G9010 is set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.
		Off	The EDR-G9010 is not set as the Master of the VRRP or HA.
VPN	Green	On	All VPN tunnels are working normally.
	Amber	On	Only parts of the VPN tunnels are working normally.
		Off	No active VPN connections.
USB	Green	On	USB drive successfully connected.
		Blinking	USB data is being transmitted.
	Red	On	USB dongle malfunction.
1G/2.5G	Green	On	2.5G SFP link is up.
	Amber	On	1G SFP link is up.
		Off	No link or the SFP link is down.
10/100/1000 Mbps	Green	On	1000 Mbps copper link is up.
	Amber	On	10/100 Mbps copper link is up.
		Off	No link or the copper link is down.

MIB Groups

Your device comes with integrated SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) agent software, compliant with RFC-123 standard MIB and properties MIB. The following is a list of all the folders and related MIB files.

For comprehensive MIB information, you can use MIB browser tools. These tools provide a detailed view of the MIB tree, allowing for easier management and monitoring of network devices. Additionally, the complete MIB files can be downloaded from the product page on the Moxa website. Visit the Moxa product pages to access the latest MIB files and other related resources.

MIB Tree Structure

The MIB tree structure is designed for all Moxa router series. However, some MIB files may not be supported due to the varying support levels of each product series. Refer to the Supported Features List for detailed information about supported features.

```
--insrouter(1.3.6.1.4.1.8691.6.100)
|
+--swTraps(1)
| |
| +-- varconfigChangeTrap(1)
| +-- varpower1Trap(2)
| +-- varpower2Trap(3)
| +-- vardi1Trap(4)
| +-- vardi2Trap(5)
| +-- varredundancyTopologyChangedTrap(10)
| +-- varturboRingCouplingPortChangedTrap(11)
| +-- varturboRingMasterChangedTrap(12)
| +-- DisplayString varVRRPStateChangeTrap(13)
| +-- varFiberWarningTrap(28)
| +-- DisplayString varVPNConnectedTrap(40)
| +-- DisplayString varVPNDisconnectedTrap(41)
| +-- DisplayString varFirewallPolicyTrap(50)
| +-- DisplayString varSecurityNotificationTrap(51)
| +-- varLoggingCapacityTrap(52)
| +-- DisplayString varDot1xAuthFailTrap(53)
| +-- varFirmwareUpgradeTrap(54)
```

```

| +-- DisplayString varFirewallConfigChangeTrap(55)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularIpChange(56)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularModuleFail(57)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSimDetectFail(58)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularPinCodeFail(59)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSimSwitch(60)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularModuleHighTemperature(61)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularGuaranlinkCellularReconnect(62)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularGuaranlinkTriggerIspReregister(63)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularGuaranlinkTriggerCellularModuleReset(64)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularGuaranlinkTriggerSystemReboot(65)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularPmPowerSavingStart(66)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularPmPowerSavingEnd(67)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularPmSchedulingRuleExpired(68)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSmsWrongPassword(69)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSmsWrongCommand(70)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSmsWrongFormat(71)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSmsCommandDisabled(72)
| +-- DisplayString varCellularSmsTrustedNumberAuthenticationFail(73)
| +-- DisplayString varWanInterfaceChange(74)
| +-- DisplayString varWanInterfacePingFail(75)
| +-- DisplayString varSerialOpModeStateChange(76)
| +-- DisplayString varSerialDSRStateChange(77)
| +-- DisplayString varSerialDCDStateChange(78)
| +-- DisplayString varLfpOn(79)
| +-- DisplayString varLfpOff(80)
| +-- DisplayString varDeviceLockdownStateChangeTrap(81)
|
+--swMgmt(2)
| |
| | +--basicSetting(2)
| | |
| | | +--systemSetting(1)
| | | |
| | | | +-- DisplayString sysRouterName(1)
| | | |

```

```

| | +--accessibleIP(2)
| | |
| | +-- enableAccessibleIP(1)
| | +-- enableAccessibleLan(2)
| | |
| | +--accessibleIpTable(3)
| | |
| | +--accessibleIpEntry(1) [accessibleIpAddress]
| | |
| | +-- IPAddress    accessibleIpAddress(1)
| | +-- IPAddress    accessibleIpNetMask(2)
| | +-- accessibleIpState(3)
| |
| +--network(3)
| | |
| | +--networkSetting(1)
| | |
| | +--wanSetting(1)
| | | |
| | | +-- wanConnMode(1)
| | | +-- wanConnType(2)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanStaticIpAddr(3)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanStaticIpMask(4)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanStaticDefaultGateway(5)
| | | +-- DisplayString wanAdslName(6)
| | | +-- DisplayString wanAdslHost(7)
| | | +-- wanPptpEnable(9)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanPptpAddr(10)
| | | +-- DisplayString wanPptpUsrName(11)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanDnsServer1(13)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanDnsServer2(14)
| | | +-- IPAddress    wanDnsServer3(15)
| | | +-- IPAddress    ipAddr(16)
| | | +-- IPAddress    ipMask(17)
| | | +-- IPAddress    defaultGateway(18)
| | | +-- directedBroadcast(19)

```

```

| | | +-- sourceIPOverwrite(20)
| | |
| | | +--wan2Setting(2)
| | | |
| | | | +-- wan2ConnMode(1)
| | | | +-- wan2ConnType(2)
| | | | +-- wan2DmzState(3)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2StaticIpAddr(4)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2StaticIpMask(5)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2StaticDefaultGateway(6)
| | | | +-- DisplayString wan2AdslName(7)
| | | | +-- DisplayString wan2AdslHost(8)
| | | | +-- wan2PptpEnable(10)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2PptpAddr(11)
| | | | +-- DisplayString wan2PptpUsrName(12)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2DnsServer1(14)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2DnsServer2(15)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2DnsServer3(16)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2IpAddr(17)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2IpMask(18)
| | | | +-- IPAddress wan2DefaultGateway(19)
| | | | +-- wan2DirectedBroadcast(20)
| | | | +-- wan2SourceIPOverwrite(21)
| | | |
| | | +--lanSetting(3)
| | | |
| | | | +--lanTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | | +--lanEntry(1) [lanVlanId]
| | | | | |
| | | | | | +-- lanVlanId(1)
| | | | | | +-- lanEnable(2)
| | | | | | +-- DisplayString lanName(3)
| | | | | | +-- IPAddress lanIpAddr(4)
| | | | | | +-- IPAddress lanIpMask(5)
| | | | | | +-- lanDirectedBroadcast(6)

```



```

| | |      +--- lanSourceIPOverwrite(7)
| | |
| | | +---dhcpServer(4)
| | | |
| | | | +---dhcpSrvTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | | +---dhcpSrvEntry(1) [dhcpSvrEnable]
| | | | | |
| | | | | | +--- dhcpSvrEnable(1)
| | | | | | +---  dhcpSvrLeaseTime(2)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpSvrDns1(3)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpSvrDns2(4)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpIpRangeStart(5)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpIpRangeEnd(6)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpNTP(7)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpDefaultGateway(8)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpNetmask(9)
| | | | |
| | | | +---dhcpStaticTable(8)
| | | | |
| | | | | +---dhcpStaticEntry(1) [dhcpStaticEnable]
| | | | | |
| | | | | | +---  dhcpStaticEnable(1)
| | | | | | +--- DisplayString dhcpStaticName(2)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticIp(3)
| | | | | | +--- MacAddress  dhcpStaticMac(4)
| | | | | | +---      dhcpStaticLeasetime(5)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticDns1(6)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticDns2(7)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticNtp(8)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticDefaultGateway(9)
| | | | | | +--- IPAddress  dhcpStaticNetmask(10)
| | | | |
| | | | +---dhcpSvrPipTable(9)
| | | | |
| | | | | +---dhcpSvrPipEntry(1) [dhcpPipEnable]

```

```

| | | |
| | | +--- dhcpPipEnable(1)
| | | +--- dhcpPipPortNumber(2)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipIp(3)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipNetmask(4)
| | | +--- dhcpPipLeasetime(5)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipDns1(6)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipDns2(7)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipNtp(8)
| | | +--- IPAddress dhcpPipGateway(9)
| | |
| | +---dhcpList(5)
| | | |
| | | +---dhcpListTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +---dhcpListEntry(1) [dhcpListName]
| | | | |
| | | | +--- DisplayString dhcpListName(1)
| | | | +--- DisplayString dhcpListMac(2)
| | | | +--- IPAddress dhcpListAddr(3)
| | | |
| | +---dhcpServerMode(8)
| | | |
| | | +--- dhcpServerModeStatus(1)
| | | |
| | +---brigdeSetting(9)
| | | |
| | | +--- bridgeEnable(1)
| | | +--- DisplayString bridgeName(2)
| | | +--- IPAddress birdgeIpAddr(3)
| | | +--- IPAddress bridgeIpMask(4)
| | | |
| | +---cellularSetting(10)
| | | |
| | | +--- cellularEnable(1)
| | | +--- cellularConnectionEnable(2)

```

```

| | |
| | | +---cellularSimTable(3)
| | | |
| | | | +---cellularSimEntry(1) [cellularSimIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | | +--- cellularSimIndex(1)
| | | | | +--- cellularSimEnable(2)
| | | | | +--- cellularSimPriority(3)
| | | |
| | | +---guaranlinkSetting(4)
| | | |
| | | | +--- glinkEnable(1)
| | | | +--- glinkCheckTiming(2)
| | | |
| | | +---remoteSmsSetting(5)
| | | |
| | | | +--- remoteSmsEnable(1)
| | | |
| | | +---gnssSetting(6)
| | | |
| | | | +--- gnssEnable(1)
| | | | +--- gnssServerEnable(2)
| | | | +--- gnssClientEnable(3)
| | | | +--- DisplayString gnssSatelliteStatus(4)
| | | | +--- DisplayString gnssLongitudeStatus(5)
| | | | +--- DisplayString gnssLatitudeStatus(6)
| | |
| | +---routeSetting(5)
| | |
| | | +---showRoutingTable(3)
| | | |
| | | | +---rTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | | +---rEntry(1) [rIndex]
| | | | | |
| | | | | | +--- --- rIndex(1)

```

```

| |         +--- DisplayString rType(2)
| |         +--- DisplayString rDestination(3)
| |         +--- IPAddress      rNextHop(4)
| |         +--- DisplayString rIfsName(5)
| |         +---      rMetric(6)
| |
| | +---natSetting(6)
| | |
| | | +---natTable(1)
| | | |
| | | | +---natEntry(1) [natIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | | +---      natIndex(1)
| | | | | +---      natEnable(2)
| | | | | +--- DisplayString natDesc(3)
| | | | | +---      natMode(4)
| | | | | +---      natProtocolTcp(10)
| | | | | +---      natProtocolUdp(11)
| | | | | +---      natProtocolIcmp(12)
| | | | | +---      natNatLoopback(50)
| | | | | +---      natDoubleNat(51)
| | | | | +---      natVrrpBinding(52)
| | | | | +--- DisplayString natOriIface(100)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriSrcIp1(110)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriSrcIp2(111)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriSrcMask(112)
| | | | | +---      natOriSrcPort1(114)
| | | | | +---      natOriSrcPort2(115)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriDstIp1(130)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriDstIp2(131)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natOriDstMask(132)
| | | | | +---      natOriDstPort1(134)
| | | | | +---      natOriDstPort2(135)
| | | | | +--- DisplayString natTransIface(150)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natTransSrcIp1(160)
| | | | | +--- IPAddress      natTransSrcIp2(161)

```

```

| |      +-- IPAddress    natTransSrcMask(162)
| |      +--    natTransSrcDyn(163)
| |      +--    natTransSrcPort1(164)
| |      +--    natTransSrcPort2(165)
| |      +-- IPAddress    natTransDstIp1(180)
| |      +-- IPAddress    natTransDstIp2(181)
| |      +-- IPAddress    natTransDstMask(182)
| |      +--    natTransDstPort1(184)
| |      +--    natTransDstPort2(185)
| |
| |      +---filterSetting(7)
| |      |
| |      +---firewallPolicy(1)
| |      | |
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalLogEnable(20)
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalMalEnable(21)
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalMalLevel(22)
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalMalFlash(23)
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalMalSyslog(24)
| |      | | +-- firewallGlobalMalTrap(25)
| |      | |
| |      +---dosSetting(2)
| |      |
| |      +-- dosNullScanEnable(1)
| |      +-- dosXmasScanEnable(2)
| |      +-- dosNmapXmasScanEnable(3)
| |      +-- dosSynFinScanEnable(4)
| |      +-- dosFinScanEnable(5)
| |      +-- dosNmapIdScanEnable(6)
| |      +-- dosSynRstScanEnable(7)
| |      +-- dosIcmpDeathScanEnable(8)
| |      +--    dosIcmpLimit(9)
| |      +-- dosSynFloodScanEnable(10)
| |      +--    dosSynLimit(11)
| |      +-- dosArpFloodScanEnable(12)
| |      +--    dosArpLimit(13)

```

```

| |   +-- dosNewTCPWithoutSYNScan(14)
| |   +-- dosUdpFloodScanEnable(15)
| |   +-- dosUdpLimit(16)
| |
| +--vpnSetting(8)
| | |
| | | +--vpnIpsec(1)
| | | |
| | | | +--ipsecGlobal(1)
| | | | |
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalState(1)
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalNatt(2)
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalEventLog(3)
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalEventLogFlash(4)
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalEventLogSyslog(5)
| | | | | +-- ipsecGlobalEventLogSNMPTrap(6)
| | | | |
| | | | +--ipsecSetting(2)
| | | | |
| | | | | +--ipsecSettingTable(1)
| | | | | |
| | | | | | +--ipsecSettingEntry(1) [ipsecSettingEnable]
| | | | | | |
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecSettingEnable(1)
| | | | | | | +-- IpAddress ipsecSettingRemoteEndIp(2)
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecSettingL2tp(4)
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecSettingPfs(5)
| | | | | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecSettingName(6)
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecSettingSecurityLevel(7)
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecConnIfs(8)
| | | | | | | +-- ipsecStartup(9)
| | | | | | | +-- IpAddress ipsecLocalNetwork(10)
| | | | | | | +-- IpAddress ipsecLocalMask(11)
| | | | | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecLocalId(13)
| | | | | | | +-- IpAddress ipsecRemoteNetwork(14)
| | | | | | | +-- IpAddress ipsecRemoteMask(15)

```

```

| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecRemoteId(17)
| | | | +-- ipsecAuthMode(18)
| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecPsk(19)
| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecLocalSelectPem(20)
| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecRemoteSelectPem(21)
| | | | +-- ipsecExchange(22)
| | | | +-- ipsecP1Encrypt(23)
| | | | +-- ipsecP1Ah(24)
| | | | +-- ipsecP1Dh(25)
| | | | +-- ipsecIKELifetime(27)
| | | | +-- ipsecSaLifetime(30)
| | | | +-- ipsecP2Encrypt(31)
| | | | +-- ipsecP2Ah(32)
| | | | +-- ipsecDpdAction(33)
| | | | +-- ipsecDpdDelay(34)
| | | | +-- ipsecDpdTimeout(35)
| | | | +-- ipsecIdentityType(36)
| | | | +-- ipsecPfsDHGroup(37)
| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecLocalSubnet(38)
| | | | +-- DisplayString ipsecRemoteSubnet(39)
| | | |
| | | +--ipsecStatus(3)
| | | |
| | | +--ipsecStatusTable(1)
| | | |
| | | +--ipsecStatusEntry(1) [ipsecStatusIndex]
| | | |
| | | +-- --- ipsecStatusIndex(1)
| | | +-- DisplayString ipsecStatusName(2)
| | | +-- DisplayString ipsecStatusLocSubnet(3)
| | | +-- IpAddress ipsecStatusLocGateway(4)
| | | +-- IpAddress ipsecStatusRemGateway(5)
| | | +-- DisplayString ipsecStatusRemSubnet(6)
| | | +-- DisplayString ipsecStatusPhase1(7)
| | | +-- DisplayString ipsecStatusPhase2(8)
| | | +-- ipsecI2tp(9)

```

```

| | |
| | +--vpnL2tp(2)
| | |
| | +-- l2tpModewan1(1)
| | +-- IPAddress l2tpLocalIpWan1(2)
| | +-- IPAddress l2tpOfferIpStartWan1(3)
| | +-- IPAddress l2tpOfferIpEndWan1(4)
| | |
| | +--l2tpTable(9)
| | |
| | +--l2tpEntry(1) [l2tpLoginUserName]
| | |
| | +-- DisplayString l2tpLoginUserName(1)
| |
| +--snmpSetting(9)
| | |
| | +--snmpSetup(1)
| | |
| | +-- snmpVersion(1)
| | +-- snmpAuthType(3)
| | +-- snmpAccessControl1(7)
| | +-- snmpAccessControl2(9)
| | +-- DisplayString trap1ServerAddr(10)
| | +-- DisplayString trap2ServerAddr(11)
| | +-- DisplayString trap3ServerAddr(12)
| | +-- snmpInformEnable(13)
| | +-- DisplayString snmpReadCommunity1(14)
| | +-- DisplayString snmpReadCommunity2(15)
| | +-- DisplayString snmpTrapCommunity(16)
| | +-- snmpTrapMode(17)
| | +-- snmpAdminSecurityLevel(22)
| | +-- snmpUserSecurityLevel(23)
| |
| +--diagnosisSetting(12)
| | |
| | +--lldpSetting(2)

```



```

| | |
| |   +-- lldpEnable(1)
| |   +-- lldpInterval(2)
| |   +-- lldpRingPortBypass(3)
| |
| | +--monitor(13)
| | |
| |   +-- power1InputStatus(7)
| |   +-- power2InputStatus(8)
| | |
| |   +--monitorFiberCheckTable(11)
| |     |
| |     +--monitorFiberCheckEntry(1) [portIndex]
| |       |
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberPort(1)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberModelName(2)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberWaveLength(3)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberVoltage(4)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberTemperature(5)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberTempWarn(6)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberTxPower(7)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberTxPowerWarn(8)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberRxPower(9)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberRxPowerWarn(10)
| |       +-- DisplayString fiberSN(13)
| |
| | +--systemLog(14)
| | |
| |   +--syslog(2)
| |     |
| |     +-- syslogServer1Enable(1)
| |     +-- DisplayString syslogServer1(2)
| |     +-- syslogServer1port(3)
| |     +-- syslogServer2Enable(4)
| |     +-- DisplayString syslogServer2(5)
| |     +-- syslogServer2port(6)

```

```

| |   +--  syslogServer3Enable(7)
| |   +-- DisplayString syslogServer3(8)
| |   +--  syslogServer3port(9)
| |   +-- DisplayString syslogServer1cert(10)
| |   +-- DisplayString syslogServer2cert(11)
| |   +-- DisplayString syslogServer3cert(12)
| |
| |
| +--networkMode(15)
| | |
| | +-- networkModeSelection(1)
| | |
| +--routingRedundancy(16)
| | |
| | +--vrrp(1)
| | |
| |   +--vrrpInterfaceTable(1)
| |   | |
| |   | +--vrrpInterfaceEntry(1) [vrrpIfIndex]
| |   | |
| |   |   +-- ---  vrrpIfIndex(1)
| |   |   +-- DisplayString vrrpIfName(2)
| |   |   +-- IPAddress    vrrpIfAddr(3)
| |   |   +--  vrrpIfEnable(4)
| |   |   +-- IPAddress    vrrpIfVirtualIp(5)
| |   |   +--  vrrpIfRouterId(6)
| |   |   +--  vrrpIfPriority(7)
| |   |   +--  vrrpIfPreemption(8)
| |   |   +--  vrrpIfStatus(9)
| |   |   +-- DisplayString vrrpIfTrack(10)
| |   |   +-- IPAddress    vrrpPingTrackIP(11)
| |   |   +--  vrrpPingTrackInt(12)
| |   |   +--  vrrpPingTimeout(13)
| |   |   +--  vrrpPingTrackSuccess(14)
| |   |   +--  vrrpPingTrackFailure(15)
| |   |   +--  vrrpAdvInt(16)
| |   |   +--  vrrpPreemptDelay(17)

```

```

| | |
| |   +-- vrrpEnable(2)
| |
| +--portSetting(17)
| | |
| |   +--portTable(1)
| |   |
| |     +--portEntry(1) [portIndex]
| |     |
| |       +--   portIndex(1)
| |       +--   DisplayString portDesc(2)
| |       +--   portEnable(3)
| |       +--   portSpeed(4)
| |       +--   portMDI(5)
| |       +--   portFDXFlowCtrl(6)
| |       +--   DisplayString portName(7)
| |       +--   portType(8)
| |
| +--portTrunking(19)
| | |
| |   +--trunkSettingTable(1)
| |   | |
| |     +--trunkSettingEntry(1) [trunkSettingIndex]
| |     | |
| |       +--   trunkSettingIndex(1)
| |       +--   trunkType(2)
| |       +--   PortList   trunkMemberPorts(3)
| |
| |   +--trunkTable(2)
| |   |
| |     +--trunkEntry(1) [trunkIndex,trunkPort]
| |     |
| |       +--   trunkIndex(1)
| |       +--   trunkPort(2)
| |       +--   trunkStatus(3)
| |

```

```

| +-commRedundancy(20)
| | |
| | +-spanningTree(3)
| | | |
| | | +- spanningTreeRoot(1)
| | | +- spanningTreeBridgePriority(2)
| | | +- spanningTreeHelloTime(3)
| | | +- spanningTreeMaxAge(4)
| | | +- spanningTreeForwardingDelay(5)
| | | |
| | | +-spanningTreeTable(6)
| | | |
| | | +-spanningTreeEntry(1) [enableSpanningTree]
| | | |
| | | +- enableSpanningTree(2)
| | | +- spanningTreePortPriority(3)
| | | +- spanningTreePortCost(4)
| | | +- spanningTreePortStatus(5)
| | | +- spanningTreePortEdge(6)
| | | |
| | +- activeProtocolOfRedundancy(4)
| | |
| | +-turboRingV2(5)
| | | |
| | | +-turboRingV2Ring1(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +- ringIndexRing1(1)
| | | | +- ringEnableRing1(2)
| | | | +- masterSetupRing1(3)
| | | | +- masterStatusRing1(4)
| | | | +- MacAddress designatedMasterRing1(5)
| | | | +- rdnt1stPortRing1(6)
| | | | +- rdnt1stPortStatusRing1(7)
| | | | +- rdnt2ndPortRing1(8)
| | | | +- rdnt2ndPortStatusRing1(9)
| | | | +- brokenStatusRing1(10)

```

```

| | | |
| | | +--turboRingV2Ring2(2)
| | | | |
| | | | +-- ringIndexRing2(1)
| | | | +-- ringEnableRing2(2)
| | | | +-- masterSetupRing2(3)
| | | | +-- masterStatusRing2(4)
| | | | +-- MacAddress designatedMasterRing2(5)
| | | | +-- rdnt1stPortRing2(6)
| | | | +-- rdnt1stPortStatusRing2(7)
| | | | +-- rdnt2ndPortRing2(8)
| | | | +-- rdnt2ndPortStatusRing2(9)
| | | | +-- brokenStatusRing2(10)
| | | |
| | | +--turboRingV2Coupling(3)
| | | |
| | | +-- couplingEnable(1)
| | | +-- couplingMode(2)
| | | +-- coupling1stPort(3)
| | | +-- coupling1stPortStatus(4)
| | | +-- coupling2ndPort(5)
| | | +-- coupling2ndPortStatus(6)
| | |
| | +--turboChain(6)
| | |
| | +-- turboChainRole(1)
| | +-- turboChainPort1(2)
| | +-- turboChainPort2(3)
| | +-- turboChainPort1Status(4)
| | +-- turboChainPort2Status(5)
| |
| +--vlan(21)
| | |
| | +--vlanPortSettingTable(1)
| | | |
| | | +--vlanPortSettingEntry(1) [portIndex]

```

```

| | | |
| | | +-- portVlanType(1)
| | | +-- portDefaultVid(2)
| | | +-- DisplayString portFixedVid(3)
| | | +-- DisplayString portFixedVidUntag(5)
| | |
| | +--vlanTable(2)
| | | |
| | | +--vlanEntry(1) [vlanId]
| | | |
| | | +-- vlanId(1)
| | | +-- PortList joinedAccessPorts(2)
| | | +-- PortList joinedTrunkPorts(3)
| | | +-- PortList joinedHybirdPorts(4)
| | |
| | +-- managementVlanId(3)
| | +-- vlanType(4)
| |
| +--swMgmtGroup(22)
| | |
| | +-- numberOfPorts(1)
| | +-- DisplayString switchModel(2)
| | +-- DisplayString firmwareVersion(4)
| |
| +--globalStatus(23)
| | |
| | +-- firewallGlobalStatus(1)
| | +-- natGlobalStatus(2)
| | +-- vpnGlobalStatus(3)
| | +-- securityNotificationFirewallStatus(4)
| | +-- securityNotificationDoSAttackStatus(5)
| | +-- securityNotificationAccessViolationStatus(6)
| | +-- securityNotificationLoginFailStatus(7)
| | +-- defaultPasswordChange(8)
| |
| +--interfaceStatus(24)

```

```

| | |
| | +--interfaceStatusTable(1)
| | | |
| | | +--interfaceStatusEntry(1) [interfaceOverallStatus]
| | | |
| | | +-- DisplayString interfaceOverallStatus(1)
| | | +-- interfaceOverallType(2)
| | |
| | +--cellularStatus(2)
| | |
| | +-- DisplayString cellularMode(1)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularCarrier(2)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularRSSI(3)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularIP(4)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularIMEI(5)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularIMSI(6)
| | +-- cellularConnectionStatus(7)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularSim1Status(8)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularSim2Status(9)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularRSRP(10)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularRSRQ(11)
| | +-- DisplayString cellularSINR(12)
| |
| +--securityNotification(25)
| | |
| | +-- eventFirewall(1)
| | +-- eventDoSAttack(2)
| | +-- eventAccessViolation(3)
| | +-- eventLoginFail(4)
| |
| +--mtuAdjustment(28)
| | |
| | +--mtuAdjustmentTable(1)
| | |
| | +--mtuAdjustmentEntry(1) [mtuAdjustmentIndex]
| | |

```

```

| |      +-- ---      mtuAdjustmentIndex(1)
| |      +-- DisplayString mtuAdjustmentIfName(2)
| |      +--      mtuAdjustmentMTUsize(3)
| |      +--      mtuAdjustmentPRPtraffic(4)
| |
| +--poeSetting(40)
| | |
| | | +--poePortTable(3)
| | | |
| | | | +--poePortEntry(1) [poePortIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | | +--      poePortIndex(1)
| | | | | +--      poePortEnable(2)
| | | | | +--      powerLimit(4)
| | | | | +--      pdfailure(5)
| | | | | +-- DisplayString pdipaddr(6)
| | | | | +--      pdPollingInterval(7)
| | | | | +--      poePortLegacyPdDetect(9)
| | | | | +--      pdNoResponseTimeout(10)
| | | | | +--      pdNoResponseAction(11)
| | | | | +--      poePowerOutputMode(12)
| | | |
| | | +--poeStatusTable(6)
| | | |
| | | | +--poeStatusEntry(1) [poePortIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | | +-- poePortStatus(1)
| | | | | +-- poePortConsumption(2)
| | | | | +-- poePortVoltage(3)
| | | | | +-- poePortCurrent(4)
| | | | | +-- poePortPowerOutput(5)
| | | | | +-- poePortClass(6)
| | | | | +-- poePortPdFailCheck(7)
| | | | | +-- poePortPdStatusDescription(8)
| | | |
| | +--poeSystemSetting(9)

```



```

| | |
| | +-- poeSysPowerEnable(1)
| | +-- poeSysPowerThreshold(2)
| | +-- poeSysThresholdCutOff(3)
| | +-- poeSysAllocatedPower(4)
| | +-- poeSysMeasuredPower(5)
| | +-- poeSysPowerBudget(7)
| |
| +--eventlog(46)
| | |
| | +--eventlogSystem(1)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogSystemTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogSystemEntry(1) [eventlogSystemIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogSystemIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogSystemTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogSystemSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogSystemEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogSystemClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogVPN(2)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogVPNTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogVPNEntry(1) [eventlogVPNIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogVPNIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogVPNTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogVPNSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogVPNEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogVPNClear(2)
| | |

```

```

| | +--eventlogTruseAccess(3)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogTruseAccessTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogTruseAccessEntry(1) [eventlogTruseAccessIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogTruseAccessIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogTruseAccessTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogTruseAccessSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogTruseAccessEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogTruseAccessClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogMalformed(4)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogMalformedTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogMalformedEntry(1) [eventlogMalformedIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogMalformedIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogMalformedTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogMalformedSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogMalformedEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogMalformedClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogDOS(5)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogDOSTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogDOSEntry(1) [eventlogDOSIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogDOSIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogDOSTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogDOSSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogDOSEvent(4)

```

```

| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogDOSClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogDevLockdown(6)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogDevLockdownTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogDevLockdownEntry(1) [eventlogDevLockdownIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogDevLockdownIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogDevLockdownTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogDevLockdownSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogDevLockdownEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogDevLockdownClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogL3Policy(7)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogL3PolicyTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogL3PolicyEntry(1) [eventlogL3PolicyIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogL3PolicyIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogL3PolicyTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogL3PolicySeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogL3PolicyEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogL3PolicyClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogProtocolFilterPolicy(8)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyEntry(1)
[eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyIndex]
| | | | |

```

```

| | | | +-- eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogProtocolFilterPolicySeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogProtocolFilterPolicyClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogADP(9)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogADPTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogADPEntry(1) [eventlogADPIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogADPIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogADPTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogADPSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogADPEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogADPClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogIPS(10)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogIPSTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogIPSEntry(1) [eventlogIPSIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogIPSIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogIPSTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogIPSSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogIPSEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogIPSClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogSessionControl(11)
| | | |
| | | +--eventlogSessionControlTable(1)

```

```

| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogSessionControlEntry(1) [eventlogSessionControlIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogSessionControlIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogSessionControlTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogSessionControlSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogSessionControlEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogSessionControlClear(2)
| | |
| | +--eventlogL2Filter(12)
| | |
| | | +--eventlogL2FilterTable(1)
| | | | |
| | | | +--eventlogL2FilterEntry(1) [eventlogL2FilterIndex]
| | | | |
| | | | +-- eventlogL2FilterIndex(1)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogL2FilterTimestamp(2)
| | | | +-- eventlogL2FilterSeverity(3)
| | | | +-- DisplayString eventlogL2FilterEvent(4)
| | | |
| | | +-- eventlogL2FilterClear(2)
| | |
| +-- cpuLoading5s(53)
| +-- cpuLoading30s(54)
| +-- cpuLoading300s(55)
| +-- totalMemory(56)
| +-- freeMemory(57)
| +-- usedMemory(58)
| +-- memoryUsage(59)
| |
| +--managementInterface(63)
| | |
| | +-- httpEnable(1)
| | +-- httpPort(2)
| | +-- sslEnable(3)

```

```

| | +--      sslPort(4)
| | +--      telnetEnable(5)
| | +--      telnetPort(6)
| | +--      sshEnable(7)
| | +--      sshPort(8)
| | +--      mgmtInterfaceAutoLogout(9)
| | +-- DisplayString moxaUtilityServicePort(13)
| | +--      httpMaxLoginUsers(14)
| | +--      telnetMaxLoginUsers(15)
| | +--      moxaUtilityServiceEnable(16)
| | |
| | +--pingResponseIfTable(18)
| | |
| |     +--pingResponseIfEntry(1) [pingResponseIf]
| |     |
| |         +-- DisplayString pingResponseIf(1)
| |
| +--passwordPolicy(70)
| | |
| | +--      pwdMinLength(1)
| | +--      pwdComplexityCheckEnable(2)
| | +--      pwdComplexityCheckDigitEnable(3)
| | +--      pwdComplexityCheckAlphabetEnable(4)
| | +--      pwdComplexityCheckSpecialCharEnable(5)
| |
| +--loginLockout(71)
| | |
| | +--      loginFailureLockoutEnable(1)
| | +--      loginFailureLockoutRetrys(2)
| | +--      loginFailureLockoutTime(3)
| |
| +--systemNotifyMessage(72)
| | |
| | +--      DisplayString httpLoginMessage(1)
| | +--      DisplayString httpLoginFailureMessage(2)
| |

```

```

| +-- DisplayString serialNumber(78)
| +--   configEncryptEnable(79)
| |
| +--security(80)
| | |
| |   +--portAccessControl(2)
| |     |
| |     +--dot1x(2)
| |       |
| |       +-- dataBaseOption(1)
| |       +-- dot1xReauthEnable(5)
| |       +--   dot1xReauthPeriod(6)
| |         |
| |         +--dot1xSettingTable(7)
| |           | |
| |           |   +--dot1xSettingEntry(1) [portIndex]
| |           |     |
| |           |     +-- enableDot1X(1)
| |           |
| |           +--dot1xReauthTable(8)
| |             | |
| |             |   +--dot1xReauthEntry(1) [dot1xReauthPortIndex]
| |             |     |
| |             |     +--   dot1xReauthPortIndex(1)
| |             |     +-- dot1xReauth(2)
| |             |
| |             +--dot1xRadius(9)
| |               |
| |               +-- DisplayString dot1x1stRadiusServer(2)
| |               +--   dot1x1stRadiusPort(3)
| |               +-- DisplayString dot1x1stRadiusSharedKey(4)
| |               +-- DisplayString dot1x2ndRadiusServer(5)
| |               +--   dot1x2ndRadiusPort(6)
| |               +-- DisplayString dot1x2ndRadiusSharedKey(7)
| |
| +--powerMgmtSetting(81)

```

```

| | |
| | +-- powerMgmtEnable(1)
| |
| +--serialSetting(82)
| | |
| | +-- serialPort(1)
| | +-- serialPortIfType(2)
| | +-- serialPortOpMode(3)
| | +-- serialDataLog(4)
| | +-- serialPortBuffer(5)
| |
| +--linkFaultPassthrough(83)
| | |
| | +-- lfpState(1)
| | +-- lfpPort1(2)
| | +-- lfpPort2(3)
| |
| +--softLockdownModeStatus(84)
| | |
| | +-- softLockdownModeStatusStatus(1)
| | +-- softLockdownModeStatusTr2(2)
| | +-- softLockdownModeStatusDhcpSvr(3)
| | +-- softLockdownModeStatusDhcpRelayAgent(4)
| | +-- softLockdownModeStatusSnmpSvr(5)
|
+--mibNotificationsPrefix(3)
|
+--configChangeTrap(1) [varconfigChangeTrap]
|
+--power1Trap(2) [varpower1Trap]
|
+--power2Trap(3) [varpower2Trap]
|
+--di1Trap(4) [vardi1Trap]
|
+--di2Trap(5) [vardi2Trap]

```



```

|
+--redundancyTopologyChangedTrap(10) [varredundancyTopologyChangedTrap]
|
+--turboRingCouplingPortChangedTrap(11)
[verturboRingCouplingPortChangedTrap]
|
+--turboRingMasterChangedTrap(12) [verturboRingMasterChangedTrap]
|
+--vpnConnectedTrap(40) [varVPNConnectedTrap]
|
+--vpnDisconnectedTrap(41) [varVPNDisconnectedTrap]
|
+--firewallPolicyTrap(50) [varFirewallPolicyTrap]
|
+--securityNotificationTrap(51) [varSecurityNotificationTrap]
|
+--loggingCapacityTrap(52) [varLoggingCapacityTrap]

```

MMS Command Type List

This is a list of MMS command type codes and command names.

Command Type	Command Name
1	confirmed_RequestPDU
2	confirmed_ResponsePDU
3	confirmed_ErrorPDU
4	unconfirmed_PDU
5	rejectPDU
6	cancel_RequestPDU
7	cancel_ResponsePDU
8	cancel_ErrorPDU
9	initiate_RequestPDU

Command Type	Command Name
10	initiate_ResponsePDU
11	initiate_ErrorPDU
12	conclude_RequestPDU
13	conclude_ResponsePDU
14	conclude_ErrorPDU

MMS Service Operation List

This is a list of MMS service operation codes and their names.

Service Operation	Service Operation Name
1	acknowledgeEventNotification
2	alterEventConditionMonitoring
3	alterEventEnrollment
4	createJournal
5	createProgramInvocation
6	defineEventAction
7	defineEventCondition
8	defineEventEnrollment
9	defineNamedType
10	defineNamedVariable
11	defineNamedVariableList
12	defineScatteredAccess
13	defineSemaphore
14	deleteDomain

Service Operation	Service Operation Name
15	deleteEventAction
16	deleteEventCondition
17	deleteEventEnrollment
18	deleteJournal
19	deleteNamedType
20	deleteNamedVariableList
21	deleteProgramInvocation
22	deleteSemaphore
23	deleteVariableAccess
24	downloadSegment
25	eventNotification
26	fileClose
27	fileDelete
28	fileDirectory
29	fileOpen
30	fileRead
31	fileRename
32	getAlarmEnrollmentSummary
33	getAlarmSummary
34	getCapabilityList
35	getDomainAttributes
36	getEventActionAttributes
37	getEventConditionAttributes

Service Operation	Service Operation Name
38	getEventEnrollmentAttributes
39	getNamedTypeAttributes
40	getNamedVariableListAttributes
41	getNameList
42	getProgramInvocationAttributes
43	getScatteredAccessAttributes
44	getVariableAccessAttributes
45	identify
46	informationReport
47	initializeJournal
48	initiateDownloadSequence
49	initiateUploadSequence
50	input
51	kill
52	loadDomainContent
53	obtainFile
54	output
55	read
56	readJournal
57	relinquishControl
58	rename
59	reportActionStatus
60	reportEventActionStatus

Service Operation	Service Operation Name
61	reportEventConditionStatus
62	reportEventEnrollmentStatus
63	reportJournalStatus
64	reportPoolSemaphoreStatus
65	reportSemaphoreEntryStatus
66	reportSemaphoreStatus
67	requestDomainDownLoad
68	requestDomainUpload
69	reset
70	resume
71	start
72	status
73	stop
74	storeDomainContent
75	takeControl
76	terminateDownloadSequence
77	terminateUploadSequence
78	triggerEvent
79	unsolicitedStatus
80	uploadSegment
81	write
82	writeJournal


Severity Level List

This is a list of severity levels and descriptions, which are based on CVSS vulnerability classifications.

Severity	Description
Emergency	System is unusable
Alert	Action must be taken immediately
Critical	Critical conditions
Error	Error conditions
Warning	Warning conditions
Notice	Normal but significant condition
Infomational	Informational messages
Debug	Debug-level messages

Status Codes

This page shows the different status codes for your device.

 **Note**

Available settings and options will vary depending on the product model.

PoE Status Codes

Classification

Classification	Max Power (watts) by PSE Output
0	15.4
1	4
2	7
3	15.4

Classification	Max Power (watts) by PSE Output
----------------	---------------------------------

4	30
---	----

Device Type

Item	Description
------	-------------

Not Present	There are no active connections to the port.
--------------------	--

802.3at	An IEEE 802.3at PD is connected to the port.
----------------	--

802.3af	An IEEE 802.3af PD is connected to the port.
----------------	--

NIC	A NIC is connected to the port.
------------	---------------------------------

Unknown	An unknown PD is connected to the port.
----------------	---

N/A	The PoE function is disabled.
------------	-------------------------------

Configuration Suggestion

Item	Description
------	-------------

Disable PoE power output	A NIC or unknown PD was detected; you may want to disable PoE power output for the port.
---------------------------------	--

Select Force Mode	A higher/lower resistance or higher capacitance was detected; you may want to select Force Mode for the port.
--------------------------	--

Select high power output	An unknown classification was detected; you may want to select High Power output.
---------------------------------	---

Raise the external power supply voltage to greater than 46 VDC	When the external supply voltage is detected at less than 46 V, the system suggests raising the voltage.
---	--

Enable PoE function for detection	The system suggests enabling the PoE function.
--	--

Select IEEE 802.3at auto mode	When detecting an IEEE 802.3at PD, the system suggests selecting 802.3at Auto mode.
--------------------------------------	---

Select IEEE 802.3af auto mode	When detecting an IEEE 802.3af PD, the system suggests selecting 802.3af Auto mode.
--------------------------------------	---

Structure and Syntax of Local Consist Info Files

A local consist info file uses XML syntax to represent consist information. It is composed of the physical vehicle information and the network device information within each vehicle.

The basic file structure is as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<consistinfo>
  <vehicleinfo>
    <functioninfo>
    </functioninfo>
  </vehicleinfo>
</consistinfo>
```

consistinfo

The consistinfo element represents consist info. There must be only one consistinfo element per configuration file.

Attributes

There are no attributes for this element.

Child Elements

Name	Description	Valid Range
cstId	Required. Specifies a unique ID for a consist. This is different than the Consist UUID. The suggested naming convention for using a UIC for the cstId is: <i>"UIC" + (numerical part of UIC)</i> For example, the suggested cstId for UIC 508089-43503-8 would be <i>UIC508089435038</i> .	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
cstType	Optional. Specifies the type of the consist.	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
cstOwner	Optional. Specifies the owner of the consist.	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
vehicleinfo	Required. List of vehicle information that belongs to the consist. Refer to vehicleinfo for more information.	The numbers of the vehicle information, ranges from 1 to 32

vehicleinfo

The vehicleinfo element represents vehicle information in the consist. There should be 1 to 32 vehicleinfo elements within a consistinfo element.

Attributes

Name	Value	Valid Range
leading	Required. Boolean that indicates whether ECSC is attached to this vehicle.	true / false
tractVeh	Optional. Boolean that indicates whether a vehicle has traction.	true / false

Child Elements

Name	Description	Valid Range
vehId	Required. Specifies a unique ID for a vehicle. The suggested naming convention for using a UIC as for the vehId is: <i>"UIC" + (numerical part of UIC)</i> For example, suggested vehId for <i>UIC 508089-43501-2</i> would be <i>UIC508089435012</i> .	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
vehType	Optional. Specifies the type of vehicle.	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
vehOrient	Required. Specifies the vehicle orientation with respect to the consist direction. same: Indicates that vehicle has the same direction with respect to the consist direction. inverse: Indicates that the vehicle is in the opposite direction with respect to the consist direction.	same / inverse
cstVehNo	Required. Specifies the index of the vehicle within the consist. Indexing starts from consist direction 1 to direction 2. The first vehicle in consist direction 1 is assigned index 1. The second vehicle (next vehicle in direction 2 of first vehicle) has index 2, and so on.	Integer from 1 to 32
functioninfo	Required. List of devices/functional groups information within the vehicle. Refer to functioninfo for more information. Number of devices/function group information ranges from 0 to 1024	Integer from 0 to 1024

functioninfo

The functioninfo element represents device or functional group information in the vehicle. There can be 0 to 1024 functioninfo elements within a vehicleinfo element.

Attributes

There are no attributes for this element.

Child Elements

Name	Description	Valid Range
fctName	Required. Specifies a unique name for the device/functional group. For devices, we suggest using "dev" or "fct" as a prefix for the fctName. Examples: fctDoorCtrl, fctBrake, devHMI For functional groups, which represent multicast addresses, fctName should use "grp" as the prefix. Examples: grpDoorCtrl, grpBrake, grpETBN, grpECSC	Valid XML element name that is 3 to 15 characters. A hyphen cannot be used as the last character.
cnId	Required. Specifies the static CN ID of the ECN this device/functional group connects to. Set this to 0 for functional groups.	Integer from 0 to 32
fctId	Required. Specifies the numeric ID for the device/functional group. Must be different from the Host ID of the ECN. There should be no duplicate combinations of fctId and cnId within a single consist.	Integer from 1 to 32767

Supported Features List

Support for various features varies depending on the product and model. Refer to the table below for an overview of which features are supported by different product series.

Note

Please note that there may still be functional differences between different models within the same product series.

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
Device Summary		YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
Setup Wizard		YES	-	-
System		YES	YES	YES
	System Management	YES	YES	YES
	Information Settings	YES	YES	YES
	Firmware Upgrade	YES	YES	YES
	Software Package Management	YES	YES	YES
	Configuration Backup and Restore	YES	YES	YES
	Account Management	YES	YES	YES
	User Accounts	YES	YES	YES
	Password Policy	YES	YES	YES
	License Management	YES	YES	YES
	Management Interface	YES	YES	YES
	Out of Band Management	-	YES	-
	User Interface	YES	YES	YES
	Hardware Interface	YES	YES	YES
	SNMP	YES	YES	YES
	Moxa Remote Connect	-	-	YES
	MXsecurity	YES	YES	YES
	Time	YES	YES	YES
	System Time	YES	YES	YES
	NTP/SNTP Server	YES	-	YES
	Power Management	-	-	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
	SMS	-	-	YES
	GNSS	-	-	YES
	Setting Check	YES	YES	YES
Cellular		-	-	YES
Serial		-	-	YES
Network Configuration		YES	YES	YES
	Ports	YES	YES	YES
	Port Settings	YES	YES	YES
	Link Aggregation	YES	-	-
	PoE	-	-	-
	Link Fault Passthrough	YES	YES	-
	LAN Bypass Gen3	YES	YES	-
	Layer 2 Switching	YES	-	YES
	VLAN	YES	-	YES
	MAC Address Table	YES	-	YES
	QoS	YES	-	-
	Rate Limit	YES	-	-
	Multicast	YES	-	YES
	IGMP Snooping	YES	-	-
	Static Multicast Table	YES	-	YES
	Network Interfaces	YES	YES	YES
Redundancy		YES	-	-

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
	Layer 2 Redundancy	YES	-	-
	Spanning Tree	YES	-	-
	Turbo Ring V2	YES	-	-
	Turbo Chain	YES	-	-
	Layer 3 Redundancy	YES	-	YES
	VRRP	YES	-	YES
	WAN Redundancy	YES	-	YES
Network Service		YES	-	YES
	DHCP Server	YES	-	YES
	Dynamic DNS	YES	-	YES
Routing		YES	-	YES
	Unicast Route	YES	-	YES
	Static Routes	YES	-	YES
	RIP	YES	-	-
	OSPF	YES	-	-
	Routing Table	YES	-	YES
	Multicast Route	YES	-	YES
	Multicast Route Settings	YES	-	YES
	Static Multicast Route	YES	-	YES
	Multicast Forwarding Table	YES	-	YES
	Broadcast Forwarding	YES	-	YES
NAT		YES	-	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
Object Management		YES	YES	YES
Firewall		YES	YES	YES
	Layer 2 Policy	YES	YES	YES
	Layer 3-7 Policy	YES	YES	YES
	Malformed Packets	YES	YES	YES
	Session Control	YES	YES	YES
	DoS Policy	YES	YES	YES
	Soft Lockdown Mode	-	-	YES
	Advanced Protection	YES	YES	YES
	Dashboard	YES	YES	YES
	Configuration	YES	YES	YES
	Protocol Filter Policy	YES	YES	YES
	ADP	YES	YES	YES
	IPS	YES	YES	-
VPN		YES	-	YES
	IPSec	YES	-	YES
	L2TP Server	YES	-	-
	OpenVPN Client	YES	-	-
Certificate Management		YES	YES	YES
	Local Certificate	YES	YES	YES
	Trusted CA Certificate	YES	YES	YES
	Certificate Signing Request	YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
Security		YES	YES	YES
	Device Security	YES	YES	YES
	Login Policy	YES	YES	YES
	Trusted Access	YES	YES	YES
	SSH & SSL	YES	YES	YES
	Network Security	YES	YES	-
	IEEE 802.1X	YES	-	-
	Authentication	YES	YES	YES
	Login Authentication	YES	YES	YES
	RADIUS	YES	YES	YES
	TACACS+ Server	YES	YES	YES
	MXview Alert Notification	YES	YES	YES
Diagnostics		YES	YES	YES
	System Status	YES	YES	YES
	Utilization	YES	YES	YES
	Fiber Check	YES	-	-
	Network Status	YES	YES	YES
	Network Statistics	YES	YES	YES
	LLDP	YES	YES	YES
	ARP Table	YES	YES	YES
	Event Log and Notifications	YES	YES	YES
	Event Log	YES	YES	YES

Configuration Section	Function	EDR Series	EDF Series	OnCell Series
	Event Notifications	YES	YES	YES
	Syslog	YES	YES	YES
	SNMP Trap/Inform	YES	YES	YES
	Email Settings	YES	YES	YES
	SMS Settings	-	YES	YES
	Tools	YES	YES	YES
	Port Mirroring	YES	-	-
	Ping	YES	YES	YES
	Diagnostic Support	-	-	YES
	Netflow	YES	YES	-

System Event List

This is a list of system events and their descriptions.

System Event	Description
Cold Start	Power was cut off and then reconnected.
Warm Start	The Moxa industrial secure router was rebooted, such as when network parameters are changed (IP address, netmask, etc.).
Power 1 Transition (On->Off)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 1 is powered down.
Power 1 Transition (Off->On)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 1 is powered up.
Power 2 Transition (On->Off)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 2 is powered down.
Power 2 Transition (Off->On)	The Moxa industrial secure router's power 2 is powered up.

System Event	Description
Digital Input Transition (On->Off)	The Moxa industrial secure router's input is turning off.
Digital Input Transition (Off->On)	The Moxa industrial secure router's input is turning on.
Configuration Changed	A configuration setting was changed.
Login Failure	An incorrect password was entered.
802.1X Authentication Failure	An 802.1X authentication failure occurred.
Firmware Upgrade Success	Firmware upgrade was successful.
Firmware Upgrade Failure	An error occurred during the firmware upgrade.
Log Service Ready	Log service is ready.
Ring/RSTP Topology Changed	The Ring/RSTP topology was changed.
Master Mismatch	A Turbo Ring Master mismatch occurred.
Coupling Topology Changed	The Coupling topology was changed.
VRRP State Change	The VRRP state was changed.
VPN Connected	VPN has been connected.
VPN Disconnected	VPN has been disconnected.
Firewall Policy	A firewall policy failure occurred.
PoE PD On	PoE
PoE PD Off	Port#N PD power on.
Over Measured Power limitation	Port#N PD power off.
PoE FETBad	PD Port#N MOSFET is bad.

System Event	Description
PoE Over Temperature	The temperature of the environment exceeds the maximum operating temperature of the router.
PoE VEE Uvlo	VEE (PoE input voltage) under Voltage Lockout. The voltage of the power supply has dropped below 44V DC.
PoE PD Over Current	Current of Port#N has exceeded the safety limit.
PoE PD Check Fail	The router does not receive a PD response from Port#N after the defined period for specific time cycles.
Over Allocated Power limitation	The total PD power consumption exceeds the total allocated power.

System Log Events

This table shows the related names, descriptions, and tag/program categories of different system log events.

Event	Log Description	Tag/Program
COLD_START	System has performed a cold start.	System
WARM_START	System has performed a warm start.	System
POW_OFF	Power {{index}} has turned off.	System
POW_ON	Power {{index}} has turned on.	System
DI_ON	Digital Input {{index}} has turned on.	System
DI_OFF	Digital Input {{index}} has turned off.	System
AP_CONFIG	Configurations {{modules}} have been changed by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
AP_ENABLE	Configurations {{modules}} have been Enabled by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System

Event	Log Description	Tag/Program
AP_DISABLE	Configurations {{modules}} have been Disabled by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
LINK_ON	Port {{number}} link up.	System
LINK_OFF	Port {{number}} link down.	System
IP_CHG	Network Interface IP have been changed by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
AUTH_FAIL	[Account:{{user_name}}] log in failed.	System
AUTH_OK_LOGIN_SUCCESS	[Account:{{user_name}}] successfully logged.	System
AUTH_CHANGE	Device SSL & SSH Key/Cert Change(re-generate)	System
TOPOLOGY_CHANGE	Topology has been changed	TurboRingV2
MASTER_MISMATCH	Ring {{Index}} master setting does not match.	TurboRingV2
MRR_COUPLING_TC	Coupling path status has changed.	TurboRingV2
FW_UPGRADE_SUCCESS	Firmware Successfully Upgraded.	System
FW_UPGRADE_FAIL	Firmware Upgrade Fail.	System
CONFIG_IMPORT_FAIL	Configuration import has {{'failed'}} by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
CONFIG_EXPORT_SUCCESS	Configuration export {{successful}} by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
CONFIG_IMPORT_SUCCESS	Configuration import has {{'successful'}} by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
VRRP_STATE_CHANGE	VRRP Virtual Router state change	System
DOT1X_AUTH_FAIL	{{mac address}} authentication failed on port {{number}}.	IEEE802.1X

Event	Log Description	Tag/Program
FIREWALL_POLICY	Firewall Rule Hit Log(Firewall, Trust Access, DOS)	
AUTH_OK_BUT_SESSION_FULL	[Account:{{user_name}}] locked due to {{session_number}} failed login attempts.	System
AUTH_OK_BUT_LOCKOUT	[Account:{{user_name}}] locked due to {{failed_times}} failed login attempts.	System
OOM_OCCURRED	Kernel OOM Occurred	System
FIBER_CHECK	Fiber Check Warning	Port
SYSLOG_NG_LEAK	Clear memory cache (syslog agent)	System
IEC61375_TTDP_STATUS_CHANGE	TTDP Status Change	IEC61375
IEC61375_ECSP_STATUS_CHANGE	ECSP Status Change	IEC61375
POE_PD_ON	Port#N PD power on.	PoE
POE_PD_OFF	Port#N PD power off.	PoE
POE_EXCEED_SYSTEM_THRESHOLD	The total PD power consumption exceeds the total measured power limit.	PoE
POE_FETBAD	PD Port#N MOSFET bad.	PoE
POE_OVER_TEMPERATURE	The temperature of the environment exceeds the maximum operating temperature of the router.	PoE
POE_VEE_UVLO	VEE (PoE input voltage) under Voltage Lockout. The voltage of the power supply has dropped below 44V DC.	PoE
POE_PD_OVER_CURRENT	Current of Port#N has exceeded the safety limit.	PoE
POE_PDCHECK_FAIL	The router does not receive a PD response from Port#N after the defined period for specific time cycles.	PoE
POE_EXCEED_POWER_BUDGET	The total PD power consumption exceeds the total allocated power.	PoE

Event	Log Description	Tag/Program
ROOT_CHANGE	New Root has been elected in topology.	RSTP
SECURITY_NOTIFICATION_DEVICELOCKDOWN	Hit Device Lockdown Rule	System
DEVICE_LOCKDOWN_STATE_CHANGE	Configurations {{Device Lockdown State(on/off)}} have been changed by [Account:{{user_name}}].	System
VPN_LOG	IPSec connection log	VPN
LFP_ON	Link Fault Passthrough is triggered.	LFP
LFP_OFF	Link Fault Passthrough is cleared.	LFP
WAN_INTERFACE_CHANGE	The selected WAN interface in WAN Backup is changed, it means the default gateway is also changed.	WAN Backup
WAN_INTERFACE_PING_FAIL	The ping check of the WAN interface in WAN Backup is failed.	WAN Backup

TRDP Message Type List

Configuration attribute requirements - msgType

This is a list of TRDP msgTypes and their descriptions.

msgType	Description
Pr	PD Request
Pp	PD Reply
Pd	PD Data
Pe	PD Data (Error)
Mn	Notification (Request without reply)
Mr	MD Request with reply
Mp	MD Reply without confirmation

msgType	Description
Mq	MD Reply with confirmation
Mc	MD Confirm
Me	MD error

Configuration attribute requirements - msgType Profile

This is a list of TRDP msgType profiles and their descriptions.

Profile	Description
PD-PDU	A collection of "Pr, Pp, Pd, Pe"
MD-PDU	A collection of "Mn, Mr, Mp, Mq, Mc, Me"

TRDP Protocol Filter Profile List

This is a list of the different built-in protocol filter profiles for common applications and their corresponding message types and communication identifiers.

Protocol Filter Profile	Message Type	Communication Identifier (ComID)
PD-PDU	0x5072: PD Request, 0x5070: PD Reply, 0x5064: PD Data, 0x5065: PD Data (Error)	All
MD-PDU	0x4D6E: Notification (Request without reply), 0x4D72: MD Request with reply, 0x4D70: MD Reply without confirmation, -x4D71: MD Reply with confirmation, 0x4D63: MD Confirm, 0x4D65: MD error	All
Communication Framework and ETB Control Service	All	1-29, 50-79, 150-199
TRDP statistics data	All	30-41
Conformance test	All	80-99
TTDB	All	100-119
ECSP	All	120-129

Protocol Filter Profile	Message Type	Communication Identifier (ComID)
ETBN	All	130-139
TCN-DNS	All	140-149

User Role Privileges

This page shows the privilege levels granted to the different authority levels: Admin, Supervisor, and User. Refer to System > Account Management > User Accounts for more information on user accounts.

Privileges are indicated as follows:

- **R/W**: Read and write access granted for the relevant settings
- **R**: Read-only access granted for the relevant settings
- **-**: No access granted for the relevant settings

Note

Available settings and options will vary depending on the product model.

System

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Management			
Information Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Firmware Upgrade	R/W	-	-
Software Package Management	R/W	-	-
Configuration Backup and Restore	R/W	-	-
Account Management			
User Account	R/W	-	-

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Password Policy	R/W	-	-
License Management	R/W	R	R
Management Interface			
Out of Band Management	R/W	R/W	R
User Interface	R/W	R/W	R
Hardware Interface	R/W	R/W	R
SNMP	R/W	-	-
Moxa Remote Connect	R/W	-	-
MXsecurity	R/W	R/W	-
Time			
System Time	R/W	R/W	R
NTP/SNTP Server	R/W	R/W	R
Power Management	R/W	R/W	R
SMS	R/W	R/W	R
GNSS	R/W	R/W	R
Setting Check	R/W	R/W	R

Cellular

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Cellular	R/W	R/W	R

Serial

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Serial	R/W	R/W	R

Network Configuration

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Ports			
Port Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Link Aggregation	R/W	R/W	R
PoE	R/W	R/W	R
Link Fault Passthrough	R/W	R/W	R
LAN Bypass Gen3	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 2 Switching			
VLAN	R/W	R/W	R
MAC Address Table	R/W	R/W	R
QoS	R/W	R/W	R
Rate Limit	R/W	R/W	R
Multicast	R/W	R/W	R
Network Interfaces	R/W	R/W	R

Redundancy

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Redundancy			
Spanning Tree	R/W	R/W	R
Turbo Ring V2	R/W	R/W	R
Turbo Chain	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 Redundancy			
VRRP	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
----------	-------	------------	------

WAN Redundancy	R/W	R/W	R
-----------------------	-----	-----	---

Network Service

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
----------	-------	------------	------

DHCP Server	R/W	R/W	R
--------------------	-----	-----	---

Dynamic DNS	R/W	R/W	R
--------------------	-----	-----	---

Routing

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
----------	-------	------------	------

Unicast Routing

Static Routes	R/W	R/W	R
----------------------	-----	-----	---

RIP	R/W	R/W	R
------------	-----	-----	---

OSPF	R/W	R/W	R
-------------	-----	-----	---

Routing Table	R	R	R
----------------------	---	---	---

Multicast Route

Multicast Route Settings	R/W	R/W	R
---------------------------------	-----	-----	---

Static Multicast Route	R/W	R/W	R
-------------------------------	-----	-----	---

Multicast Forwarding Table	R	R	R
-----------------------------------	---	---	---

Broadcast Forwarding	R/W	R/W	R
-----------------------------	-----	-----	---

NAT

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
----------	-------	------------	------

NAT	R/W	R/W	R
------------	-----	-----	---

Object Management

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Object Management	R/W	R/W	R

Firewall

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Layer 2 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Layer 3 - 7 Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Malformed Packets	R/W	R/W	R
Session Control	R/W	R/W	R
DoS Policy	R/W	R/W	R
Soft Lockdown Mode	R/W	R/W	R
Advanced Protection			
Dashboard	R/W	R/W	-
Configuration	R/W	R/W	-
Protocol Filter Policy	R/W	R/W	-
ADP	R/W	R/W	-
IPS	R/W	R/W	-

VPN

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
IPsec	R/W	R/W	R
L2TP Server	R/W	R/W	R
OpenVPN Client	R/W	R/W	-

Certificate Management

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Local Certificate	R/W	-	-
Trusted CA Certificate	R/W	-	-
Certificate Signing Request	R/W	-	-

Security

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Device Security			
Login Policy	R/W	R	R
Trusted Access	R/W	R/W	R
SSH & SSL	R/W	R/W	-
Network Security			
IEEE 802.1X	R/W	R/W	R
Authentication			
Login Authentication	R/W	-	-
RADIUS	R/W	-	-
TACACS+	R/W	-	-
MXview Alert Notification	R/W	R/W	R

Diagnostics

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
System Status			
Utilization	R/W	R/W	R
Fiber Check	R/W	R/W	R

Settings	Admin	Supervisor	User
Network Status			
Network Statistics	R	R	R
LLDP	R/W	R/W	R
ARP Table	R	R	R
Event Log & Notifications			
Event Log	R/W	R/W	R
Event Notifications	R/W	R/W	R
Syslog	R/W	R	R
SNMP Trap/Inform	R/W	-	-
Email Settings	R/W	R	R
SMS Settings	R/W	R/W	R
Tools			
Port Mirroring	R/W	R/W	R
Ping	R/W	R/W	R
Diagnostic Support	R/W	R/W	R
NetFlow	R/W	R/W	R

MOXA[®]

Moxa Inc.

Copyright © 2024 Moxa, Inc. All rights reserved. Reproduction without permission is prohibited. Trademarks and logos are copyrights of their respective owners.

www.moxa.com/products